ALADWAA
Gem



2nd SEC
FIRST TERM

KING LEAR

NEW HELLO! 2024

Contents

Unit 1 Staying healthy 7
Al-Adwaa Test 1 49

Unit 2 Eating around the world 53
Al-Adwaa Test 2 94
Units 1 & 2 Al-Adwaa Test 98

Unit 3 The future of food 102
Al-Adwaa Test 3 145

Unit 4 Changing English 149
Al-Adwaa Test 4 193
Units 3 & 4 Al-Adwaa Test 197

Unit 5 Being smart online 201
Al-Adwaa Test 5 242

Unit 6 Learning from our mistakes 246
Al-Adwaa Test 6 286

King Lear

Act I, Scene i 292
Act I, Scenes i-ii 294
Act I, Scenes iii-iv 296
Act II,Scenes i-ii 298
Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i 300
Act III, Scenes ii – iii - iv 302
Advanced General Exercises 304
Advanced General Exercises Answers 313
Vocabulary on Translation Exercises 316



Staying healthy

Unit 1

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : A poster about how to perform first aid

Writing : A persuasive email to a friend

Listening : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system

Speaking : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading

Language : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

Life Skills : Resilience

Study

Watch a video

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى
infection (n)	عدوى
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى
react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب/تقنية

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
ambulance (n)	عربة الإسعاف
area (n)	منطقة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى (شخص)
athletic (adj)	رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى
awake (adj)	مستيقظ/واعٍ
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)
bleed (v)	ينزف
bone (n)	عَظم/عظمة
breathing (n)	التنفس
call (v) (ed)	يتصل/ينادى
championship (n)	بطولة
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
chest (n)	صدر
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
detail (n)	تفصيل
disease (n)	مرض
educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس
else (adv)	آخر
emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
executive director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
expert (n)	خبير
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ

fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
handball (n)	كرة اليد
heart centre (n)	مركز القلب
immediately (adv)	فورًا
injury (n)	إصابة
instructions (n)	تعليمات
lock (v) (ed)	يغلق/يحبس
major (adj)	رئيسى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
pioneer (n)	رائد
place (v) (d) (n)	يضع/مكان
press (v) (ed)	يضغط
regular (adj)	منتظم
repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rise (v)	يرتفع
sign (n)	علامة
skill (n)	مهارة
sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
surface (n)	سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشىء)
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
train (v) (ed)	يدرب/يتدرب
trophy (n)	كأس/جائزة

Workbook Vocabulary

act (v) (ed)	يتصرف/يمثل
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
blood (n)	دم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
gloves (n)	قفازات
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
label (n)	ملصق
muscle (n)	عضلة
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
performance (n)	أداء
prohibition (n)	منع/حظر
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
tight (adj)	محكم/مشدود/ضيق
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف/يغلف

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Doctors say that white blood cells help defend the body against
a) injection b) infection
c) operation d) reflection

2 Raw meat and poultry الدواجن may contain harmful, therefore they must be cooked to a high temperature.
a) plants b) pains
c) organs d) bacteria

3 It is believed that cycle helmets may reduce head by up to 80 percent.
a) treatment b) break
c) injury d) drug

4 Luckily, the young doctor had his medical with him when the accident happened.
a) devices b) techniques
c) kits d) jokes

5 After putting out the fire, some victims suffered from difficulties and eye irritation.
a) disease b) temperature
c) breathing d) depression

6 Most people feel proud when from their country do well in the Olympics.
a) graduates b) athletes
c) pioneers d) reporters

7 Children under five are vaccinated against the childhood diseases such as smallpox and polio.
a) normal b) unimportant
c) major d) minor

8 A/An is someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people.
a) employee b) director
c) assistant d) pioneer

9 There was a silence as the headmaster into the class.
a) sudden b) regular
c) exciting d) available

10 The director insisted that all staff must on the new security system.
a) gain b) train
c) entertain d) complain

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do an action	يقوم بالتصرف	make sure	يتأكد
perform/do CPR	يجرى عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
do sport	يمارس رياضة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
have/get an infection	يصاب بعدوى	take up a new sport	يهتم بـ / يبدأ رياضة جديدة
care about	يهتم بـ	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	reply to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على	rise up	يرتفع لأعلى
lock ... together	يغلق ... معًا	wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
respond to	يستجيب لـ	react with	يتصرف بـ/يتفاعل مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	----------	
breathe	يتنفس	breath breathing	نفس تنفس	breathy	لاهث/مصحوب بأنفاس مسموعة
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	إرشادى/توجيهى
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform	يؤدى	performance/performer	اداء/مؤدٍّ	performing	مؤدٍ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

- The team performed very well.
- The performance of the team was very good.
- The performing team was so professional.
- Most performers feel nervous before they go on stage.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion عزلة/عدم اتحاد
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking	disregard/negligence إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستوٍ	straight/plane	rough/uneven خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct	misguide/mislead يسيء التوجيه
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm	remedy/cure علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/carry out	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease/halt يتوقف
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/الطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft	incompetence/inability عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He suffered a severe head injury. The synonym of the word "severe" is ".....".
a) acute b) easy c) simple d) strange

2 A young man pulled the child out of the swimming pool and CPR for him saving his life.
a) trained b) made c) performed d) applied

3 Did you any new sports when you started high school this year?
a) make b) do c) give d) design

4 I a bad infection in my eye and my doctor said it was due to my lens.
a) made b) did c) devised d) got

5 The call centre in the company can respond all customer complaints within 2 days.
a) in b) to c) on d) at

6 The farmland near the Nile is very flat. The adjective "flat" is the opposite of ".....".
a) smooth b) fertile c) rough d) barren

7 The boy thankfully gave his mother her birthday present which he wrapped fine golden paper.
a) about b) for c) of d) with

8 Doctors warn us that the COVID-19 infection is very strong. The noun "infection" is similar in meaning to
a) hygiene b) sterility c) contagion d) sanitation

9 The paramedics reacted very quickly to the emergency calls after the earthquake. The noun from the verb "react" is ".....".

a) reacts b) reacted c) reactive d) reaction

10 The nurse pressed on the wound trying to stop the bleeding. The verb "press" is the antonym of ".....".

a) compress b) release c) squeeze d) treat

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

operation

١- عملية جراحية

٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times.
- Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.

1

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء

٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)

- Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes.
- Getting a visa can be a complex process.

another آخر (للمفرد)

another + مسافات/كميات/أموال/أوقات

- There's another news programme at ten o'clock.
- I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days.
- I lent my friend another ten pounds.

other + اسم أخرى (للجمع/اسم لا يُعد)

the other الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)

- I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.
- You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?

2

others الآخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل)

One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.

else

١- آخر/أيضًا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتى بعدها اسم

٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)

- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
- I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else.
- He is awake now, like everyone else.
- Who else was at the party yesterday?
- What else would you like to buy?

athlete
رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)

- Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.

athletic
رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)

- He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic.
- School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.

athletics
ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى) تعامل معاملة المفرد

- Athletics is considered the most important competitions in the Olympic Games.

sign
١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات
٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)

- You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road.
- Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?

signal
١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)
٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء

- The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world.
- The siren صفارة الإنذار was a signal for everyone to leave the building.

landmark
علامة بارزة (تميز مكانًا) مثل برج أو مبنى

- The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I didn't have to renew my passport as it is still valid for two years.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

2 The assistant hung a on the door of the shop that said it would reopen at 10 p.m.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

3 We love to watch the Olympic competitions – especially the
a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics

4 The child's parents must give their consent before she has the
a) process b) operation c) option d) task

5 I couldn't make any calls during the safari trip as the was very bad in the area.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In some parts of Africa there is a food shortage because of droughts.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) normal

2 In hospitals, some tests are now on all people who offer to become blood donors.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) reacted

3 Firefighters must be trained well to quickly when they hear the alarm.
a) call b) react c) reflect d) allow

4 All surgeons of the department will be trained in all the new surgical in heart surgery.
a) objective b) reaction c) technique d) examination

5 When I reached the hospital, my nose was and the doctor plugged it with cotton wool.
a) breathing b) wrapping c) treating d) bleeding

6 You must make sure you understand the safety before you use the cutting machine.
a) constructions b) instructions c) licences d) techniques

7 Several people ignored the "No Smoking" and the police fined يغرم them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign

8 I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine on Monday afternoon.
a) examination b) reaction c) intention d) collaboration

9 The present my sister got for her birthday was beautifully in gold paper.
a) wrapped b) locked c) dumped d) removed

10 By midday, the sun had high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) increased c) decreased d) raised

11 Most schools don't students to use their mobile phones in the classroom.
a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) educate

12 An is a person with a high level of knowledge or skill in a particular subject or activity.
a) export b) explorer c) employer d) expert

13 Anything you share on your Facebook page is shown shortly afterwards to everyone
a) other b) else c) another d) others

14 The new director has full for financial matters of the company.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

15 My friend was given by a doctor, which I think saved his life.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI

16 The audience was clearly delighted with the of the actors.
a) perform b) performance c) performer d) performative

17 I'm busy now; I'll phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word "....."
a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

18 Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and sure it is used carefully.
a) do b) make c) design d) devise

19 Husbands and wives usually disagree the best way to spend their money.
a) about b) to c) with d) for

20 The young actress usually replies immediately comments on her posts.
a) at b) for c) about d) to

21 Many young women stop sports when they get married.
a) going b) letting c) doing d) making

22 To healthy, you should exercise at least three times a week.
a) make b) avoid c) stay d) move

23 The officer died of his gunshot wounds. The word "wound" can be replaced by the word "....."
a) bruise b) injury c) scare d) trial

24 The medical company announced that the research for the new vaccine was done in with the University of Oxford.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration

25 During pandemics, governments have to force people to stay home to stop the spread of the disease
a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

26 How did the manager to the suggestion you had made? *(Longman)*
a) retrain b) refresh c) react d) recycle

27 You should learn how to CPR. *(Longman)*
a) reform b) perform c) take d) make

28 We should do sports to in good health. *(Longman)*
a) stay b) leave c) make d) remind

29 Please, ... sure you turn off the gas before you leave the house. *(Longman)*
a) give b) take c) do d) make

30 Follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being with COVID-19. *(Longman)*
a) infected b) protected c) injected d) rejected

B Language

Present, past and future necessity and lack of necessity

التعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى المضارع والماضى والمستقبل

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى		Future المستقبل	
must + inf.	It is necessary for ... to + inf.	had to + inf.	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to + inf.	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
have/has to + inf.					
have/has got to + inf.		no past			
need/needs to + inf.		needed to + inf.		will need to + inf.	

Examples

It is necessary for us to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
= We must/have to/have got to/need to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
It was necessary for him to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
= He had to/needed to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
It will be necessary for her to book the concert tickets tomorrow.
= She will have to/will need to book the concert tickets tomorrow.

must - have to/has to الفرق بين

لاحظ

• كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شىء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.

- تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.

- وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لك اختيار فى فعلها ولا رأى فيها.

- I must call Omar tonight as I promised to phone him.

- I have to wear a uniform at school.

• يمكن استخدام المضارع must/have to للتعبير عن المستقبل.

They must/have to attend the last session next Friday to get the course certificate.

. ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهم يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

must	have/has to
1 يعتقد المتحدث أنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى) . These pants don't fit me anymore. I must lose weight.	شخص آخر يعتقد أنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج). My doctor told me I'm overweight and I have to go on a diet.
2 تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة أو ضرورة فى المستقبل القريب، وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات. When you drive, you must wear a seat belt. Passengers must keep their bags with them at all times.	تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة، ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل. She has to take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. I had to visit my uncle yesterday. I will have to book the ticket tomorrow.
3 لا تتغير «must» مع الفاعل مفرد أو جمع فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام. I/He/They must be healthy. Must I go to the party? I don't really want to. Must he make so much noise? It's really annoying.	تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للفاعل المفرد أو للضمائر He/She/It وفى السؤال do/does You have to fill in this form to apply for the job. He has to fill in this form to apply for the job. Does he have to wear a suit to work? Do I have to bring some forms of ID?
4 فى النفى نضيف not المختصرة ثم المصدر. They mustn't use their mobile phones during lessons. We mustn't stand up while the plane is taking off.	فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر. She doesn't have to come to the meeting if she doesn't want to. We don't have to read all these books.

5

تستخدم don't/doesn't have to للشيء غير الضروري وأن الشخص لديه اختيار وغير مضطر لفعله.

He doesn't have to work on Fridays so he can do what he wants.

You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. It's free.

تستخدم mustn't في النفي للمنع والحظر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.

When the traffic light is red, you mustn't go.

I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise, I won't sleep tonight.

6

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة في الماضي.

Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?

Did he have to get up early yesterday?

The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must في الماضي.

Present simple = must/ have to

Future simple = must/ will have to

Past simple = had to

Present perfect = have/has had to

have got to

- تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to

I've got to work tomorrow. OR I have to work tomorrow.

When has Hala got to go? OR When does Hala have to go?

2 Lack of Necessity عدم الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي		Future المستقبل	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to	won't have to/ won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (بدون to)					
don't/doesn't need to		didn't need to			

Examples

It isn't necessary for her to go to school by bus.
= She doesn't have to go to school by bus.
= She doesn't need to go to school by bus.
= She needn't go to school by bus.
It wasn't necessary for them to get up early as it was a holiday.
= They didn't have/need to get up early as it was a holiday.

لم يكن واجبًا فلم يستيقظوا

= They needn't have got up early as it was a holiday.

لم يكن واجبًا ولكنهم استيقظوا

It won't be necessary for him to walk with a crutch عكّاز again.
= He won't have/need to walk with a crutch again.

3 Prohibition التحذير/المنع

It's banned ممنوع / forbidden محرم / prohibited محظور to park here.

=

mustn't
can't

=

Parking is banned / forbidden / prohibited / not allowed here.

Examples

You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals.
It's forbidden/prohibited to smoke in hospitals.

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Students eat or drink during the class. It's not allowed.
a) mustn't
b) had to
c) must
d) don't have to

2 My mother yesterday. My father ordered food from the restaurant.
a) have to cook
b) must cook
c) needn't cook
d) didn't have to cook

3 My grandfather wear a uniform at school. They could wear what they wanted.
a) doesn't have to
b) needn't
c) has to
d) didn't have to

4 I take this book back to the library or I'll pay a fine.
a) mustn't
b) have got to
c) can't
d) need

5 This kitchen equipment wasn't necessary, you it. You are wasteful.
a) had to buy
b) needn't have bought
c) didn't have to buy
d) don't need to buy

6 You eat so many sweets. They are bad for you.
a) need to
b) have to
c) didn't have to
d) mustn't

7 Tomorrow is my day off. I get up early.
a) mustn't
b) had to
c) must
d) won't have to

8 My brother finish his graduation project yesterday.
a) must
b) had to
c) has to
d) doesn't have to

9 Children under 5 pay for the ticket. It's free.
a) don't have
b) had to
c) needn't
d) will have to

10 It rained heavily yesterday, so I water the flowers.
a) didn't have to
b) have to
c) mustn't
d) had to

11 We visit our grandmother. She has been ill lately.
a) didn't have to
b) needn't
c) must
d) don't have to

12 Does he arrive at work very early?
a) had to b) has to c) have to d) must

13 The school bus broke down, so the pupils walk to school.
a) had to b) ought c) must d) would

14 We talk to each other because it was an exam.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't
c) don't have to d) weren't allowed to

15 I really phone Aya. I promised I'd phone her as soon as I reached home.
a) must b) has to
c) need d) needn't

16 It was late but the pupils stay at school for an additional lesson.
a) might b) must c) had to d) needed

17 She home yesterday because her mother was sick.
a) must b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

18 You phone me at work. We aren't allowed to make personal calls.
a) needn't b) have to c) need to d) mustn't

19 My father will give me a lift to school, I walk to it.
a) mustn't b) have to
c) won't have to d) didn't have to

20 We give him our answer today or we will lose the contract.
a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to

21 Sorry, I have no time to discuss anything now. I be at a meeting at 10 o'clock.
a) may b) don't have to c) must d) could

22 It's a smoke-free area. You smoke here.
a) mustn't b) may c) don't have to d) can

23 shout at your boss yesterday.
a) You can't b) It wasn't necessary for you to
c) You mustn't d) You needn't

24 You make me another cup of coffee. I've just had one.
a) don't have b) needn't
c) can't d) have to

25 Since his mother was ill, he prepare the dinner for the family.

a) must b) was obliged to c) didn't have to d) has to

26 She cook food today. There is enough food in the fridge.

a) needn't to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to

27 You mustn't park here. It means that

a) it is necessary to park here b) it isn't necessary to park here

c) it's against the law to park here d) parking isn't forbidden here

28 What to know is the address of Reda's house.

a) I will need b) I needed c) will I need d) is needed

29 Which of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Yasser needs to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

c) Yasser has got to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

d) Yasser has to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

30 Necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.

b) Osama has got to find another job.

c) Osama doesn't have to find another job.

d) Osama needn't find another job.

31 You pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt. (Longman)

a) mustn't b) needn't c) have to d) need

32 Mona is really economical; she more bread; she actually had a lot in the fridge. (Longman)

a) needn't buy b) didn't have to buy c) mustn't d) had to buy

33 I really buy my mother a present on her birthday. One should be grateful! (Longman)

a) needn't b) have to c) mustn't d) must

34 You take this medicine; you are quite well now. (Longman)

a) aren't allowed b) ought c) needn't d) don't have

35 It is to follow traffic rules. (Longman)

a) necessarily b) necessity c) a must d) an option

Test yourself

Take a test

Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The students the experiment well, so the teacher gave them a good mark.
a) made b) ignored c) performed d) ruined

2 Some of the passengers suffered injuries after the bus accident and needed to have operations.
a) severe b) gentle c) light d) reactive

3 Lifeguards are trained on CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) inventing b) making c) doing d) designing

4 The doctors said that the boy was and didn't need medicine.
a) average b) hurt c) common d) normal

5 We went to a special course to learn how to give first to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

6 My father has a large carpentry and he always fixes things at our house.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

7 Children are advised to visit a dentist to keep their teeth healthy.
a) gradually b) scarcely c) rarely d) regularly

8 We'll have to wait for three weeks for the results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

9 Mohamed Salah became the first Egyptian footballer to win a major European
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

10 Khaled decided to up a new sport at the sports centre.
a) practise b) do c) give d) take

11 The young doctor really has amazing skills. The word "skill" can be the opposite to the word "..... ".
a) routing b) system c) space d) incompetence

12 The food safety organisations cannot all the food that is sold. We should help them.
a) produce b) check c) damage d) save

13 The who took part in the Olympics were tested for drugs.
a) athletic b) athletics c) athletes d) reporters

14 The government insists on an action to prevent people from polluting the Nile.
a) doing b) encouraging c) avoiding d) making

15 All people who work in services should know how to do first aid.
a) entertainment b) deficiency c) communication d) emergency

Language

16 The room looks tidy. I clean it.
a) mustn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) don't have to

17 Ghada go to the office. She can do her work from home.
a) doesn't have b) needn't c) has to d) mustn't

18 The employees wear formal clothing, but they should look smart.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't

19 You drive a car without fastening the seat belt. It's against the law.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

20 According to the company regulations لوائح/قوانين, I arrive at work at 8 sharp.
a) need b) can't c) mustn't d) have to

21 I have an important exam tomorrow. I study hard for it.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to

22 Does he type these letters now?
a) has to b) had to c) must d) have to

23 When a police officer asks to see your driver's license, you show it to him/her.
a) didn't have to b) have got to c) has to d) mustn't

24 The students all those notes. All the information was typed for them.
a) needn't have written b) must write
c) have to write d) had to write

25 It's a/an to keep the environment clean.
a) necessary b) must c) prohibition d) unnecessary

26 You worry; you still have a lot of time to answer the other questions.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) need

27 **A:** Must we finish this exercise today? **B:** No, you
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) haven't got d) didn't need

28 I my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
a) don't have to tidy b) didn't have to tidy
c) had to tidy d) must have tidied

29 We were travelling around Egypt. We our passports.
a) didn't have to take b) had to take
c) shouldn't take d) needn't take

30 Sara her sunglasses because it was cloudy. She wished she hadn't taken it.
a) had to take b) needn't have taken
c) mustn't take d) didn't need to take

Study

Watch a video

Part (2)
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى
brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادى
brilliant (adj)	بارع/رائع	organ (n)	عضو فى الجسم
cell (n)	خلية	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
cough (n) (v) (ed)	سعال/كحة/يسعل/يكح	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
course (n)	مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	reason (n)	سبب
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	situation (n)	موقف
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	spend (v)	يقضى
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
lung (n)	الرئة	virus (n)	فيروس
mistake (n)	خطأ		

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

It is my mistake to give him much money without watching his behaviour.

Workbook Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
advertisement (n)	إعلان	pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
diet (n)	نظام غذائى	simple (adj)	بسيط
flu (n)	الإنفلونزا	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق/يضع ملصقًا	toy (n)	لعبة (طفل)
microscope (n)	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Ministry is trying to local and foreign businesses to invest in the tourism industry.
a) persuade b) attack c) order d) discourage

2 I asked my brother to me to buy some batteries for the TV remote control.
a) remember b) memorise c) remind d) forget

3 Ahmed's visits gave his grandparents a lot of
a) sorrow b) pleasure c) frustration d) concentration

4 Cairo University runs language for all levels, from beginners to professional ones.
a) games b) trips c) matches d) courses

5 The new players' skillful performance should the team's result this season.
a) join b) add c) boost d) discourage

6 Iron is important because we need it to form new blood that carry oxygen around the body.
a) beings b) cells c) bones d) races

7 Young children usually get a lot of on visiting zoos and theme parks.
a) virus b) bacteria c) tissue d) soil

8 During the operation, the doctors were trying to preserve blood flow to the brain and the other body
a) members b) devices c) limbs d) organs

9 To increase your efficiency at work, it is important to keep work and family life
a) joint b) strange c) demolished d) separate

10 The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely
a) terrible b) perfect c) strange d) awful

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at any time	فى أى وقت	have the flu	يصاب بالإنفلونزا
do the course	يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	in the first place	فى المقام الأول
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get better	يتحسن	sound perfect	يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ	stay up	يسهر
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
interested in	مهتم بـ	think of/about	يفكر فى
get ill	يصاب بمرض	worried about	قلق بشأن

Special Collocations

become an expert	يصبح خبيرًا	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	take a first aid course	يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

- He is adding a spoon of sugar to the cake mixture.
- This addition is very important to the recipe.
- The additional amount of sugar is enough.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave/act up يسىء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/discourage يعوق/يحبط
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن/أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately لحسن الحظ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Father smiled with pleasure when mother walked in. The antonym of the word "pleasure" is "……".
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight

2 My little daughter …… ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) made d) got

3 I lay awake in bed for hours thinking …… the trip I am going on the next day.
a) of b) at c) in d) for

4 I think that going to the beach is a brilliant idea. The adjective "brilliant" is similar in meaning to …… .
a) excellent b) ordinary c) common d) doubtful

5 My wife and I have separate bank accounts. The synonym of the word "separate" is "……" .
a) connected b) contacted c) isolated d) combined

6 My elder brother has been very interested …… photography since he was at school.
a) at b) on c) for d) in

7 Mohamed Salah always gets the support of the Egyptian fans. The noun "support" is similar in meaning to

a) assistance b) discouragement c) depression d) oppression

8 Mum told my little brother to behave well in the party. The adjective from the verb "behave" is

a) behaves b) behaved c) behaviour d) behavioural

9 Mohamed joined a new language course and was able to the course in a short time.

a) make b) do c) give d) reply

10 A healthy lifestyle helps to boost your immune system. The verb "boost" is the opposite of

a) push b) aid c) hinder d) relieve

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

advertisment
إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة

The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.

announcement
إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر/تصريح

The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

2

boost
يعزز/يزيد (الأرباح أو المبيعات عندما تكون أقل من المطلوب)

Oil exports boosted the economy.

raise
يزيد/يرفع (الأسعار/المعايير/المستويات)

The bank has raised interest rates for the third time this year.

increase
يزيد/يزداد (عددًا أو كمية أو درجة)

We need to increase the number of police officers on the streets.

expand
يوسع/يتسع/يتمدد

Metals expand when they are heated.

3

organ
عضو من أعضاء الجسم

The brain organises the work of other organs in your body.

member
عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادٍ أو فريق

To achieve success, everyone must work as a member of a team.

4

spend ينفق (مالًا) على

The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.

spend يقضى الوقت فى شىء أو أداء شىء

- Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office.
- Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party.

لاحظ يأتى (verb + ing) بعد spend.

5

champion بطل رياضى

Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.

hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية

The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.

6

two-day course منهج تعليمى لمدة يومين

لاحظ استخدام كلمة (two-day) فى صيغة المفرد فى مثل هذه التعبيرات أى اتباعها باسم (course)

وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء.

two-way streets	شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين
ten-minute breaks	فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The coach insists that every team must attend early-morning training.
a) part b) individual c) member d) organ

2 My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon to songs by Om Kolthoum.
a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening

3 My brother is doing a course on web designing at the university centre.
a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'

4 The real of the war were the young men who fought on the front lines.
a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

5 The businessman took a loan from the bank to his factory building another section.
a) raise b) decrease c) increase d) expand

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that a healthy person's red count is close to 1,000.
a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom

2 Symptoms of the COVid-19 illness include a high temperature and a persistent dry
a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling

3 Lawyers should be able to provide all the legal their clients need.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement

4 The police officers found no evidence of illegal activity in the fire.
a) affecting b) defective c) persuasive d) moving

5 Experts say that a healthy includes fresh vegetables and fruit.
a) order b) right c) fight d) diet

6 Some people suggested that animals differently before the last earthquake.
a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded

7 My colleague me that we had in fact met before, at a conference in Cairo.
a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) applauded

8 By law, an employer can't fire someone without a valid for doing so.
a) reason b) result c) research d) cause

9 The economists say that money is needed to the tourism industry in Egypt.
a) decrease b) prove c) raise d) boost

10 It would be difficult to Nagy to leave his present job for a new one.
a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ

11 Luckily I was able to correct the I made in the report before my boss saw it.
a) achievement b) course c) favour d) mistake

12 All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the Games.
a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive

13 The doctor said that my health can if I change to a less stressful job.
a) increase b) improve c) rise d) train

14 The system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.
a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

15 The young actors have been very busy since the of their wedding.
a) announcement b) advertisement
c) summary d) option

16 Students who aren't hard workers are always worried exams.
a) about b) for c) with d) in

17 Mona read the whole research and notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

18 Please, read the notes at the front of the book. They will help you a lot.
a) explain b) unexplained c) explanatory d) explains

19 The manager wouldn't give you the job in the first if he didn't think you could do it.
a) place b) location c) position d) area

20 He can only walk with the assistance of crutches عكاز. The word "assistance" is similar in meaning to the word ".....".
a) export b) import c) report d) support

21 You shouldn't try to first aid to anyone unless you are trained well.
a) make b) devise c) do d) explore

22 The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and calm.
a) behave b) remind c) move d) stay

23 We have made an important to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

24 The high cost of the drug can hinder its use. The word "hinder" can be the opposite of the word ".....".
a) add b) join c) boost d) separate

25 My parents refused to let me go out because my reasons were not persuasive to them. The synonym of the word "persuasive" is ".....".
a) convincing b) argumentative c) tricky d) discouraging

26 The immune system sends to find the virus that attacks your body. *(Longman)*
a) seals b) sales c) soils d) cells

27 Athletes must understand the importance of their hearts regularly. *(Longman)*
a) changing b) shaking c) sharing d) checking

28 I'm going to take a five-..... course on how to cook Spanish dishes. *(Longman)*
a) day b) days' c) days d) day's

29 We must our immune systems to enjoy good health. *(Longman)*
a) boast b) boost c) burst d) paste

30 Our science teacher always supports us so much. "Support" here is an antonym for ".....". *(Longman)*
a) assist b) disappoint c) assess d) let

B Language

Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition (Extra points)

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتُستخدم كفعل أساسى، ويأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.

need/ needs

Main verb

الإثبات — Affirmative

I need to buy the newspaper today.
He needs to buy the newspaper today.

النفى — Negative

I don't need to buy the newspaper today.
He doesn't need to buy the newspaper today.

السؤال — Questions

Do you need to buy the newspaper today?
Does he need to buy the newspaper today?

Model verb

السؤال — Questions

Need I book a room in advance?

النفى — Negative

You needn't give me a lift home.

+ v.ing

Something + need(s) + v.ing

Your car needs repairing/to be repaired.

must/ mustn't

must

نصيحة قوية — Strong advice

You must wash your hands before you eat.

دعوة حارة — A warm invitation

You must come and see us at the weekend.

تذكرة قوية — A strong reminder

We must always remember that tourism is important.

mustn't

المنع والحظر والتحريم — Prohibition

You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 k/h.

للنصيحة القوية المنفية — A strong negative advice

You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

Must and have to are equal

متساويان

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

نستخدم must أو have to لإبداء الرأى وما نراه ضروريًا أو نوصى شخصًا بفعل شىء.

It's later than I thought. I must go. / I have to go.

I haven't spoken to Noha for ages. I must phone her. / I have to phone her.

(I say this is necessary).

Samir is a really nice person. You must meet him. You have to meet him.

(I recommend this).

It's a must = It's a necessity = It's necessary = It's a necessary thing

عندما نستخدم must كاسم يأتى قبلها a وبعدها to.

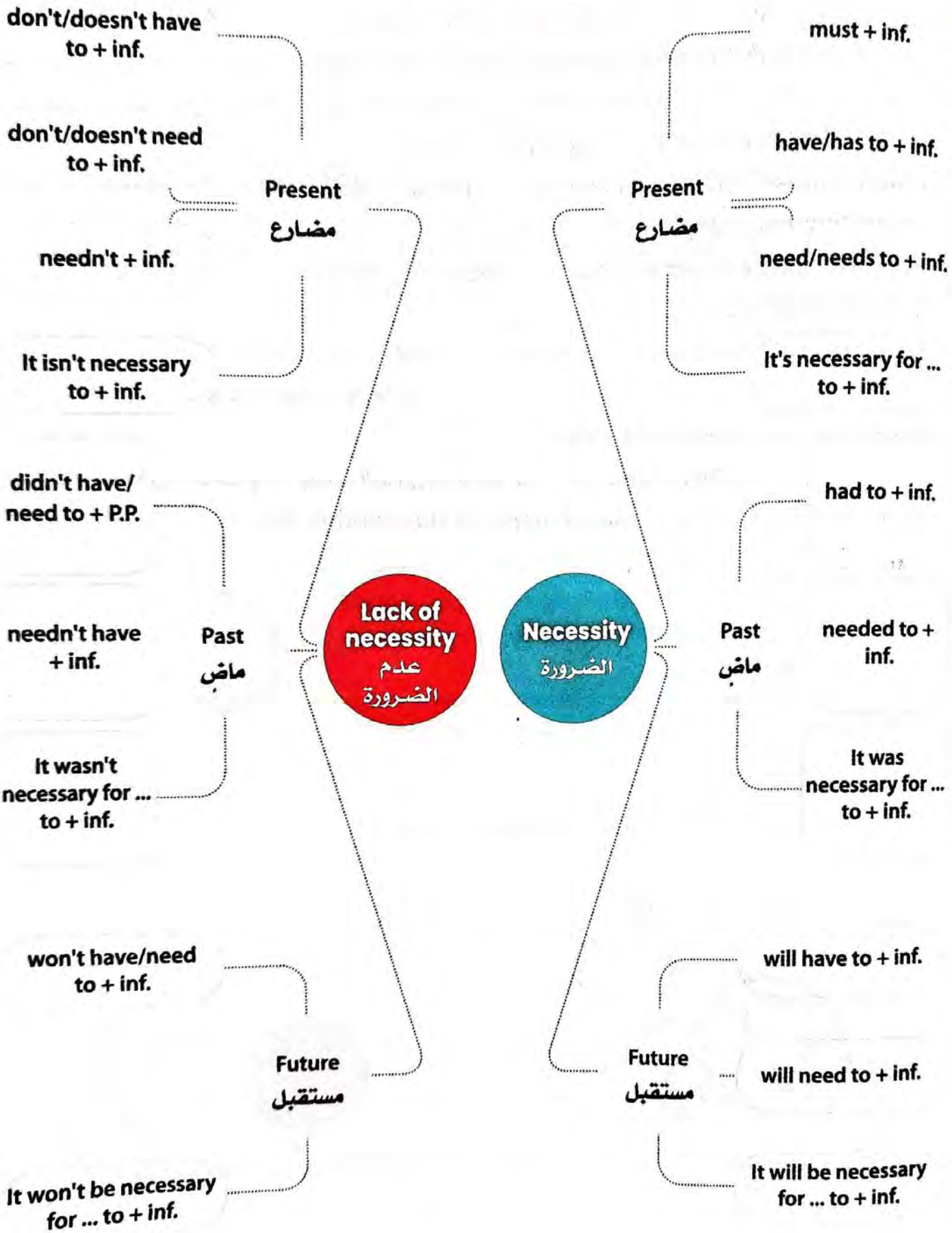
It's a must to economise on water.

وعندما نخصص الضرورة نستخدم for وبعدها الشخص وما ينطبق على must ينطبق على الباقين.

It's a must for him to save a lot of money to buy another flat.



Summary


Lack of necessity
عدم الضرورة
Necessity
الضرورة
Present
مضارع
don't/doesn't have to + inf.
don't/doesn't need to + inf.
needn't + inf.
It isn't necessary to + inf.
Past
ماضٍ
didn't have/ need to + P.P.
needn't have + inf.
It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.
Future
مستقبل
won't have/need to + inf.
It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.
Present
مضارع
must + inf.
have/has to + inf.
need/needs to + inf.
It's necessary for ... to + inf.
Past
ماضٍ
had to + inf.
needed to + inf.
It was necessary for ... to + inf.
Future
مستقبل
will have to + inf.
will need to + inf.
It will be necessary for ... to + inf.

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can go with you to the cinema tonight as I hand over the homework tomorrow.
a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) had to

2 You be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) must

3 If you want to be a professional player, you practise every day.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) have to

4 You buy that book. You can borrow mine.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't

5 You speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

6 My car didn't start yesterday, so I get a bus.
a) have to b) had to c) need to d) must

7 We leave now as somebody else needs this room.
a) have got to b) needn't c) don't have to d) can't

8 In some countries, children wear school uniforms.
a) has to b) mustn't
c) don't need to d) doesn't need to

9 We get ready now. The train leaves in five minutes.
a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't

10 There's no hurry. You finish that report until Friday of next week.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

11 You walk up the hill because there's a bus.
a) don't have to b) must c) mustn't d) have to

12 Athletes get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) didn't have to

13 As you've already phoned Mona, I her myself.
a) didn't have to phone b) needn't phone
c) mustn't have phoned d) had to phone

14 Yesterday, I work for 12 hours to finish the task.
a) had to b) have to c) will have to d) must

15 You drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

16 We buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) didn't have to

17 **A:** Does Ahmed study very much tonight? **B:** No, he doesn't.
a) have to b) must c) has to d) allow to

18 If you take a sick leave إجازة مرضية for three days, you bring in a doctor's note or you won't get paid.
a) have to b) can c) should d) are allowed to

19 The sign says, "No parking". That means you
a) shouldn't have to leave your car here b) mustn't to leave your car here
c) cannot leave your car here d) cannot be leaving your car here

20 Do you know if we have visas to visit Jordan?
a) don't need b) needn't c) have to d) need

21 immigrate and leave your family alone without a breadwinner عائل?
a) Need you b) Need you to c) You needn't d) You need to

22 It's for every student to study hard and get high marks.
a) optional b) forbidden c) necessity d) a must

23 "It isn't necessary for us to leave soon." This means that we soon.
a) didn't need to leave b) needn't have left
c) needn't to leave d) needn't leave

24 You cannot wash these curtains. They
a) mustn't be dry-cleaned b) must have been dry-cleaned
c) have to be dry-cleaned d) have been dry-cleaned

25 to see a doctor. You're perfectly healthy.
a) You mustn't b) It isn't necessary
c) You needn't d) You have

26 You have to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as "..... ".
a) You could see the headteacher at 3 o'clock
b) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock
c) You needn't have seen the headteacher at 3 o'clock
d) You aren't allowed to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

واحدة من الخيارات التالية يجعل الجملة التعبير عن نقص الض

27 One of the following options makes the sentence express a lack of necessity.
You go there with me. I can handle it; it's not difficult.
a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) had better

28 One of the following answers is incorrect.
He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he a report.
a) needn't have written
b) was obliged to write
c) had to write
d) needed to write

وهنا مزورة هو لي للتعبير عنها في إحدى الجمل

29 Strong necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.
a) We can't go away! We must help him!
b) You are allowed to borrow more than two books at a time.
c) She needn't buy more oil. There is enough.
d) They didn't have to buy another flat. Theirs was large.

30 You're not supposed to park your car here.
a) It's a public parking only
b) It is necessary
c) It is forbidden
d) It is permitted

31 I install a new antivirus; I need to protect my computer. *(Longman)*
a) must
b) didn't have to
c) had to
d) shouldn't

32 You try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious! *(Longman)*
a) needn't
b) need
c) mustn't
d) must

33 Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and to hospital where he received proper treatment. *(Longman)*
a) had to go
b) should have gone
c) has to go
d) didn't have to go

34 You take photos here; it's a military area. *(Longman)*
a) must
b) mustn't
c) needn't
d) shouldn't

35 **A:** cancel your trip to Dahab? **B:** Yes, unfortunately, my father was ill. *(Longman)*
a) Must you
b) Did you have to
c) Do you have to
d) Will you have to

Test yourself

Take a test

Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 My sister couldn't go out with us as she the flu and was staying in bed.
a) did b) had c) made d) felt

2 The surgeon performed an emergency operation because he/she knew how serious the was.
a) location b) occasion c) site d) situation

3 It is hoped that the wounded soldier will better soon.
a) get b) go c) carry d) fall

4 Working in this luxurious hotel really sounds for a fresh graduate.
a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) vague

5 The liver الكبد is an extremely complex which needs special care.
a) member b) organ c) individual d) place

6 Karam Gaber is a former Olympic wrestling who won a gold medal in 2004.
a) hero b) partner c) trainee d) champion

7 I'm taking a in graphic design because I have a good job opportunity.
a) system b) syllabus c) course d) centre

8 The receptionist asked me to complete the form my personal data.
a) over b) with c) on d) in

9 The company needs to find ways to the level of confidence of its staff.
a) boost b) defect c) damage d) affect

10 A/An is a piece of paper that gives information about a product.
a) announcement b) manufacturer
c) advertisement d) label

11 Doctors say that exercise can you against heart disease.
a) endanger b) protect c) predict d) promise

12 Our eldest brother can make our father let us go to the cinema; he is a very speaker.
a) defective b) explosive c) persuasive d) defensive

13 Can you explain how this machine works? The noun from the verb "explain" is
a) explains b) explained c) explanatory d) explanation

14 I would have been here an hour ago, but unfortunately, I missed the train. The adverb "unfortunately" is similar in meaning to
a) luckily b) unluckily c) hopefully d) gradually

15 The novel "Treasure Island" is a/an and fascinating piece of writing.
a) brilliant b) terrible c) illusive d) intensive

Language

16 You get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.
a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) can d) mustn't

17 They to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.
a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

18 You come to see us at the weekend. We miss you very much.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

19 Omar finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.
a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

20 Marwa email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.
a) doesn't have to b) have to c) had to d) needn't

21 **A:** Does Ramy study very much tonight?
B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.
a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

22 Judy go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.
a) needn't b) have to c) has to d) mustn't

23 **Ahmed:** pay to see the doctor?
Amr: No, she because she has medical insurance.
a) Does your sister have to/doesn't
b) Did your sister have to/did
c) Must your sister/mustn't
d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

24 We didn't have a test today so I for it last night!
a) needn't revise b) don't need to revise
c) mustn't revise d) needn't have revised

25 I got up early this morning without necessity. I
a) had to get up early b) didn't need get up early
c) needn't have got up early d) needn't get up early

26 You must come to my wedding party. The underlined verb expresses
a) invitation b) suggestion c) offer d) necessity

27 I go to a specialist hospital because I had a heart attack.
a) have to b) must
c) had to d) didn't have to

28 Teachers wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.
a) have to b) don't have to c) doesn't have to d) has to

29 You train harder. The final match is next week.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) can't

30 You waste too much time watching TV.
a) mustn't b) have to c) can't d) must

Study  Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

act (n)	فصل (فى مسرحية)	honest (adj)	صادق
actions (n)	إجراءات/أفعال	kingdom (n)	مملكة
answer (n)	إجابة/رد	majesty (n)	جلالة/فخامة
beauty (n)	جمال	marry (v) (y ied)	يتزوج
call (v) (ed)	ينادى على	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
countryside (n)	ريف	promise (v) (d)	يعد
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	queen (n)	ملكة
duke (n)	دوق (لقب نبيل)	riches (n)	ثروات
duty (n)	مهمة/واجب	scene (n)	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	sir (n)	سيد
feelings (n)	مشاعر	speech (n)	خطاب
fine (adj)	محترم	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
foolish (adj)	أحمق	sword (n)	سيف
forest (n)	غابة	third (n)	ثلث
hate (adj)	يكره	title (n)	لقب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

give ... advice	يعطى ... نصيحة	put ... into words	يعبر عن ... بالكلمات
make ... happy	يجعل ... سعيدًا	say goodbye to	يودع
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	give away	يهب/يتبرع/يتخلى عن
give to	يعطى لـ	shout about	يصيح بشأن/يصرح بـ

Practice



Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act I, Scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The United, England, is actually ruled by the Prime Minister, not the Queen.
a) Republic b) Kingdom c) Council d) Empire

2 The judge asked the lawyer a simple question and he gave a long and confusing
a) quiz b) puzzle c) riddle d) answer

3 After El Qanater, the River Nile into two channels, Damietta and Rosetta.
a) divides b) shares c) spares d) unifies

4 The divers were impressed by the of the coral reefs.
a) price b) wealth c) beauty d) position

5 The hopes of the future draws many young people into professional sports, especially football.
a) struggle b) affection c) poverty d) riches

6 The discount is a to a half of the full price during Black Friday.
a) once b) third c) twice d) share

7 A wife has a/an to her husband and to her children.
a) duty b) invention c) jealousy d) work

8 King Charles III, the present King of Britain, inherited the from his mother.
a) location b) address c) title d) health

9 The young man gave most of his old clothes to charity.
a) away b) off c) in d) for

10 A is a weapon with a short handle and a long sharp blade.
a) gun b) sword c) canon d) stick

11 My friends Amany and Adel are planning to next month and invite all their friends to the wedding.
a) separate b) engage c) meet d) marry

12 I think gun hunting should be banned because it is to animals.
a) merciful b) simple c) cruel d) humble

13 It was a very thing to leave my old job in these hard times.
a) persuasive b) innovative c) smart d) foolish

14 My parents always advise me to be and avoid lies.
a) vague b) honest c) tricky d) blushing

15 My uncle to buy his son a new bicycle on passing his exams.
a) promised b) expected c) graduated d) puzzled



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Think of something that might help you to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the email

Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

Model Email

To : yasser100@mail.com
From : medhat100@mail.com
Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity to all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have fit bodies. They shape their bodies in such a way that they will be fit for their sports. But, coming to a healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is a very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from the outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. Maintaining a healthy and fit body requires self-control and willpower. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But, try to focus on it to achieve your health as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Medhat

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare(1)." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk. After consuming(2) them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted(3) off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow(4) we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful(5) horror movie.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to. I tried to scream but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting(6) on my bed. My goodness(7), what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on I never eat just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's mother warned him not to
 a) eat before going to sleep
 b) go with a group of people anywhere
 c) search for the old woman
 d) scream on facing dangers

2 The result of a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an
 a) high bill
 b) nightmare
 c) attack from an old woman
 d) mother's anger from her son

3 The synonym of the word "muffled" is a "..... ".
 a) loud speech
 b) loud voice
 c) very pure sound
 d) quiet and less clear sound

4 The best title to the passage is "..... ".
 a) Nightmares
 b) Mothers' experiences
 c) Much eating and good sleep
 d) An adventure during the night

(1) كابوس
(2) يستهلك/يلتهم
(3) يبدأ النوم
(4) بطريقة ما
(5) مربع/فظيع
(6) يلهث
(7) تعبير للدهشة والتعجب

5 The boy was looking for the old woman although
a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

6 According to the passage, the nightmare
a) happens when people sleep
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

7 The boy didn't want to close his eyes
a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

8 The writer decided that he
a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mum's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Egypt was one of the first African countries to provide different vaccines for COVID-19. The Egyptian scientists could even develop a vaccine for the new virus.
a) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت أدوية مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
b) كانت مصر من أواخر الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
c) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ ويمكن للعلماء المصريين حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
d) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.

2 The main purpose of education is the integral development of the student. It also aims at preparing generations of scientists able to face the challenges of the future.
a) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.
b) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية الجزئية للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.
c) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تغيرات المستقبل.
d) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء عاجزة عن مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

3 A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors of that style.
a) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أقل أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.
b) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.
c) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم نتائج ذلك الأسلوب.
d) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع علاج أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم محددات ذلك الأسلوب.

4 The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights for human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.

a) تُعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الواجبات الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

b) تُعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الفرعية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

c) تُعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تنبذ مكافحة التلوث.

d) تُعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

5 Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income. Therefore, the government gives due care to it.

a) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصلبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

b) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا المحلى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

c) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

d) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية السببية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 نفخـــر جميعـًا بعلمائنا المتميزيـــن أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات علمية كبيرة ســاهمت فى تقدم البشرية فى مجالات عديدة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) We are all proud of our modern scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

b) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

c) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who did great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

d) We are all proud of our detected scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that cooperated with the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

7 مـع أزمـة فيروس كورونا برزت أهمية التعليم عبر الإنترنت؛ حيث أصبـح الحل الوحيد لإكمال الطلاب تعليمهم بعد غلق المدارس والجامعات فى كثير من دول العالم.

a) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many continents of the world.

b) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has reduced. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

c) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

d) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only tactic for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

8 إن اتبـاع نظام غذائى يسـاعدك كثيرًا فى الحفاظ على وزن طبيعى وصحة جيـدة. لذا يجب أن تعى أن المعدة مفتاح لصحة جيدة فى حالة اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة. (Longman)

a) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

b) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining an abnormal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

c) Following a diet helps you a lot in wasting a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

d) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the kidney is a key to good health if you follow proper eating customs.

9 أصبحت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب الكثير من الاستثمارات وتدر أرباحًا أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى، كما أنها تلقى اهتمامًا إعلاميًا أكبر من الرياضات الأخرى.

a) Football had become a big industry that attaches a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

b) Football is becoming a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and takes more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

c) Football becomes a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media intention than other sports.

d) Football has become a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

10 أخبرت صديقى أنه لا داعى أن يشترى كاميرا جديدة لأننى سوف أقرضه الكاميرا التى أهداها لى والدى فى عيد ميلادى.

a) I told my friend that he mustn't buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

b) I told my friend that he shouldn't buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

c) I told my friend that he doesn't have to buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

d) I told my friend that he wouldn't have to buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. – I used the right structure. – I used a topic sentence. – I wrote the conclusion. – I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the services if something bad happened to her.
a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry

2 The new factory placed a/an in the local paper asking for a sales manager.
a) situation b) advertisement c) experience d) announcement

3 A/An computer can be used to send out spam emails or attack other computers without your knowledge.
a) infected b) broken c) damaged d) immune

4 Some college students choose to their course after the first year at a certain department.
a) make b) run c) change d) take

5 The accident victim was taken to hospital as his injuries were quite severe. The antonym of the word "severe" is ".....".
a) acute b) mild c) harsh d) violent

6 The new trainer of the national tennis team has promised to make an Olympic of the young player.
a) coach b) athlete c) referee d) champion

7 She home yesterday because her little son was sick.
a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

8 You ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

9 Is it for us to send the research as an email attachment, sir?
a) necessary b) must c) necessity d) possibility

10 Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

11 Fahmy is not here. He leave early.
a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to

12 I to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.
a) should b) must c) need d) needn't

13 It's late and the baby is asleep. You make so much noise.

a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to

14 I finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

a) had to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

15 You take a taxi to the station. I'll give you a lift.

a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) had to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control have identified these three as the main causes of the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The main idea of the passage is

a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries
b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity
c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity
d) obesity and our health

17 Obesity has increased since the 1980s in many European countries.

a) three times b) twice c) four times d) once

18 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?

a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

19 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?

a) Decrease. b) Control. c) Health. d) Outbreak.

20 According to the passage, behaviour is obesity.

a) not a cause for b) a minor cause for
c) a major cause for d) one of the steps to stop

21 The problem of obesity is that it

a) causes many health problems b) makes the person very big
c) causes the prices to rise d) needs special clothes

22 Obesity is classified when a person's BMI is

a) below thirty b) thirty or more
c) double thirty d) not thirty

23 Scientifically, ... is/are responsible for obesity.

a) food b) environment c) diseases d) genes

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

a) يجب أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول صنع الأفضل منه.

b) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

c) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول جعل الأفضل منه.

d) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتغيير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا، ويمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُثري ثقافتك.

a) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it hinders your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as enrich your culture.

b) Reading is a very reflective hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as reduce your culture.

c) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a clearing effect, can lower stress stages and help you relax, as well as enrich your culture.

d) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you race, as well as enrich your culture.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations"

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع للنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!






Eating around the world

Unit 2

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world

Writing : A questionnaire

Listening : Descriptions of international meals

Speaking : Communicating opinions and beliefs

Language : Comparative and superlative adjectives

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

Study

Watch a video

Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	occasion (n)	مناسبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Mum cooked nothing; we're going to eat out today.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس/يستخلص
chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)	feed (v)	يُطعم/يغذى
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	festival (n)	مهرجان
curious (adj)	فضولى	fry (v) (ies, ied)	يقلى
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	fun (n)	مرح
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	native (adj)	أصلى
Europe (n)	أوروبا	noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة
event (n)	حدث	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	oyster (n)	محار

special (adj)	خاص
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
surprised (adj)	مندهش
sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز
Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
turkey (n)	ديك رومى
wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
whatever	مهما/أيًا كان

passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور
prawn (n)	جمبرى
pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)
quantity (n)	كمية
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوى
roasted (adj)	مشوى
shellfish (n)	المحار

Workbook Vocabulary

nut (n)	بندق
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
the countryside (n)	الريف
whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت

curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
grapes (n)	عنب
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى
jar (n)	إناء/برطمان
menu (n)	قائمة طعام

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fetta is a/an Egyptian dish which most people have on Eid El Adha festival.

a) updated b) technological c) inventive d) traditional

2 I always ask my mother not to add hot peppers to the food as I don't like food.

a) spicy b) solid c) cool d) cooked

3 We were to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.

a) obvious b) curious c) exciting d) proud

4 The new restaurant quickly built up a base of regular because its food is really good.

a) customers b) producers c) servants d) sellers

5 There is hard between the leading communication companies in the market.

a) race b) competition c) festival d) examination

6 My friend nearly lives on as he has lived alone since he moved to Cairo.

a) take-ins b) overtakes c) takedowns d) takeaways

7 My brother doesn't like wearing suits; he only wears them on formal

a) accidents b) occasions c) actions d) experiences

8 are a long thin kind of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.

a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs

9 People differ in the way they their festivals, but most of them have special meals on these days.

a) celebrate b) remind c) expect d) report

10 My doctor always tells me that I need to increase the of exercise I take.

a) account b) quality c) amount d) number

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلد	fall asleep	ينام فجأة
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال
catch up	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
amount of	كمية من	take place	يحدث
keep out of	يبتعد عن	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
look after	يعتنى بـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
(be) made from	مصنوع من	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide*	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing/existent existential	موجود وجودى
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

- They decided to leave now.
- Their decision was made carefully.
- They took decisive actions to face the problems.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	honour	ignore	يتجاهل
exist	يوجد	live/remain	depart/cease	يغادر/يتوقف
gather	يتجمع	collect/meet	separate/scatter	يفصل/يتناثر
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern	ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous	unpopular/unknown	غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely	unlikely/improbably	من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique	common/ordinary	شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed	unsurprised/poised	غير مندهش
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new	حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain	exclude/refuse	يستبعد/يستنكر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonym of the word "gather" is ".....".
a) divide b) collect c) scatter d) separate

2 One in seven road accidents is caused by drivers asleep while driving.
a) falling b) going c) turning d) failing

3 Sami has missed so much school that he's going to find it hard to catch
a) for b) at c) in d) up

4 We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonym of the word "welcome" is ".....".
a) agree b) accept c) refuse d) reply

5 I hope I've made the right to join the Faculty of Literature.
a) decide b) decision c) decided d) decisive

6 The new coach's job includes looking under-21 team.
a) for b) up c) like d) after

7 We have a lot of trouble at the factory because of the old-fashioned machines. The adjective "old-fashioned" is similar in meaning to
a) modern b) outdated c) new d) updated

8 Many small companies will not exist in a few years' time. The verb "exist" is the opposite of
a) cease b) entertain c) greet d) reduce

9 We celebrate 6th October as one of the most important events in our history. The adjective from the verb "celebrate" is
a) celebrates b) celebration c) celebratory d) celebrating

10 The drink which is made cherries was really delicious.
a) in b) into c) for d) from

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

Notes on Vocabulary

1

arrive (in/at)
١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول)
٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر (in/at
- When does the Paris plane arrive?
- We arrived in Cairo late at night.
- The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off.

reach
١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر)
٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى
- We reached Cairo late at night.
- Ministers must reach a decision before next month.

2

decide to + inf.
يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)
Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.

decide that + a sentence
يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)
I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.

decide on + n/v-ing
يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة verb + ing)
We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.

3

special خاص (من نوع خاص)
I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.

private
خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)
My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

4

event
١- حدث مهم
٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)
- One of the most important events in our history is October Victory.
- The charity raises money by organising social events.

incident
١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد)
٢- حدث فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية
- The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day.
- He thought the film was boring without many incidents.

accident
حادث (شىء خاطئ أو مؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)
Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

5

menu
١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)
٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز
- He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice.
- The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.

list
قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)
I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The earthquake in Turkey was one of the biggest tragic of the year.
a) events b) accidents c) incidents d) processes

2 Experts take care in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
a) private b) special c) general d) public

3 After a long discussion, we decided blue for painting the bedroom.
a) for b) to c) at d) on

4 The government must a decision about the new city before next month.
a) arrive b) do c) reach d) come

5 Children under 12 can choose dishes from the children's in most restaurants.
a) menu b) list c) title d) leaflet

Practice



Practise more

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We our father's graduation with a party for family and close friends.
a) shared b) celebrated c) expected d) gathered

2 Most Egyptian families usually together at important festivals such as Eid El Adha and Christmas.
a) get b) serve c) make d) perform

3 Working methods in the factory were until the owners went over to computers.
a) modern b) old-fashioned c) splendid d) recent

4 The children had a lot of at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun

5 Children are usually about animals and how they live.
a) thoughtful b) grateful c) curious d) strange

6 The whole class seem to be working hard for the final exams which are soon.
a) making b) preparing c) serving d) advising

7 The chef at the hotel restaurant is used to important guests himself.
a) serving b) surprising c) preparing d) replying

8 After finishing our dinner, the waiter asked us if we'd like to order a
a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt

9 Hesham was rewarded because he is always the first to at work in the morning.
a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

10 When they got off the train, the three shared a taxi home as they didn't have enough money.
a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers

11 Most Indian dishes usually taste very as they use the hottest pepper in them.
a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy

12 Science gives us hope that many diseases will not in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure

13 Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her language.
a) foreign b) native c) modern d) dead

14 The chef said that we needed to use fresh herbs اعشاب to get the good Italian
a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste

15 The poet read several from his new poems in his television interview.
a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts

16 Most of the buildings in El Moez Street in Cairo are in the style dating back to many years ago.
a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional

17 My grandmother used her best chinaware الأوانى الصينية on special and she is always careful about it.
a) accidents b) reflections c) occasions d) results

18 Experts advise the stadium workers to cut the grass of the pitch at once a week in summer.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least

19 The Pyramids are one of the most touristic places with tourists in Egypt.
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular

20 The manager says that the next meeting will take on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in

21 It is common for children to be afraid of the dark. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "....."
a) useful b) ordinary c) available d) rare

22 The businessman was arrested on his at the airport as he had been suspected of a crime.
a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

23 Mother always asks my little brother to out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) keep d) give

24 Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the profits and we had to close it.
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting

25 The fire could possibly have been caused by accident. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "....."
a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

26 In some parts of Africa, people are still using letters as a/an way of communication. *(Longman)*
a) modern b) usual c) traditional d) international

27 We had to a lot of sweets for my sister's birthday party. *(Longman)*
a) prepare b) compare c) repair d) appear

28 We are going to after my brother's graduation. *(Longman)*
a) collaborate b) celebrate c) contribute d) educate

29 I usually visit my village on different *(Longman)*
a) occasions b) purposes c) positions d) reasons

30 It's important to show for other people's opinions. *(Longman)*
a) courage b) respect c) dislike d) jealousy

B Language

1 Adjectives — الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تُجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الموصوف جمعًا.

- She is a beautiful girl.
- They are beautiful girls.

1 تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be أو بعد بعض الأفعال مثل:

(look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.)

- He is a tall boy.
- She looks pretty.
- The boy is tall.
- The food tastes good.

2 الصفة تأتى بعد الأسماء التى أولها some/any/no/every

- I haven't met anyone important since I left Paris.

3 الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

(afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.)

- They are still alive.

4 بعض الصفات لا تأتى إلا قبل الأسماء مثل:

(chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.)

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing and hiking.

5 بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

(old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.)

- The rich (Rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

2 Order of Adjectives — ترتيب الصفات

Opinion		Fact adjectives							Noun
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

وفى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

a beautiful, white wedding dress.

Degrees of Adjectives
درجـات الصفـات

- Positive — الصفة العادية
- Comparative — المقارنة بين طرفين
- Superlative صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة)

3 One-syllable Adjectives
صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	Comparative adj. + er + than	Superlative the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
long	longer than	the longest
quick	quicker than	the quickest
short	shorter than	the shortest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهى بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest
happy	happier than	the happiest
lucky	luckier than	the luckiest

4 More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع

More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/less + adj. + than	the most/the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful
expensive	more/less expensive than	the most/least expensive
wonderful	more/less wonderful than	the most/least wonderful
exciting	more/less exciting than	the most/least exciting
difficult	more/less difficult than	the most/least difficult
interesting	more/less interesting than	the most/least interesting
beautiful	more/less beautiful than	the most/least beautiful

Examples

- Samir is a fast runner.
 - Samir is faster than Ali.
 - Samir is the fastest student.
- This film is interesting.
 - This film is more interesting than the one we watched last night.
 - This film is the most interesting ever.

5 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد/حسن	better than	the best
bad سيئ/ردىء	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of كثير	more than	the most
far بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Addiction is a bad habit.	Addiction is worse than smoking.	Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة comparative مع الحالات الآتية:

1. لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة. لأنه معلوم لدى المستمع.

- We need a bigger house.
- He wants a more expensive car.

2. لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث.

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.

3. تستخدم هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المطردة فى التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

4. نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ...) مع التركيبة الآتية:

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم, the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

5. يمكن استخدام صيغة المقارنة مع the بدلا من صيغة التفضيل عند مقارنة شيئين من نفس النوع:

the + صفة مقارنة (adj.+ er/more + adj.)

- Of the two cars this is the more/most expensive.
- Noha is the younger/youngest of two girls.

لاحظ

هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ **er/est or more/the most** ومنها:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc.

- Football is the commonest/most common sport in the world.

Practice



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I think, the computer is invention in the world.
a) the more important b) the most important
c) important d) more important

2 Who is person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

3 How far is railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) nearer

4 My friend thinks that math is than Arabic, but I don't agree.
a) more difficult b) the most difficult c) as difficult d) difficult

5 Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

6 China is than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated
c) populated d) as populated

7 Although we aren't rich, our children go to schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

8 The blue whale is animal in the world.
a) more heavy b) heavy c) heavier d) the heaviest

9 A falcon has got a eyesight than a human.
a) good b) better c) best d) bad

10 Unfortunately, her illness was we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

11 Vegetables are than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) much healthy c) healthy d) more healthy

12 The slower you drive, the you are.
a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer

13 Lamia is the of the two sisters.
a) young b) as young as c) more young d) younger

14 What's important decision you've ever had to make?

a) the more b) the most c) most d) the many

15 Health and happiness are than money.

a) important b) more important

c) the least important d) as important

16 We live in a house, but my uncle lives in a one.

a) big/big b) big/biggest c) big/bigger d) bigger/biggest

17 He's boy in the class.

a) the funnier b) funniest c) funnier d) the funniest

18 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere?

a) more quiet b) much quiet c) quieter d) most quiet

19 The I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.

a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long

20 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something interesting.

a) much b) most c) less d) more

21 Your homework is than last week; you seem lazy. *(Longman)*

a) better b) worse c) good d) bad

22 Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really *(Longman)*

a) younger b) older c) youngest d) old

23 Which is in the summer: Cairo or Alexandria? *(Longman)*

a) hotter than b) as hot c) hottest d) hotter

24 What is the mountain in Europe? *(Longman)*

a) highest b) high c) highly d) much high

25 This exam seems than the previous one; you don't have to worry. *(Longman)*

a) more difficult b) the easiest c) easier d) much difficult

26 One of the given words is an adjective:

"The sun is the star at the center of our solar system."

a) system b) solar c) star d) sun

27 One sentence gives the same meaning as:

"To me, physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."

a) I find physics more difficult than English.

b) I find physics much easier than English.

c) I find physics as difficult as English.

d) I find English more difficult than physics.

28 One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) What is the world's popular sport?

b) What is the world's most popular sport?

c) What is the world's better sport?

d) What is the world's more popular sport?

29 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:

The red dress costs 250 pounds, the blue dress costs 200 pounds.

a) The blue dress costs less than the red dress.

b) The red dress is more expensive than the blue dress.

c) The blue dress is cheaper than the red dress.

d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.

30 One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.

b) The young people should help the old ones.

c) All society should take care of the disabled.

d) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

31 are responsible for the country's progress and welfare.

a) The youngest

b) The young people

c) The young

d) The younger

32 There is only water in the glass. Please give me some more.

a) many

b) much

c) a few

d) a little

33 Wood is than gold.

a) much cheaper

b) a lot expensive

c) a little expensive

d) more cheaper

34 When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became

a) the easiest

b) much more easier

c) more and more easier

d) easier and easier

35 My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that

a) Anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother.

b) My grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family.

c) No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother.

d) My grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone.

Test yourself



Take a test

Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I separated the documents into two piles. The verb "separate" is an antonym to the verb "……".
a) gather b) spread c) scratch d) wake

2 The training has …… the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared

3 We aren't used to eating …… a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
a) inside b) down c) out d) across

4 We wished our son all the best on the …… of his 20th birthday.
a) accident b) assignment c) promotion d) occasion

5 Some people doubt the …… of life at the very bottom of the ocean.
a) exist b) existence c) existential d) exit

6 The aeroplane that crashed in the mountains was carrying over 500 …… .
a) passengers b) hosts c) pilots d) hostesses

7 Some …… teachers still think of computers as useless toys.
a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional

8 My parents always support me, …… the decision I make they trust me.
a) however b) whatever c) although d) whoever

9 When the children get home, the mother often wants to …… with them on the school news.
a) take away b) wait for c) catch up d) look after

10 It's natural to be nervous before an important …… such as a wedding.
a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast

11 I can't eat fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to …… .
a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes

12 Make sure that you add the correct …… of water to the food recipe.
a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

13 It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to …… .
a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate

14 My grandfather's cakes are good and tasty. The adjective "tasty" is a synonym to the adjective "……".
a) accepted b) horrible c) delicious d) strange

15 I have read only some …… from the new novel, but I liked it much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

Language

16 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed than usual.
a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early

17 Hatim speakes his friends.
a) more serious than b) more seriously than
c) as seriously than d) much more serious than

18 Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is
a) more tall b) more taller c) taller d) less taller

19 Yara is of the twins.
a) cleverer b) the most clever c) the cleverer d) more clever

20 This book is than the last one she wrote. I don't like it.
a) better b) best c) worst d) worse

21 You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look today.
a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest

22 I regret selling my car. It was decision I've ever made.
a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

23 This dress is of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

24 He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got marks than anyone else.
a) good b) better c) best d) most

25 My car is more modern than Ali's car, but Yasser's is
a) most modern b) more modern
c) the most modern d) much modern

26 Hany had three big sandwiches. He was of all his friends.
a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

27 A: Why are you sitting there? B: Frankly, there is to do.
a) nothing interest b) interesting nothing
c) interesting something d) nothing interesting

28 The living conditions are than they used to be.
a) bad b) worse c) badly d) the worst

29 My neighbour is driving me mad! It seems that the it is at night, the he plays his music!
a) later – more loud b) late – louder
c) later – louder d) more late – loud

30 Some mushrooms are edible يؤكل while others, which look almost identical, contain poisons.
a) deadly b) dead c) the more dead d) deadness

Study

Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق
article (n)	مقال
attractive (adj)	جذاب
beef (n)	لحم بقرى
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية
complicated (adj)	معقد
confused (adj)	مرتبك
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم
details (n)	تفاصيل
distant (adj)	بعيد
foreigner (n)	أجنبى
general (adj)	عام
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
light (adj)	خفيف
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
name (n) (v) (d)	اسم/يسمى/يذكر
options (n)	اختيارات
personally (adv)	شخصياً
phrase (n)	عبارة
plate (n)	طبق
products (n)	منتجات
questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
relatives (n)	أقارب
respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
rule (n)	قاعدة
share (v) (d)	يشارك
simple (adj)	بسيط
tradition (n)	تقليد
type (n)	نوع
vertically (adv)	عمودياً

Workbook Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
climate (n)	مناخ
comfortable (adj)	مريح
confuse (v) (d)	يربك
fried (adj)	محمر/مقلى
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يشتمل
prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
suitable (adj)	مناسب
windy (adj)	عاصف

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nowadays, it is hard to a balance between work and your family life.
a) respect b) design c) rewrite d) achieve

2 The question with too many will confuse the young student.
a) articles b) papers c) options d) letters

3 In the past, dinosaurs had controlled the earth before they became extinct.
a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd

4 Our head teacher insists that anyone who breaks the school will be severely punished.
a) rules b) roles c) beliefs d) phrases

5 In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks into your food bowl.
a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically

6 There was an interesting on the final match in the paper today.
a) phrase b) belief c) article d) search

7 Some of the maths questions were too for my 10-year-old son. He found them difficult.
a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) hidden

8 I have great for my teacher. He taught me a lot.
a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect

9 The new washing machine is very for all people to use.
a) simple b) confused c) astonishing d) interested

10 Only thirty-five close friends and attended my sister's wedding.
a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	in my opinion	فى رأيى
around the world	حول العالم	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
at all	أبدًا/مطلقًا	show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ
go abroad	يسافر للخارج	sound nice	يبدو لطيفًا
ask about	يسأل عن	start with	يبدأ بـ
happy with	سعيد بـ	write about	يكتب عن
spend on	ينفق على		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
believe	يعتقد	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused confusing	مرتبك مربك
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable considered	كبير/فائق معتبر/جدير بالاعتبار
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
produce*	ينتج	product production producer	منتج صناعي إنتاج مُنتج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

- The factory produces high quality shoes.
- The products are exported to the Gulf countries.
- The workers are very productive.
- Saudi Arabia is a major producer of oil.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
confuse	يربك	distract	comfort/clarify	يريح/يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin	يدمر
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near	قريب
light	خفيف	lightweight/moderate	heavy/large	ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor	عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine	يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper	غير مناسب

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The synonym of the adjective "distant" is "……".
a) remote b) close c) nearly d) wild

2 As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr Ibrahim often …… abroad on business.
a) arrives b) goes c) comes d) plans

3 The streets in this area are so alike that they can confuse any newcomer. The noun from the verb "confuse" is …… .
a) confuses b) confused c) confusion d) confusedly

4 I have the greatest respect for my parents. The noun "respect" is similar in meaning to …… .
a) belief b) doubt c) denial d) appreciation

5 I have to go to the mechanic's as my car is …… a loud and strange noise.
a) making b) doing c) reusing d) devising

6 I always confuse Leila with her sister - they're so alike. The antonym of the verb "confuse" is "……".
a) distract b) clarify c) reply d) mend

7 My science teacher advises us to learn from bees which are highly …… workers.
a) produced b) product c) producer d) productive

8 This violent movie isn't suitable for children. The antonym of the adjective "suitable" is "……".
a) appropriate b) convenient c) improper d) defective

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

Notes on Vocabulary

1

share
١- يشترك (في شيء) بدون تقسيم
٢- يشارك (شيئًا/ رأيًا/ شعورًا)

- My brother shares a room with one of his university colleagues.
- We shared the pizza between the four of us.

divide
١- يقسم/ينقسم
٢- يقسم على رقم (في الرياضيات)

- The children are divided into three teams.
- Thirty divided by six is five.

2

introduce
يقدم (شخصًا)
يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)

- I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party.
- Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the Novel Coronavirus.

present
يقدم (شيئًا)

It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.

3

include	يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)	The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.
contain	يحتوى على (بداخله)	There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.
consist of	يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)	A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.

4

abroad	خارج البلاد	My father travelled abroad last year.
aboard = on board	على متن السفينة/الطائرة	The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.
broad	عريض/واسع	My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.

5

climate	(المناخ) فترة طويلة	Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all the year.
weather	(الطقس) فترة قصيرة	The weather today is hot and humid.
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى جو من	- Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth. - He lives in an atmosphere of respect and love.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Grand Egyptian Museum a great number of original artworks.
a) consists b) includes
c) encloses d) contains

2 We went around the room, and each of us himself on the first day in class.
a) introduced b) presented
c) invited d) showed

3 At the restaurant, the three friends the pizza and had a slice each.
a) shared b) divided
c) meant d) produced

4 The was fantastic for a picnic, but I have lots of work to do.
a) climate b) feel
c) weather d) ozone

Practice



Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Omar Khairat is to be one of the finest musicians of the age.
a) inspected b) included c) considered d) denied

2 Many people lost several close in the earthquake which happened in Syria and Turkey.
a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters

3 My brother doesn't find it easy to his problems with other people which causes him much trouble.
a) divide b) build c) design d) share

4 You should wear, comfortable shoes if you intend to make this long shopping tour.
a) heavy b) vague c) light d) old-fashioned

5 The reason my sister good exam results is because she works hard.
a) introduces b) achieves c) designs d) loses

6 The new programme in our favourite channel is perfectly for children of all ages.
a) respectful b) reusable c) achievable d) suitable

7 Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't that he dislikes you.
a) mean b) share c) report d) present

8 The old man often has to ask people to what they say because he has hearing difficulties.
a) start b) announce c) repeat d) attract

9 We must make the instructions for our system easier as they can the customers.
a) support b) confuse c) diffuse d) report

10 Can you give me more about these English courses, please?
a) questions b) plots c) chances d) details

11 A is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
a) belief b) degree c) request d) questionnaire

12 The factory in our city is able to most of the cooking oil we need.

a) produce b) consume c) buy d) present

13 Most villagers in Egypt are keen to preserve local as part of our culture.

a) instructions b) costumes c) customs d) divisions

14 You must read the of the novel to understand it better.

a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

15 People living near the new factory are not happy the decision to close it.

a) at b) in c) over d) with

16 If you travel to isolated areas, make sure you have a good guide. The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective

a) distant b) connected c) joined d) shared

17 You must always have the that you can do better and succeed in life.

a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

18 This camera has many features at a very good price, so it is a bestseller.

a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

19 Schools must teach children to respect towards elderly people.

a) achieve b) sound c) show d) make

20 Every now and then, the factory workers noises about raising their wages.

a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

21 There is no doubt that smoking is bad for your health. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun "..... ".

a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

22 My friend Amir spends a lot of his money fast food.

a) in b) at c) on d) with

23 I don't like to work in distant places. "Distant" is the opposite in meaning to " ". *(Longman)*

a) remote b) close c) far d) crowded

24 The teacher students into four groups to encourage teamwork. *(Longman)*

a) joined b) separated c) divided d) shared

25 Most developed countries a lot of money on scientific research. *(Longman)*

a) depend b) miss c) spend d) save

B Language

Important Notes

1 لتساوى الصفات نستخدم:

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

- وتستخدم أيضا الصيغة the same + noun + as للتعبير عن التساوى:

- Her hair is as long as her sister's. = Her hair is the same length as her sister's.
- His father is as old as my father. = His father is the same age as my father.

2 - نستخدم no/never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة:

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never seen a faster car than Mercedes.

3 - نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever seen.

4 - نستخدم less+ adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع استخدام الصفة القصيرة.

- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

5 نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- This is the question that is asked most often.

6 - نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

7 - نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

- لاحظ استخدام (nearest) مع (to) واستخدام (farthest) مع (from):

- Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun.
- Benha is the nearest city to Cairo.

- يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even/slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er أو more لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين طرفى المقارنة far/much/a lot

Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين طرفى المقارنة slightly/a bit/a little/rather/even

Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

الفرق بين later/latter/last

last (الأخير)	latter (الثانى/الأخير)	later (بعد ذلك/لاحقًا)
"آخر" شىء أو شخص، ولا شىء ولا شخص بعده/أقرب شىء للوقت الحاضر وتستخدم كصفة/ اسم.	نستخدم latter عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما وتستخدم هنا كإسم.	تشير كلمة "later" إلى وقت فى المستقبل.
The next meeting will be held in the last week in June.	I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter.	Right now, I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment)
The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.	الأخير يعنى الثانى من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.	ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص "مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق"
	- يمكن أن تستخدم كصفة ولكن يجب أن يكون بعدها اسم	See you later!
	The structure is explained in the latter part.	يمكن أن تستخدم كصفة ولكن يجب أن يكون بعدها اسم
		The meeting was postponed to a later date.

الفرق بين elder/older

older	elder
تستخدم older لتشير إلى الأكبر سنا أو الأقدم زمنا ويمكن أن يتبعها than أو تفهم المقارنة ضمنيا بدون than.	عندما يتعين علينا مقارنة أقدمية شخصين فيما يتعلق بالعمر وخاصة بين أفراد العائلة نستخدم elder ولا يأتى بعدها than.
We start understanding many things as we grow/get older.	My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus.
My parents are older than your parents.	Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me!
The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.	لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر.
	Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

Summary

Degrees of Adjectives درجات الصفات

Positive الصفة العادية — **Comparative** المقارنة بين طرفين — **Superlative** صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/less + adj. + than	the most/the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
little	less than	the least
much/many/alot of	more than	the most
far	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Amazon isn't the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long

2 That's the least interesting book I've read.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

3 It is more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) few c) little d) far

4 The second exercise is more difficult than the first.
a) rather b) so c) as d) many

5 I like to travel light. The luggage, the better.
a) little b) fewer c) more d) less

6 The film we saw last night was interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) much

7 She is not as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) as beautiful d) beautifully

8 I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is cook I've ever known.
a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever

9 Sara is the same as Mona.
a) age b) old c) young d) older

10 If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is
a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) the funny

11 After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English
a) good b) the farthest c) the better d) much better

12 Who is the person you have ever spoken to?
a) most intelligent b) more intelligent
c) intelligent d) as intelligent

13 The you study for these exams, the you will do.
a) hard/better b) harder/better c) more/good d) much/better

14 Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling tired lately.
a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many

15 The lecture halls at my university are the same those at State University.
a) as b) from c) with d) at

16 Badr studies hard, but his brother studies even !

a) hardly b) hardness c) harder d) the hardest

17 He is of the two brothers.

a) cleverer b) the cleverer c) clever d) the clever

18 I like living in the country. It's peaceful than living in a town.

a) fewer b) most c) much d) more

19 The chapter is very interesting.

a) late b) last c) latest d) latter

20 Of the two sisters, Magda is the

a) old b) most old c) elder d) elderly

21 The Pharaohs' Golden Parade is majestic than any other. People enjoyed watching it all over the world.

a) far more b) lot c) exactly as d) less

22 The Egyptian Museum is one of the places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.

a) more popular b) less popular

c) least popular d) most popular

23 What is planet from the sun?

a) the nearest b) the farthest c) farthest d) nearest

24 Living in a big city isn't living in a small village.

a) so cheap b) as cheap c) so cheap as d) cheaper

25 Who is the of the two runners?

a) more faster b) much fast c) fastest d) faster

26 Pick out one adjective in the following sentence:

"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the club near our village."

a) neighbours b) friendly c) village d) fast

27 One of the following sentences gives the same meaning as:

"I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her."

a) I live nearer to my mother than my sister.

b) I live further from my mother than my sister.

c) My sister lives farther from my mother than me.

d) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) My brother is as tall as my father.
b) My father is tallest than my brother.
c) My father and my brother are the same high.
d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

29 One sentence is grammatically incorrect:

a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.
b) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as the rich.
c) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.
d) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

30 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."

a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.
b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.
c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
d) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.

31 Yesterday's match was than last week's match.

a) much more boring
b) the most boring
c) little boring
d) much boring

32 The children were too tired to walk any

a) far
b) furthest
c) further
d) farthest

33 Watching football attracts me more than any other programmes.
This means

a) For me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football.
b) For me, watching football is less interesting than any other programmes.
c) For me, watching football is as interesting as any other programmes.
d) For me, watching football is the least interesting thing.

34 Mohamed Salah is! All people respect him.

a) How intelligent footballer
b) What an intelligent footballer
c) What intelligent a footballer
d) What an intelligent a footballer

35 Ali can carry heavy weights, and so can Osama. This means that

a) Ali is stronger than Osama.
b) Osama is stronger than Ali.
c) Ali and Osama have the same strength.
d) Ali is strong, but Osama is weak.

Test yourself



Take a Test

Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 In India, people don't eat as they honour cows as special animals.
a) poultry b) beef c) seafood d) nuts

2 The movie is not for children as it has violent scenes.
a) available b) suitable c) reputable d) avoidable

3 Some kind of flowers such as sunflower can grow in hot or humid
a) soil b) atmosphere c) climate d) depth

4 Mohamed Salah is to be one of the best players in the world.
a) considered b) regulated c) arranged d) moved

5 I don't share your belief about the role of women. The noun "belief" can be the opposite to the noun "..... ".
a) concept b) theory c) doubt d) faith

6 We should what our ancestors أسلافنا have written and said.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect

7 This section of the hypermarket sells meat like hot dogs and burgers.
a) productions b) products c) articles d) extracts

8 You can avoid home accidents by following some simple of safety which are easy for children.
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

9 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

10 The rich man made great efforts to be a member of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected

11 Scientists new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) reject b) introduce c) achieve d) allow

12 It can be difficult to a room with a noisy or naughty companion.
a) prefer b) divide c) share d) leave

13 Experts warn us of a great change in the world's due to global warming.
a) climate b) population c) economy d) ozone

14 The of Sham El Nessim dates back to the time of the pharaohs.
a) direction b) tradition c) fault d) search

15 Most companies spend much money marketing and advertising.
a) of b) in c) about d) on

Language

16 Do you think Aswan is city in Egypt?
a) the sunnier b) the sunniest c) the sunny d) more sunnier

17 Have you visited the old castle? It was the one we visited during our holidays.
a) oldest b) eldest c) elder d) older

18 Maher isn't friendly as Hussein.
a) more b) so c) far d) much

19 Water is the expensive, but the most needful of all liquids.
a) most b) least c) less d) more

20 The shorter the queue, the the service.
a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

21 Most other metals aren't as gold.
a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

22 In a basketball match, there are players than in a football match.
a) fewer b) fewest c) less d) few

23 My sister and my brother are not as happy as me. This means that I'm
a) the happier of all b) happier than them
c) happiest d) happy

24 He is already his father.
a) so tall than b) as tall than c) so tall as d) as tall as

25 My brother is two years than me. He is 50, but I'm 48.
a) elder b) older c) better d) worse

26 Manal has money than her friend.
a) fewer b) much c) much more d) little

27 Mohamed Salah is one of the world's players in the world.
a) good b) best c) the better d) the best

28 Ali speaks French than English. Few people understand him when he speaks it.
a) better b) good c) worse d) best

29 Nada is 160 centimeters tall, and so is Sara. This means that
a) Nada is the same height as Sara.
b) Nada is younger than Sara.
c) Nada and Sara are the same tall.
d) Sara is taller than Nada.

30 It took us time to get here than usual.
a) a lot b) little c) less d) long

Study  Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scenes i–ii

Vocabulary

adult (n)	شخص بالغ
anger (n)	غضب
beat (v)	يتغلب
believe (v) (d)	يصدق
bring (v)	يحضر
conversation (n)	محادثة
dead (adj)	ميت
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع
decision (n)	قرار
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق
exit (v) (ed)	يخرج
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fool (n)	أحمق
forgive (v)	يغفر
handwriting (n)	خط اليد
hide (v)	يخفي
income (n)	إيراد/دخل
inheritance (n)	ميراث
loyalty (n)	انتماء/إخلاص
pocket (n)	جيب
power (n)	قوة/سلطة
receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
test (n)	يختبر
throw (v)	يرمي
trust (n)	ثقة
truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

feel better	يشعر بتحسن
have a plan	لديه خطة
angry with	غاضب من
cruel to	قاسٍ مع
lie about	يكذب بشأن
ill health	صحة معتلة
My heart is broken	قلبي محطم (تعبير عن شدة الحزن)
loyalty to	إخلاص لـ
send ... away	يرسل ... بعيدًا
stay with	يقيم مع

Practice



Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act I Scenes i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that some people such as criminals express their through violence.
a) triumph b) anger c) heritage d) inspection

2 My elder brother gets very angry when I him at chess.
a) beat b) win c) practise d) rehearse

3 My father punished my younger brother for trying to him about his exam results.
a) inform b) tell c) award d) deceive

4 A good business person can quickly make an important
a) consumption b) sale c) decision d) affection

5 After standing five hours on his feet, the poor worker a break.
a) reserves b) deserves c) observes d) empowers

6 Essam is a nice boy, so his teacher usually his occasional bad behaviour.
a) forgives b) awards c) shows d) breaks

7 Tourism is a major source of for people in Hurghada and South Sinai.
a) pension b) income c) pride d) loyalty

8 Samy began his own business with the he got from his grandfather.
a) degree b) certificate c) inheritance d) penalty

9 In the past, all important people had to swear their to the Queen of England.
a) revenge b) disobedience c) treason d) loyalty

10 In Japan, after the emperor dies, the passes to his eldest son.
a) business b) power c) army d) parliament

11 The King decided to send his former minister as he was very angry with him.
a) at b) in c) to d) away

12 I believe that the young man won't in his business as he doesn't have any previous experience.
a) succeed b) pass c) agree d) argue

13 I believe that my wife will do the right thing because I her.
a) betray b) accept c) trust d) trick

14 We finally learned the shocking about our company's great losses.
a) truce b) truth c) fight d) dispute

15 I would never to my parents about the exam results.
a) lay b) imagine c) lie d) apply

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Questionnaire Writing

- **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.

Model Questionnaire

Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?

◯ At home. ◯ At restaurants.

2. What kind of food do you like?

◯ Fast food. ◯ Home cooked food.

3. What do you care more about your food?

◯ Taste. ◯ Ingredients.

4. What kind of snacks do you like?

◯ Fruit and vegetables. ◯ home cooked food

◯ Sandwiches and juice.

5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

6. Do you like canned food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

7. How much fresh juice do you have?

◯ Much. ◯ A little.

◯ None.

8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El- Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory.

She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots(1) in the carpets.

The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack(2) . But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation(3) . The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines(4) , and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the following isn't true.
a) Nahla is about 27 years now.
b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2 This story shows that you to help others.
a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

3 The best title to the passage is "..... ".
a) How to help others
b) Children are more useful than adults
c) Children in plantations
d) Child employment and manipulation

4 The underlined word "plantations" means
a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

5 Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she
a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

(1) عقدة (2) حقيبة الظهر (3) تسخير/استغلال (4) منلجم

6 What was shocking about Karima's story?
a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked in carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7 Nahla cut the article out of the page to
a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8 Karima couldn't bear her conditions and
a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) committed a suicide
d) went to school

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade.

a) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.

b) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون أحيانا الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.

c) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو الصناعة الدولية.

d) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونـات المحلية والثرية، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.

2 Most governments impose strict laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws precisely everywhere.

a) تفـرض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلامة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًـا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بدقة فى كل مكان.

b) تفـرض معظـم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلام الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًـا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين برقة فى كل مكان.

c) تفـرض معظـم الحكومات قوانين صارمـة لضمان أمانة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًـا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بكفاءة فى كل مكان.

d) تقوض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلامة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًـا مسئولين عن تمييز هذه القوانين بدقة فى كل مكان.

3 Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

a) تختلف تطلعات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.

b) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتوسع بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى رغم كونه صحيًا أم لا.

c) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم المغذى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى بينما كان صحيًا أم لا.

d) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.

4 Food shortage is one of the most serious problems which the world faces nowadays. Experts say that it is due to misdistribution of food and not lack of it.

a) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع السليم للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

b) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع الخاطئ للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

c) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أسهل المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع المتوازن للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

d) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك ينتج إلى التوزيع الخاطئ للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

5 Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence, governments should invest in scientific institutions.

a) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات الاستثمار فى المؤسسات العلمية.

b) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات التوسع فى المؤسسات العلمية.

c) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات تجديد الشركات العلمية.

d) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات السيطرة على المؤسسات العلمية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة الناس والقضاء على الفقر فى كل مكان.

a) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieve people's suffering and eliminate poverty everywhere.

b) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and enhancing poverty everywhere.

c) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

d) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will make up to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

7 لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم، بل استطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة والعمل الجاد

a) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through preservation and hard work.

b) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from passing their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

c) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to arrive success through perseverance and hard work.

d) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

8 يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

a) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is dominated by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

b) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a private type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

c) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

d) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a general type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

9 رغم معارضة البعض لاستخدام الحيوانات فى التجارب يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نستخدمها لما كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.

a) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we do not use them, we will not have so many medicines that save people's lives.

b) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we had not used them, we would not have had so many medicines that save people's lives.

c) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we did not use them, we would not have so many medicines that save people's lives.

d) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiences, many people believe that if we had not used them, we would not have had so many medicines that save people's lives.

10 كلما زاد رضاء الموظفين عن وظائفهم زادت إنتاجيتهم لذا يجب توفير بيئة العمل المناسبة لهم.

a) The most employees are satisfied with their jobs, the more productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.

b) The most employees are satisfied with their jobs, the most productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.

c) The less employees are satisfied with their jobs, the most productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.

d) The more employees are satisfied with their jobs, the more productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My elder brother often gets with his friends after work on Thursday.
a) together b) on c) over d) through

2 These clothes aren't suitable for this cold weather. The synonym of the word "suitable" is ".....".
a) appropriate b) inconvenient c) improper d) similar

3 An estimated 200 people had attended the food in the local park.
a) gallery b) conference c) festival d) seminar

4 The surgeon asked the two nurses to the patient for surgery.
a) appear b) disappear c) prepare d) repair

5 The decision to close the plastic factory should as a warning to factories that pollute the environment.
a) cook b) serve c) mend d) show

6 The hotel manager ordered the staff to the big hall ready for the conference in two days' time.
a) bring b) do c) get d) design

7 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be
a) more expensive. b) much expensive.
c) cheaper. d) cheap.

8 The younger you are, the freedom you have.
a) most b) best c) more d) much

9 Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A. This means
a) Box B is the smallest box. b) Box A is the biggest box.
c) Box C is the smallest box d) Box B is the biggest box.

10 Robert is never on time. He always arrives than the rest of us.
a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter

11 I thought this test would be difficult, but it's test I've ever taken.
a) much easier b) easier c) the easiest d) easy

12 Out of all the films I've seen, this one is
a) sadly b) a sad c) sadder d) the saddest

13 Your answer is not complete, but it's than the other students' answers.
a) more correctly b) more correct c) the most correct d) much correct

14 Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means
a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes. b) Cakes are good for you.
c) Cakes are better for you than carrots. d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.

15 Do you walk now than you live in a village?
a) a lot of b) little c) very many d) more

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence[1] of sport—the pursuit[2] of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation[3] .

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational[4] about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 According to the passage, the United States

a) has begun to give much attention to football

b) is fond of playing football

c) has won the football World Cup

d) is getting sick of football

17 In the second paragraph, the underlined word "summit" means the

a) highest point

b) mountain top

c) award

d) summary

(1) جوهر/خلاصة (2) مواصلة/تعقب (3) شهرة/سمعة (4) غير منطقي

18 According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will

a) fail to succeed b) be successful c) lose enjoyment d) be irrational

19 What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world famous in many ways.

20 Winning an international game can make the country

a) strong b) weak
c) famous d) occupied

21 In order to attend the final matches, the Scots

a) bought tickets online b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches d) bought TVs

22 According to the passage, people think that their country is important when

a) it comes first in a scientific competition
b) they support it in the stadium
c) they take the World Cup
d) they win a game

23 The best title to the passage is

a) The Importance of Football b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport d) Sports and Argentina

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

a) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.
b) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it reflects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on cultural and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.
c) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a positive impact on economic and social growth, and helps publish crime in society.
d) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only members, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative crash on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

a) يجب على المرء أن يقيس بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل عادى فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

b) يجب على المرء أن يتناول بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نقمة للبشرية.

c) يجب على المرء أن يوازن بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

d) يجب على المرء أن يعتبر بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الابتعاد بشكل مفرط عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى تقدم للبشرية.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Sports and their good impact on man's health."

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع للنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 1&2 Al-Adwaa Test 40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The on the player's knee was carried out by a team of surgeons at a German hospital.
a) operation b) process c) research d) inspection

2 Several villages along the of the river were affected by the floods.
a) certificate b) line c) degree d) course

3 Doctors say that our system works better if we eat healthy food.
a) emergency b) immune c) athletic d) injured

4 The machine presses the plastic into sheets. The synonym of the verb "press" is ".....".
a) iron b) release c) squeeze d) pull

5 We all need to learn to accept people who have different from ours.
a) releases b) treaties c) riches d) beliefs

6 My parents always tell us that students usually great respect for their teachers when they were at school.
a) showed b) gained c) won d) demanded

7 They see us talking or they'll suspect something.
a) had to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) can

8 **A:** Can we meet on Thursday morning? **B:** Sorry, no. I go to the dentist at 11.00.
a) had to b) mustn't c) have to d) shouldn't

9 He's got a lung problem and he go to hospital for treatment.
a) has to b) doesn't have to c) mustn't d) have to

10 Ali his car to the market yesterday as it was very near.
a) must have driven b) had to drive
c) has to drive d) needn't have driven

11 **A:** Ola lost her passport. get a new one?
B: No, she didn't. She found it in her purse.
a) Did she have to b) Will she have to
c) Does she have to d) Is she having to

12 Ayman is a successful sportsman, but his brother is than him.

a) as successful
b) most successful
c) more successful
d) more successfully

13 My sister has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is than hers.

a) so soft
b) more soft
c) softest
d) softer

14 I always arrive at school a little later my schoolmates.

a) as
b) than
c) from
d) to

15 I am afraid his situation is going from bad to

a) worse
b) bad
c) worst
d) badly

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If we look around us, we see motion happening everywhere. We see it in the movement of vehicles, people walking, aeroplanes flying, a ball rolling and animals running. Basically, it is an important part of our lives. However, there is much more to motion and it has a great impact on many things that we are part of. We can watch things around us move. When something is in motion, it changes its position. Objects can move from one place to another. They can move in many directions. If you roll a ball, it might move in a straight line. It might also move in a curve. A swing can move back and forth. A light switch can move up and down. Fans have blades that move in a circle. If you want to know if something is moving, you can compare it to other things around it that are not moving. If the things behind the object are changing, the object is probably moving. If they are not changing, the object is probably not moving.

You can measure the distance an object moves. Just measure the distance between where it was when it started to move and where it was when it stopped.

Distance can be measured in inches, feet, yards or miles. Those measurements are in the customary system. It can also be measured in millimetres, centimetres, metres and kilometres. Those measurements are in the metric system.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 When something is in motion, what does it change?

a) Size. b) Height.

c) Position. d) Weight.

17 How does a swing move?

a) Up and down. b) Back and forth.

c) Back and up. d) Back and right.

18 How does a light switch move?

a) Back and up. b) Back and forth.

c) Back and right. d) Up and down.

19 What are the units of measurement you could use to measure distance?

a) Inches, feet, yards or miles. b) Inches, pounds, grimes or miles.

c) Tones, kilograms, yards or miles. d) Hectares, feet, tones or miles.

20 We know that something is moving when

a) it makes noise b) objects behind it are changing

c) balls are moving around it d) it exceeds a mile

21 A distance between the start point of the object and the ending point means that

a) the object moved b) the object was stable

c) the object is heavy d) the object will move

22 The word "impact" in the passage can be replaced by the word

a) move b) effect c) change d) response

23 The underlined pronoun It refers to a

a) moving object b) direction c) straight line d) ball

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Health care is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.

a) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

b) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الاستهلاك و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

c) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل المجد أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

d) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بخطورة أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

- الغذاء الكامل هو الغذاء الذى يحتوى على جميع العناصر الغذائية وبكميات مناسبة لاحتياجات الجسم، لكن معظم الناس يهتمون بالطعم ولا يهتمون بالمكونات.

a) Complete food is food that includes all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

b) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but many people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

c) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care with the taste and do not care about the crops.

d) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

The role of mass media such as television in spreading awareness about the importance of a healthy lifestyle.



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!





The future of food

Unit 3

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming

Writing : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary

Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming

Speaking : Speculating about the future

Language : Will/Be going to; Future continuous

Life Skills : Problem solving

Study

Watch a video

Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	production (n)	إنتاج
crop (n)	محصول	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية	source (n)	مصدر
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة	variety (n) ★	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
livestock (n)	ماشية		

The coach has a variety of choices for the squad. ★

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر	environment (n)	البيئة
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب	gas (n)	غاز
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	grow (v)	ينمو/يزداد
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	guest (n)	ضيف
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف/يتلف	instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
dry (adj) (v) (~~y~~ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف	island (n)	جزيرة
education (n)	التعليم	laboratory (n)	معمل
effect (n)	تاثير	land (n)	أرض
electric (adj)	كهربى	level (n)	مستوى
electricity (n)	كهرباء	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
energy (n)	طاقة	negative (adj)	سلبى

organisation (n)	منظمة	solution (n)	حل
percent (adv)	بالمائة	southern (adj)	جنوبى
project (n)	مشروع	space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)	stuff (n)	أشياء/مواد
remove (v) (d)	يزيل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
researcher (n)	باحث	the United Nations (UN)	الأمم المتحدة
save (v) (d)	ينقذ/يوفر	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)
seriously (adv)	بجدية/بخطورة	vehicle (n)	مركبة/وسيلة

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	furniture (n)	أثاث
capital (n)	عاصمة/رأس مال	local (adj)	محلى
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	petrol (n)	بنزين
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	population (n)	السكان
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	rainfall (n)	هطول المطر
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع	success (n)	نجاح

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The land used for has been reduced so we need to reclaim more desert land.
a) economy b) agriculture c) industry d) culture

2 The book consists of extracts from a of articles of famous political writers.
a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation

3 The government aims at paving the way for economic growth, which will last for many years to come.
a) imaginary b) noticeable c) solvable d) sustainable

4 Unfortunately, many crops are still grown with fertilizers which can be harmful.
a) chemical b) useful c) physical d) valuable

5 We get much of our world knowledge through especially in primary and prep stages.
a) agriculture b) education c) training d) industry

6 The number of students at the new university has from 500 to over 2000 in a short time.
a) removed b) made c) grown d) continued

7 A is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
a) vegetarian b) farmer c) creator d) researcher

8 Many economists believe that it is safer to in buying gold than any other way.
a) increase b) invest c) move d) cause

9 Australia has a low density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.
a) devastation b) invention c) pollution d) population

10 The farmer bought a good horse at a market where is bought and sold.
a) livestock b) dairy c) agriculture d) poultry

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء/يزداد سوءا
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	make more money	يدر مالًا/يكسب المزيد من المال
cause/do damage	يسبب دمار	run a programme	يدير برنامجا
for years to come	لسنوات قادمة	tell the difference between	يميز الاختلاف بين
cut down	يقطع/يزيل	look for	يبحث عن
expert on/in	خبير فى	solution to/for	حل لـ
hope for	أمل لـ	taste of	مذاق لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	variety of	تنوع من
instead of	بدلًا من	work with	يعمل مع
learn about	يعرف عن		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	ينتج	production producer	إنتاج مُنتج	productive	منتج
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation innovator	إبداع/فكرة مبتكرة مبتكر	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى/ابتكارى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
sustain	يدعم/يتحمل/يمدد	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	خلق/إنتاج خالق/مبدع	creative	مبدع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
destroy*	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed (تم تدميره) destructive	مدمَّر مدمِّر
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة مُنظم	organised	منظَّم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

The army destroyed the settlements of the civilians.
The destruction disappointed the soldiers.
The attacks were destructive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/build	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	contradictory	positive	إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat	فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity/uniformity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The bomb destroyed the building. The synonym of the word "destroy" is "....." .
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) touch

2 There are no simple solutions the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) by

3 Most of the flights from the London airport had to be cancelled
a result of the pilots' strike إضراب.
a) for b) as c) in d) at

4 My friend is colour-blind and can't really the difference between these two colours.
a) do b) make c) watch d) tell

5 Young men can more money in private business than governmental jobs.
a) make b) give c) deliver d) see

6 You must be happy to work an important writer from whom you can learn a lot.
a) in b) on c) with d) as

7 He succeeded in his final exams with good results. The adjective from the verb "succeed" is "....." .
a) succeeds b) succeeded c) success d) successful

8 We all believe that cycling is a totally sustainable form of transport. The antonym of "sustainable" is "....." .
a) permanent b) temporary c) continuous d) available

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

1

south جنوب
southern جنوبى

الجهات الأصلية هى:
(north – south – east – west)
ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).

- My cousins live in the south of Egypt.
- In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt.

2

local
١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة)
٢- أحد السكان المحليين

- Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city.
- We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.

national قومى (خاص ببلد)

Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.

international دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)

The United Nations is the most important international organisation.

3

cause	١- سبّب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢- يسبب	-The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of vehicles. - The fire caused serious damage to the factory.
reason	١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	- People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs. - We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.
reason with	يقنع/يتجادل مع	- I tried to reason with my friend to attend the party.
reason why + جملة	سبب لـ	- I don't know the reason why he was absent.

4

earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
land	اليابسة	The earth consists of water and land.
soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	- The floor of the flat needs cleaning. - My flat is on the fourth floor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I returned home, I found my son and daughter sitting on the , watching TV.
a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

2 The anthems الأناشيد of different countries are played at the beginning of big football matches.
a) national b) local c) global d) international

3 I can't think of any why you would want to leave your good job.
a) reason b) result c) cause d) share

4 The part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather in summer.
a) southern b) southerly c) small d) shortest

5 The gardener told us that the flowers grow well in sandy
a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

Practice



Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is important to know that running your own business usually working long hours.
a) consists b) involves c) examines d) starts

2 Students are offered a wide of courses in languages and computer software in this training centre.
a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety

3 Unfortunately, keeping animals requires more land than cultivating
a) ingredients b) floors c) crops d) products

4 All wood used in modern furniture comes from forests.
a) sustainable b) consuming c) unreliable d) solvable

5 When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats مَواطن are totally
a) saved b) created c) designed d) destroyed

6 A/An is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
a) graduate b) explorer c) researcher d) conductor

7 All the rooms in this hotel cabin have a/an heater.
a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) chemical

8 The government is making great efforts to encourage in industry.
a) excitement b) loss c) source d) innovation

9 The war in Ukraine has resulted in a drop in oil and gas
a) destruction b) organisation c) production d) inspection

10 Tourism can wealth for any country if we make the best use of it.
a) take b) end c) involve d) create

11 The crises which we faced proved the importance of to provide food for people if imports were stopped or delayed.
a) fishing b) agriculture c) invention d) researching

12 We should make more and more efforts to money for our new project.
a) spend b) attribute c) save d) waste

13 The new drug has some side effects such as drowsiness النعاس and headache.
a) positive b) negative c) organised d) successful

14 The company decided that 2% of its profit goes to the for cancer patients.
a) newspaper b) increase c) factory d) charity

15 Most governments invest more in renewable sources such as wind and wave power.
a) food b) reactor c) energy d) aviation

16 Scientists are working hard to find new to our environmental problems.
a) solutions b) causes c) results d) sources

17 Some of the problems were mentioned in his report. The word "mention" is similar in meaning to the word ".....".
a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

18 The new film was an immediate after the campaign made for it.
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

19 Because of the war, food prices increased 50% in less than a year in many world countries.
a) out b) in c) by d) of

20 Eating fast food will eventually have a bad on your health.
a) source b) effect c) effective d) affection

21 To keep healthy, I can walk to work instead going by car.
a) in b) at c) of d) for

22 We couldn't complete our picnic as the weather worse during the day.
a) made b) got c) done d) devised

23 There was a great change in the of the health service in many hospitals.
a) organise b) organisation c) organised d) disorganise

24 The desired outcome of most services is a satisfied customer. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun ".....".
a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose

25 The young scientist became rich after he a lot of money out of his new invention.
a) did b) printed c) made d) declared

26 In the future, we can expect that farmers will be using in technology to remove too much rainwater from the land and use it elsewhere. (Longman)
a) cultivation b) irrigation c) motivations d) innovations

27 Tourism is a great of national income in Egypt. (Longman)
a) store b) means c) source d) origin

28 Are you for or against using chemicals to help grow faster? (Longman)
a) products b) goods c) careers d) crops

29 A lot of farmers keep for meat production. (Longman)
a) crops b) seeds c) stock d) livestock

30 Can you the difference between the two pictures? They are nearly the same! (Longman)
a) hide b) tell c) appear d) think

B Language

Future Forms

Future simple — المستقبل البسيط

A) will + inf.

Form	Subj. + will + inf. • I will draw a picture in the test.
Negative	Subj. + won't + inf. • I won't draw a picture in the test.
Question	Will + subj. + inf. ...? • Will you draw a picture in the test?
Passive	Obj. + will be + P.P. • A picture will be drawn in the test.

(will + inf.) is used with the following:

On-the-spot decisions القرارات الفورية	I like these shoes. I'll buy them. **Father:** I'm thirsty. **Son:** I'll get you some water.
Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)	Mazen will be 9 years old next month. Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.
Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)	Salah will score a goal next match. It will rain heavily tomorrow.

Offer العرض	I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you. Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.
Request الطلب	Will you help me with my homework, Hazem? Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?
Threat التهديد	If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you. Behave well or I'll tell your father.
Warning التحذير	Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe. If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.
Some verbs, expressions and adverbs مع بعض الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال	- Verbs: **think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict** I promise I will get higher marks on the next exam. I hope my brother will pass his driving test. My parents think that I'll become an artist one day. - Expressions: **be sure/ be afraid** I'm sure Osama will win the race. - Adverbs: **perhaps/ certainly/ probably/ possibly** **Perhaps**, my boss will punish me for being late. The police will **probably** find the criminal.



hoped/ thought + would	- I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	- I have promised to come early tonight.
just decided قرار سريع	- He has just decided that he won't join this club.
فعل أمر + **or + will (won't)**	- Get up early or you won't catch the train.

B) be (am/ is/ are) going to + inf.

Form	Subj. + (be) going to + inf. • I am going to fix my bike today.
Negative	Subj. + (be) + not + going to + inf. • I am not going to fix my bike today.
Question	(be) + subj. + going to + inf. ...? • Are you going to fix your bike today?
Passive	Obj. + (be) going to + be + P.P. • My bike is going to be fixed today.

(be going to) is used with the following:

For plans and decisions we have already made للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل	He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة/intention نية) I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decision قرار)
To make predictions with present reality or evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شىء نراه أو نعرفه)	Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners). The wall is moving. It is going to fall.

C) Present simple — المضارع البسيط

Form

- He/ She/ It/ singular noun + (v. + s, es, ies)
- I/ They/ We/ You/ plural noun + 1st form of the verb without "s"

(Present simple) is used with the following:

When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/ busses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والحافلات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)

The plane arrives at Cairo airport at 7:30. (timetable)

The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning. (timetable)

D) Present continuous — المضارع المستمر

Form

- (am/ is/ are + v.ing)

(Present continuous) is used with the following:

For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)

I can't watch the final match with you we're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

The time conjunctions used with future simple and perfect الروابط الزمنية

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as	Present simple Present perfect

After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
Call me as soon as you get back.

لاحظ

الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل.

I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.
He won't say anything until the boss tells him.

Extra points

1. الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to.

Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.
Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

2. تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!) غالبًا على قرب حدوث الفعل، فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

وأما إذا كان التحذير عامًا نستخدم will.

Be careful or you will fall into the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

3. بعد الأفعال think/ expect/ predict/ be sure نستخدم will.

أما بعد الأفعال thought/ expected/ predicted/ (was/ were) sure فنستخدم would.

I thought they would phone me that evening.

عند التحدث عن الآمال والطموحات الشخصية يمكن أن نستخدم be going to.

I think I'm going to be a good football player.

Practice



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Someone is at the door. I who it is.
a) am going to see b) will see c) am seeing d) would see

2 I'm sure my friend win the next school championship in swimming.
a) should b) would c) is going to d) will

3 They've got the tickets; they to London.
a) will have flown b) fly c) are flying d) will fly

4 The basketball team two games next week.
a) play b) is playing c) have played d) going to play

5 The programme at seven o'clock this evening.
a) starts b) is starting
c) will start d) will be starting

6 I think it hot tomorrow.
a) is going to be b) will be c) is being d) would be

7 I Ahmed in the club as planned.
a) am going to meet b) will meet
c) meet d) would meet

8 The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it at 9:30.
a) will be leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is leaving

9 When he next week, he will give me some money.
a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes

10 Our manager dinner with the minister next Thursday as appointed.
a) has b) had
c) is having d) is going to have

11 She is flying to Italy next week, her flight off at 7 a.m.
a) took b) taking c) take d) takes

12 She to Spain next spring.
a) is travelling b) travels c) has travelled d) would travel

13 A: Have you got any plans for tomorrow? B: Yes, I my grandparents.
a) would visit b) visit
c) am going to visit d) will visit

14 I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I be sick.

a) should b) am going to c) am to d) will

15 My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر. He next month.

a) will travel b) travels

c) is going to travel d) travelling

16 I'm looking for my e-book reader. I an e-book on it.

a) will be read b) am going to read c) will read d) read

17 There are a lot of people in the room. It difficult to find a chair.

a) will be b) is going to be

c) is being d) will have been

18 I predict that in the future mobile phones much smaller.

a) are going to be b) are c) will have been d) will be

19 The fridge is empty. and get some food, please?

a) Will you go b) You will go c) Do you go d) Are you going

20 It is getting hot. I the windows.

a) am opening b) will be opening c) open d) will open

21 I on the AC because it's very hot now. *(Longman)*

a) will turn b) will be turning c) going to turn d) had turned

22 I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village. I spend the weekend there. *(Longman)*

a) was going to b) am going to c) will d) may

23 I expect Rami a successful engineer one day. *(Longman)*

a) will be b) is being c) going to be d) has been

24 Be careful; the bus towards you. *(Longman)*

a) going to come b) is coming

c) will have come d) will be coming

25 My grandson, Ahmed, ... 12 next Friday. *(Longman)*

a) is going to be b) was c) will be d) has been

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) It's cold here. I will close the window.

b) It's cold here. I will have closed the window.

c) It's cold here. I will be closing the window.

d) It's cold here. Shall you close the window?

27 Choose the grammatically correct sentence:

a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.

b) I will help you with your homework if you want.

c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.

d) I'm helping you with your homework if you want.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) Liverpool is winning the next match.

b) Liverpool will have won the next match.

c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil already.

d) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

29 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:

As it's cold and rainy, I

a) won't go out today

b) am going out today

c) won't have gone out today

d) will be going out today

30 One of the following questions is grammatically incorrect:

a) What are you going to do next weekend?

b) What do you do next weekend?

c) What are your plans for next weekend?

d) What do you intend to do next weekend?

31 A: Why have you got so much food? B: Because I a meal for ten people.

a) was cooking

b) am going to cook

c) cook

d) will cook

32 I promise hard and get high marks this year.

a) to study

b) to studying

c) will study

d) to have studied

33 It's very hot here.

a) You are going to turn on the air conditioner.

b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?

c) Are you going to turn on the air conditioner?

d) You will turn on the air conditioner.

34 visit the Egyptian Museum next weekend?

a) Do you

b) Do you offer to

c) Are you suggesting to

d) Do you intend to

35 Since you don't know the way, I'll give you a lift. This is a kind of a/an

a) suggestion

b) excuse

c) offer

d) request

Test yourself



Take a test

Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 One of my friends works for a that gives poor people money and food for their living.
a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station

2 Scientists say that governments must take action to reduce the of pollution.
a) reasons b) studies c) effects d) inventions

3 We enjoyed the film, which was amazing. The word "amazing" is similar in meaning to the verb
a) terrible b) extraordinary c) common d) awful

4 I really like the variety the department store offers. The noun "variety" can be the opposite of
a) diversity b) variation c) similarity d) detection

5 Scientists warn us that cutting rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
a) in b) at c) for d) down

6 The space project took a whole from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
a) reign b) millennium c) decade d) century

7 Many tourists visit Spain because of the beautiful Mediterranean beaches.
a) south b) southern c) southerly d) southward

8 We had a very good of potatoes last year which led to the increase in exports.
a) discovery b) drop c) crop d) exploration

9 We really live in an age of technological where everything seems possible.
a) distortion b) innovation c) pollution d) population

10 Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote agriculture.
a) sustainable b) real c) toxic d) unavailable

11 Toyota's latest car has just gone into for the Japanese market.
a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced

12 The battery of the new mobile I bought can store for one or two days.
a) gas b) health c) strength d) energy

13 The study about the COVID-19 vaccine was carried out by at Oxford University.
a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers

14 There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a/an, floods happened in the country.
a) reason b) result c) effect d) impact

15 The train accident got much in the national newspapers because of its drama.
a) space b) area c) gap d) hole

Language

16 My parents promised me that they me a new car.
a) are buying b) will buy
c) would buy d) are going to buy

17 Ali will go to the park when he his homework.
a) will finish b) finish c) had finished d) finishes

18 They have intended to buy a big house. They buy it soon.
a) are buying b) are going to c) may d) will

19 I'm very late. me to the club, please?
a) Do you drive b) Are you driving
c) Will you drive d) Are you going to drive

20 What a wonderful shirt, I it.
a) buy b) will buy c) am going to buy d) am buying

21 Most of our shopping on the internet in the future.
a) will be doing b) will do c) will be done d) is going to do

22 We the meeting as soon as he arrives.
a) start b) have started c) started d) will start

23 There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it very hot.
a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is

24 Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I again!
a) will sneeze b) am going to sneeze c) sneeze d) would sneeze

25 Sayed thinks that his team next week's competition.
a) may be winning b) will be winning c) will be won d) will win

26 **A:** Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay!
B: Don't worry. I you some.
a) am lending b) am going to lend c) will lend d) lend

27 **A:** Why do you want so many oranges?
B: I make an orange juice for us all.
a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't

28 The programme predicts what life in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.
a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking

29 'Aya is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I didn't know. I and visit her.
a) will go b) am going c) am going to go d) will be going

30 Lots of people have said they to the party.
a) will come b) would come
c) came d) were going to come

Study Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

algae (n)	طحالب	heat up (v) (ed)	يزداد حرارة
argument (n)	جدال/حجة	include (v) (d)	يشمل
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	introduction (n)	مقدمة
boring (adj)	ممل	link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط
chance (n)	فرصة	lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر
complete (adj)	مكتمل/تام	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج/يختتم/ينهى	ocean (n)	المحيط
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	original (adj)	أصلى
continent (n)	قارة	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
description (n)	وصف	seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	several (adj)	عديد
evidence (n)	دليل	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
fact (n)	حقيقة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى	summary (n)	ملخص
farm (v) (ed)	يزرع/يفلح	tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
fashion (n)	موضة	topic (n)	موضوع
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ	underline (v) (d)	يضع خطًا تحت
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد/غريب

Workbook Vocabulary

Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
argue (v) (d)	يجادل/يقدم حجة	main (adj)	أساسى
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على	predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعى/ينتج
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
focus (v) (ed)	يركز	specific (adj)	محدد
fresh (adj)	طازج	surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	urban (adj)	مدنى/حضرى
insect (n)	حشرة		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 With the invention of the internet, it is possible to make learning wherever it is needed.
a) main b) suitable c) available d) reliable

2 Although they are rare, wolves are still found on the of Europe.
a) continent b) country c) island d) ocean

3 Our office manager decided to buy equipment that distributes electrical power more to save electricity.
a) surprisingly b) efficiently c) negatively d) passively

4 Police officers are trying hard to find which proves the criminal's guilt.
a) prediction b) description c) chance d) evidence

5 Many people move from the countryside to the areas looking for jobs.
a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert

6 I agree with the that violence on TV makes people behave violently.
a) debate b) argument c) summary d) disagreement

7 The salesman showed me the catalogue with its detailed of all the cars.
a) description b) introduction c) conclusion d) infection

8 The old church still has its stone floors, which date back hundreds of years.

a) factual b) original c) dispensing d) giant

9 I the essay's main points in the final paragraph.

a) appeared b) expected c) summarised d) divided

10 Unfortunately, there is a between the lifestyles of the old and the young in most societies.

a) notice b) flow c) gab d) gap

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع	make sense	نو معنى
in my view	فى رأيى	over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
lose up to	يخسر حتى	to conclude	وفى الختام
available for	متوافر لـ	grow to	ينمو إلى
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	link to	رابط لـ
focus on	يركز على	opinion on/about	رأى عن
good for	جيد لـ	source of	مصدر لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلى
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
predict*	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى

- Scientists predict that the sun will explode one day.
- The prediction caused a lot of arguments.
- This case is not easily predictable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull	interesting/exciting شيق
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command	obey يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/actual	fictional/false خيالى/غير حقيقى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	disbelieve/misunderstand لا يصدق/يسىء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدنى/حضرى	civil	rural ريفى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The essay contains a number of factual errors. The antonym of the adjective "factual" is ".....".
a) real b) fictional c) complete d) true

2 It would sense for the parents to share in the decisions about their children's education.
a) make b) do c) reply d) devise

3 The car factory production has grown around 100 cars a month over the last two years.
a) at b) to c) in d) for

4 The police did not specify precisely how many people were in the incident. The adjective from the verb "specify" is ".....".
a) specifies b) specification c) specific d) pacified

5 I haven't seen my old friend for years. In, I can't even remember what he looks like.
a) face b) fiction c) advance d) fact

6 In my, the new plan to build the new cinema is fantastic.
a) discussion b) view c) debate d) fight

7 The game was so boring for the spectators who left early. The synonym of the word "boring" is ".....".

a) special b) interesting c) dull d) exciting

8 New teachers often find it difficult to control their classes. The verb "control" is similar in meaning to

a) damage b) obey c) neglect d) dominate

9 The article focuses three main economic problems of the present situation.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

10 The lifeguard didn't notice that a boy was having trouble in the pool. The verb "notice" is the opposite of the verb ".....".

a) ignore b) observe c) regard d) contain

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

1

tasty ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)

- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)

- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

2

lose يفقد/يخسر

- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded.
- Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.

miss يفتقد/يفوته شيء

- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month.
- I missed the train because I got up very late.

3

fresh

- طازج
- جديد وشيق
- حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

- I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج
- Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق
- The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

earn يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)

She was earning good money during her work at the bank.

gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)

- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.

لاحظ gain (speed - weight - height)

4

- I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.

win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)

- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games.
- How does it feel to have won the gold medal?

beat يهزم/يتغلب على

- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

outdoor بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم.

Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.

5

outdoors بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) حال/ظرف يصف فعلًا.

I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We had to hurry back so as not to the start of our favourite program.
a) lose b) gain c) miss d) earn

2 My cousin a scholarship to study at the American University in Cairo.
a) won b) beat c) earned d) gained

3 Fast food can be, but it contains a lot of fat.
a) tasteful b) tasty c) tasteless d) taste

4 Samir wants a job that will let him work He doesn't like staying in offices.
a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors

5 Regular exercise will help you feel fresher and fitter. "Fresh" here means
a) new b) tasteful c) drinkable d) energetic

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Many tourist villages and resorts near the Red Sea are built using locally materials.
a) factual b) avoidable c) available d) probable

2 The police came to the that the criminal was not telling the truth.
a) introduction b) experience c) argument d) conclusion

3 Some scientists believe there may be a between caffeine and heart disease.
a) gap b) travel c) space d) link

4 The of our research this month will be the new space stations.
a) topic b) reason c) object d) fact

5 At the end of the news programme, they often give you a/an of the main stories.
a) evidence b) research c) summary d) introduction

6 Mary doesn't much money as an office clerk, but she enjoys the work.
a) earn b) win c) beat d) gain

7 Seaweed and other are eaten in China and Japan, especially by people who live near the ocean.
a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat

8 In the future, we hope, it may be possible to earthquakes.
a) protect b) conclude c) predict d) rejoice

9 The chef said that we must use tomatoes for his recipe.
a) original b) dull c) renewed d) fresh

10 is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany

11 Children's television programmes are made mainly for a/an age group.
a) public b) available c) specific d) accepted

12 The rich businesswoman is always dressed in the latest from Paris and Milan.
a) flows b) fashions c) fictions d) facts

13 The doctor tried to stop the of blood from the wound that was bleeding.
a) produce b) downpour c) flow d) storm

14 In my, new ways of farming are very important for us.
a) view b) sight c) scene d) scenery

15 Scientists say that there is real that the vaccine is effective against the virus.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

16 While the oven is up, you can prepare the sauce for the chocolate cake.
a) heating b) speeding c) hurrying d) descending

17 The sausages in this restaurant are really; you must try them.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

18 The attacker missed a to score just before the end of the match and our team lost.
a) present b) chance c) gift d) prize

19 Because of the traffic jam, we got to the cinema late and the beginning of the movie.
a) lost b) gained c) missed d) completed

20 The conference on the effects of climate change on African countries.
a) detects b) distracts c) derives d) focuses

21 Experts say that raw vegetables more potassium than cooked ones.
a) develop b) contain c) enclose d) dry

22 The hotel is distinguished by an swimming pool which is overlooked by most of the rooms.
a) outdoor b) indoor c) internal d) unattractive

23 Chinese factories cheap goods for export to many world countries.
a) avoid b) present c) produce d) consume

24 The bank guard was punished for neglecting his duty. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "....."
a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss

25 Most young people don't like to watch news programmes saying that they are
a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring

26 The film is based a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

27 You must correct this sentence as it doesn't any sense to me.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

28 I asked my friends to give me their opinions my new watch.
a) for b) at c) about d) over

29 Dreams can sometimes seem very real. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "....."
a) fictional b) factual c) available d) advised

30 The woman gave an accurate of the man who stole her bag.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

B Language

Future continuous — المستقبل المستمر

Form

Subj. + will be + v.ing

- I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

Negative

Subj. + won't be + v.ing

- I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

Question

Will + subj. + be + v.ing?

- Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

USAGE الاستخدام

1. **For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.**
يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.
Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2. **For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).**
يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).
I'll be playing golf on Friday.
(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
I'll be seeing Ramy tomorrow. (see = meet)
(We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3. **When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.**
يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شىء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.
Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4 **We use may be + v.ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:**

نستخدم may be + v.ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5 **The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:**

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- all night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- this time tomorrow/ next week - at + مدة tomorrow/next week - from to tomorrow.
- in an hour's time

This time tomorrow, I will be watching a film with my family.

Extra points

1 أفعال state verbs لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يُستخدم مستمرًا.

This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول؛ لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

2 لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

مضارع مستمر أو بسيط	+	رابط زمنى	+	مستقبل مستمر

I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Summary

will + inf.

Form

(+) - I will attend the meeting.
- I'll attend the meeting.

(−) - I will not attend the meeting.
- I won't attend the meeting.

(?) - Will you attend the meeting?

(Ans.) - Yes, I will.
- No, I will not. - No, I won't.

Usage

Prediction without evidence تنبؤ بدون دليل
- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

Instant decision قرار سريع
- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

(be) going to + inf.

Form

(+) He is going to attend the party.
He's going to attend the party.

(−) He is not going to attend the party.
He isn't going to attend the party.

(?) - Is he going to attend the party?

(Ans.) - Yes, he is.
- No, he is not. - No, he isn't.

Usage

Prediction with evidence تنبؤ بدليل
- The sky is cloudy. It is going to rain.
- Our team is playing well. They are going to win the next match.

Decisions already made قرارات مسبقة
- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

Future continuous tense زمن المستقبل المستمر

Form

(+) Subj. + will + be + v.ing
- I'll be doing my homework at 6 tomorrow.

(-) Subj. + will + not + be + v.ing
- I won't be doing my homework at 6 tomorrow.

(?) Will + subj. + be + v.ing?
- Will you be doing your homework at 6 tomorrow?

Usage

For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.
يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل
- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be studying at this time.

To ask a question politely about the future.
لطرح سؤال بأدب حول المستقبل
- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

Practice

Practise more

Language
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave

2 My elder son says he a doctor. This is his ambition.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) is going to be

3 Tomorrow a cold sunny day.
a) will be b) was going to be c) is being d) is

4 I want to buy a new villa, so I save a lot of money.
a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be

5 I can't visit you because I for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
a) might have b) going to prepare
c) will prepare d) will be preparing

6 I can't meet you tonight as I for the exam.
a) going to revise b) will have been revised
c) will revise d) am revising

7 Will you the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used

8 I'll tell Hesham about the party. I him at work anyway.
a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing

9 From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I the final match on TV.
a) will watch b) going to watch
c) watch d) will be watching

10 This time next week, I on the beach.
a) will have sunbathed b) will be sunbathing
c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed

11 Will you into town this afternoon? Can you give me a lift?
a) be driving b) drive c) be driven d) have driven

12 Magdy in the school concert all next week.
a) will perform b) will be performing
c) performed d) has performed

13 I can't meet you because I my homework this evening.

a) will do b) will have done c) will be doing d) do

14 This flat is very hot, so we a flat that is far from the beach next time.

a) will rent b) aren't going to rent

c) are renting d) don't rent

15 Our last lesson at two o'clock this afternoon.

a) will be finishing b) is finishing

c) will finish d) finishes

16 We a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

a) are having b) have c) will have had d) have had

17 The boys will watch the new film after they their pocket money.

a) are going to get b) get c) will get d) are sure to get

18 **A:** to the dentist this afternoon? **B:** Yes, why?

A: Can you make an appointment for me to see him?

a) Are you going b) Will you have gone

c) Do you go d) Shall you go

19 I think one day every new book as an e-book.

a) publish b) will publish

c) will be published d) will have published

20 Don't worry. I'm sure you them again soon.

a) see b) are seeing c) would see d) will see

21 More people electric cars, and therefore we will cut down on pollution. *(Longman)*

a) were using b) had to use c) going to use d) will be using

22 Don't expect him to come this evening; he an important meeting. *(Longman)*

a) going to attend b) will be attended

c) will be attending d) had attended

23 I can't go to the cinema with you this evening because I for my brother's wedding. *(Longman)*

a) will prepare b) will be preparing

c) had to prepare d) going to prepare

24 What from 6 to 8 next evening? *(Longman)*

a) will you do b) were you doing

c) will you be doing d) have you done

25 All next year, scientists on decreasing global warming. (Longman)

a) are going to work
b) will be working
c) will work
d) will have worked

26 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I shall meet my friends for dinner all day after work tomorrow.

27 "Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I this."

a) will do
b) have done
c) will be doing
d) will have done

28 **A:** Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow.
B: Sorry, I my boss at this time.

a) will have met
b) will be meeting
c) will meet
d) meet

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

A: Have you made plans for tonight?
B: Yes. I my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.

a) am going to visit
b) will have visited
c) will visit
d) will be visited

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.
b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
c) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.
d) This time tomorrow, I will have been watched the new film.

31 I'll help you as soon as I my work.

a) have finished
b) had finished
c) am going to finish
d) will finish

32 I can't come tomorrow as I the match at the stadium with my friends.

a) will watch
b) may watch
c) watch
d) am watching

33 We don't think that the price of petrol my work.

a) won't rise
b) will be risen
c) is raising
d) will rise

34 He promised me with my homework.

a) he would help
b) to have helped
c) he will help me
d) that he will help

35 The rich man's plane Cairo next week.

a) will have reached
b) is going to be reached
d) will reach
c) will be reaching

Test yourself

Take a test

Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I propose going to an early film and having dinner afterwards. The verb "propose" is a synonym to the verb "……".
a) divide b) intend c) agree d) suggest

2 The stove takes a while to …… up and you can prepare the ingredients of the dish.
a) heat b) speed c) hurry d) descend

3 The war has been the main …… of most talk shows.
a) clause b) reason c) result d) topic

4 The text provides a …… of the plot of Shakespeare's King Lear.
a) research b) document c) theory d) summary

5 The website of the fashion house gives a full …… of each product.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

6 The air is fresh in rural areas. The adjective "rural" is the opposite of the adjective "……".
a) natural b) fresh c) urban d) helpful

7 You would have another …… to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject

8 On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't …… sense.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

9 The report's main …… was that global warming is a serious threat.
a) study b) conclusion c) extension d) experience

10 At present, we have no …… of life on other planets.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

11 Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's …… shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend

12 The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely …… .
a) replaced b) placed c) disappeared d) destroyed

13 The research shows a …… between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
a) method b) link
c) contact d) communication

14 I thanked my friend for the meal she cooked for us.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) testy

15 Access to certain websites is only to registered users who have to pay for this.
a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable

Language

16 I can't visit my cousins in June because I for a charity.
a) will work b) will be working
c) am being worked d) will have worked

17 In the next week's radio programme, we to a famous scientist.
a) will be talking b) talking c) talk d) have talked

18 People in houses under water in twenty years' time.
a) may have lived b) will be lived
c) may be living d) are going to live

19 This time tomorrow, I for my father at the airport.
a) will be waited b) will be waiting
c) going to wait d) will have been waited

20 Don't phone me at 7 o'clock. I
a) will sleep b) will be sleeping c) am going to sleep d) sleep

21 You have no chance of getting the job. You your time if you apply for it.
a) be wasting b) will be wasting c) waste d) won't waste

22 This time next week, Hamid in a school football match.
a) will play b) may play c) will be playing d) will have played

23 I have made a decision. I the weekend in my village.
a) will spend b) will be spending
c) am spending d) am going to spend

24 In five years' time, Ali will probably with his parents.
a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

25 If you don't take a taxi, you on time.
a) won't arrive b) aren't going to arrive
c) aren't arriving d) don't arrive

26 Ahmed is a terrible driver. He an accident one day.
a) is having b) will have c) is going to have d) will be having

27 This time next year, Salma for her final exam.
a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

28 **A:** I've planned my future for the next five years.
B: That is very clever of you. What when you retire?
a) are you doing b) are you going to do c) have done d) do you do

29 The doctor says that he'll feel a lot better after he a rest.
a) had b) has had c) will have d) had had

30 It rained! I didn't think it
a) is going to rain b) was going to rain c) was raining d) had rained

Study  Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scenes iii–iv

Vocabulary

attack (v) (ed)	يهاجم	immediately (adv)	فورا/فى الحال
attendant (n)	مضيف/خادم	lady (n)	سيدة
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	غاضب/مجنون
cart (n)	عربة الخيل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
disguise (v) (d)	يتنكر	palace (n)	قصر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب/يشد
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	rude (adj)	وقح
fool (n)	مهرج	servant (n)	خادم
guilty (adj)	مذنب	soldier (n)	جندى
hit (v)	يضرب	taste (n)	مذاق
hold (v)	يعلق/يمسك	wise (adj)	حكيم/عاقل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى نتيجة عملها	have the power	يمتلك القوة والسلطة
make problems	يسبب المشكلات	the cart is pulling the horse	العربة تجر الحصان (تعبير عن انقلاب الأوضاع)

Practice

Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have a/an with our sick son 24 hours a day to keep an eye on him.
a) adviser b) attendant
c) consultant d) guide

2 I hope the children will well during my brother's wedding.
a) behave b) relieve c) fight d) shout

3 The criminals who robbed the bank were in post office uniforms.
a) disliked b) discouraged
c) disguised d) dissented

4 I still feel about bad things I said to my little brother when I was a teenager.
a) guilty b) happy
c) pleased d) proud

5 Mum always us to discuss our problems with her.
a) discourages b) recognises
c) realises d) encourages

6 The man was a large package in his arms when he fell down the stairs.
a) kicking b) pulling
c) holding d) tying

7 When we entered the restaurant, I that my friend was sitting at the next table.
a) booked b) dissolved c) abused d) noticed

8 It's to keep people waiting outside your house for a long time.
a) rude b) polite c) bored d) honourable

9 The rich businessman treats his home kindly and also pays them well.
a) servants b) members
c) masters d) partners

10 There were several guarding the main gate of the army camp.
a) revolvers b) sailors c) soldiers d) instructors

11 The medicine had a slightly bitter, so the child refused to take it.
a) shape b) effect c) paste d) taste

12 Grandmother was a/an old woman, and we all valued her advice.
a) lazy b) wise
c) unreasonable d) wisely

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

• Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.

Tips for writing the essay

Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease in food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

Model Essay

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of the remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep sustainable food in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an air or mist environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed with a nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growth, and higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs[1], a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.

The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides. Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when the light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey. However, these fast animals often escape. So lions also hunt smaller animals, such as hares, birds, and reptiles[2]. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills[3] to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?
- a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
- b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
- c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
- d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2 What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?
- a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
- b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
- c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
- d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.

(1) صغار الأسد (الأشبال) (2) الزواحف (3) قتلى

3 Lions hunt
a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4 The synonym of the word "prey" is "..... ".
a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) mate

5 Living in groups is good for African mother lions because
a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6 Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey
a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7 The pride members can communicate in many ways except
a) odour
b) drawing
c) facial expressions
d) licking

8 The best title for the passage is "..... ".
a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

a) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تخزن الوقت والجهد.

b) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

c) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، تغير التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

d) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن زيادة الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تحفظ الوقت والجهد.

2 Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

a) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ضروريًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

b) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا فرعيا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر ثمنا فالأشخاص المنظمون بجد هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

c) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا قانونيا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

d) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ثانويا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

3 Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus, we should try to help restore this role.

a) كان لمصر دور متحكم فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

b) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

c) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى تصحيح هذا الدور.

d) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى امتلاك هذا الدور.

4 Mass media play an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness in our country. Therefore, they should be used properly for useful purposes.

a) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الأمر العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يجوز استخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

b) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الرأى العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك لا يجب استخدامها بشكل صحيح لإسهامات مفيدة.

c) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الرأى العام والتعافى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يمكن استخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

d) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الرأى العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يجب استخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

5 Scientists are always researching new methods of food production. They believe that without new and creative ways, the world will face severe hunger.

a) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن اختراعات جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

b) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة وفاعلة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

c) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

d) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم العطش الشديد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 من المهم أن يدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المستدامة للمحافظة على إمدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة، وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

a) It is important for farmers to recognize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

b) It is important for farmers to realize the importance of maintaining attainable agriculture in order to maintaining food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

c) It is important for farmers to realize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

d) It is important for farmers to recognize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture so that maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food efficiency.

7 لن أنتظرك فى محطة القطار لأننى سوف أكون فى دورة الشطرنج عندما تصل إلى القاهرة.

a) I didn't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you will arrive in Cairo.

b) I don't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you will arrive in Cairo.

c) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you arrived in Cairo.

d) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you arrive in Cairo.

8 أحد أخطر عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة فى استخدامهما دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة.

a) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.

b) One of the most serious advantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.

c) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the shortening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without contacting with parents and family.

d) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without connecting with parents and family.

9 عُرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح الدينى والتعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذين عاشوا بسلام لقرون عديدة مما يشكل عاملًا هامًا للوحدة بين شعبها.

a) Egypt has known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.

b) Egypt has known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in piece for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.

c) Egypt has been known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.

d) Egypt has been known throughout history as a land of religious resistance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of work among its people.

10 لابد من وجود قوانين صارمة لمعاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب بتاريخ انتهاء الصلاحية على عبوات منتجات الأغذية المختلفة؛ لما تمثله من خطر على صحة الموطنين وسلامة الغذاء.

a) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that play the expiry date on the packaging of various food products. It forms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

b) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the production date on the packaging of various food products. It informs a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

c) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the expiry date on the packaging of various food recipes. It reforms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

d) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the expiry date on the packaging of various food products. It forms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The food crisis which the war in Ukraine caused showed the importance of to assure food supply.
a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation

2 Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

3 The government is making great efforts to encourage in industry.
a) destruction b) deterioration c) innovation d) frustration

4 When my brother failed the test, my mother couldn't her anger and started yelling at him.
a) consist b) promote c) include d) contain

5 Most chemical factories are polluting and destroying the environment. The synonym of the word "destroy" is "..... ".
a) damage b) inspect c) create d) establish

6 Farouk El-Baz is one of the greatest experts geology, especially in the field of remote sensing.
a) about b) for c) in d) with

7 **A:** Why are you switching on the TV? **B:** I a football match.
a) will watch b) watch
c) am watching d) am going to watch

8 When I see you tomorrow, I you my new book.
a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show

9 I can't go shopping on Monday morning because I
a) will work b) may work
c) will be working d) will be worked

10 The population of the world to around ten billion by the year 2100.
a) will increase b) will be increasing
c) may be increasing d) increases

11 Ali a good job when he finishes his education.
a) may be getting b) will probably be getting
c) gets d) will probably get

12 Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he in the sea.

a) should swim b) will be swimming c) will swim d) may swim

13 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you your work.

a) have finished b) will finish c) are finishing d) had finished

14 When you off the train, I for you by the ticket machine.

a) get/will wait b) get/will be waiting

c) have got/will wait d) get/am going to wait

15 I you know as soon as the telegram

a) will let/arrives b) would let/arrives c) will let/arrived d) let/had arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be like in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It can also be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, the weather is severe.

A blizzard[1], a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist[2] is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In the rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge[3]. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air.

The wind brings us the weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know in which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane[4] provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about the weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.

(1) عاصفة ثلجية (2) عالم ارصاد الجوية (3) مقياس (4) دليل اتجاه الريح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

17 The person whose job is to forecast the weather is called a

a) psychologist
b) philologist
c) monologist
d) meteorologist

18 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see a

a) rainbow
b) blizzard
c) thunderstorm
d) hurricane

19 The other meaning of "comes out" is "....." .

a) hides
b) disappears
c) appears
d) eclipses

20 The weather forecast is

a) seeing the rainbow in the sky
b) having a lot of rain in a day
c) predicting the conditions of the weather
d) measuring the speed of the wind

21 If meteorologists don't have the gauge, ...

a) they won't predict the condition of the weather
b) they won't be able to measure the quantity of rain
c) they will work more effectively
d) the direction of the wind will be unknown

22 What is the relation between the wind and the weather?

a) The wind moves the sea waves.
b) The wind blows the clouds.
c) The wind raises the temperature.
d) The wind carries sand grains.

23 The writer's opinion about the weather forecast is that it

a) is not always right although it uses magic
b) is always right and accurate
c) is not always right and we need better knowledge about it
d) is not accurate at all and it is a waste of time

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

a) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unit, which represents a major step in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

b) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a minor obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

c) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which represents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

d) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the steadiness of the Egyptian people.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يبنون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا شارات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

d) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة العادية فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time and these have made life more comfortable for human beings. Choose one or two of these inventions to talk about."

.....

.....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Changing English

Unit 4

Objectives

امسح الكود
استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post

Writing : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects

Listening : A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post

Speaking : A debate

Language : Reported speech: could/should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice; abbreviations

Life Skills : Communication

Study

Watch a video

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	misunderstand (v)	يسىء الفهم
formal (adj)	رسمى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس	tone (n) ★	نبرة صوت
innovator (n)	مبدع		

Always speak in a friendly tone to your children.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

acronym (n)	اختصار (أوائل حروف الكلمات)	conversation (n)	محادثة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون	disadvantage (n)	عيب
advantage (n)	ميزة	everyday (adj)	يومى
app (n)	تطبيق	expression (n)	تعبير
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه
apply (v) (ied)	يتقدم بطلب	facial (adj)	وجهى (بالوجه)
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	immediate (adj)	فورى
author (n)	مؤلف	increase (v) (d)	يزيد
basic (adj)	أساسى	lovely (adj)	جميل
basically (adv)	أساسًا	message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش	messaging (n)	المراسلة
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل	personal (adj)	شخصى

positive (adj)	إيجابى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم	teenager (n)	مراهق
require (v) (d)	يتطلب	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
response (n)	رد/استجابة	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
spelling (n)	الهجاء		

Workbook Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
blog (n)	مدونة	parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
care (v) (d)	يهتم	post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/منشورًا (على صفحات التواصل)
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
fantastic (adj)	رائع	request (n)	طلب
gift (n)	هدية	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
mark (n)	درجة/علامة	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
meeting (n)	اجتماع		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
a) linguist b) botanist c) astrologist d) author

2 In English, 'Dr' is written as a/an of 'Doctor'.
a) form b) emoji c) abbreviation d) replacement

3 You are so lucky to live here with all this countryside around you.
a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) pleased

4 My family have been a very influence on me and helped me succeed in life.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive

5 A/An agreement between the two countries was signed to end the conflict.

a) normal b) formal c) informal d) expressive

6 Most people nowadays are aware of some of the rules of healthy living.

a) distant b) extra c) additional d) basic

7 Online shopping less time and effort than going around the shops.

a) requires b) acquires c) inquires d) protects

8 When Wael behaved badly, his mother and shook her head.

a) frowned b) laughed c) regretted d) chatted

9 Not speaking English is a/an for you on applying for the job at a foreign company.

a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) expression

10 After questioning استجواب, the criminal the murder and was sent to prison.

a) expressed b) warned c) disbelieved d) admitted

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get upset	ينزعج	pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
have much fun	يستمتع كثيرًا	post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية (أمامية)
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	go back	يرجع
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	increase in	زيادة في
chat with	يدردش مع	talk to	يتحدث إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع	thank ... for	يشكر على

Messages Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال/تواصل	communicative	اتصالى
express*	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	أسف/ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

- I'd like to express my gratitude to you.
- Your expression is meaningful and clear.
- Teachers' language should be expressive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى/إضافى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل/يستهين
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse/deny	يرفض/ينكر
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove/pout	approve/smile	يقبل/يبتسم
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misjudge	understand/perceive	يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise/delight	يمدح/يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	need/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض/يكره
response	رد/استجابة	reaction	request/question	طلب/تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead/ignore	يخدع/يتجاهل

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonym for the word "basic" is "....." .

a) minor b) main c) extra d) unnecessary

2 When I was in Paris, I a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.

a) did b) left c) made d) took

3 Mona spent a long time talking her grandmother as she likes her much.

a) on b) in c) to d) for

4 The economic expert many new ideas about solving the present problems.

a) implied b) refused c) introduced d) agreed

5 Fortunately, I was able to in touch with most of my secondary school friends.

a) stay b) waste c) lose d) save

6 The call centre worker apologised to me and said that not all complaints are dealt so easily.

a) at b) with c) for d) away

7 Pets require a lot of care and attention. The verb "require" is similar in meaning to ".....".

a) need b) refuse c) apply d) inspect

8 There has been a big increase the prices of many exported goods in the last few months.

a) with b) by c) to d) in

9 When it was first introduced, the electric car was described as one of the ten most products of the year.

a) innovate b) innovates c) innovative d) innovation

10 We discussed different ways of dealing with the customers' complaints. The verb "deal" is the opposite in meaning of ".....".

a) reply b) handle c) deny d) inquire

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم) Exercise should be part of your everyday activities.

every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف) My father drives us to school every day.

2

communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم People use more than words when they communicate with each other.

contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال - As my friend is abroad, we contact by email.
- There is very little contact between the two cities.

connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

3 make

يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل باكثر من صيغة:

1. make + مفعول + (to) مصدر الفعل بدون
- We make our children read simple stories.

2. make + مفعول + adjective
- The actor's new film made him famous.

3. make + مفعول + adjective + (to) + مصدر الفعل
- The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friends.

meeting
اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)
The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.

conference
مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)
The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.

4 interview
مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)
- Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris.
- A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.

appointment
موعد (مع شخص/طبيب)
I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Egypt successfully hosted the UN Climate Change in November 2022.
a) Meeting b) Conference c) Interview d) Appointment

2 These three parts of the brain are closely
a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered

3 The internet has become part of all young people's life.
a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days

4 My parents always my little brother do his homework before going to bed.
a) make b) advise c) blame d) ask

5 Ferial Ashraf has had many on TV channels since she became an Olympic champion.
a) reviews b) conferences c) interviews d) meetings

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) app

2 Our boss is very, he doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) personal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal

3 Mrs Ashraf at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

4 Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest of the 20th century music.
a) players b) editors c) explorers d) innovators

5 Our neighbour is an excellent who teaches French at Cairo University.
a) linguist b) astronomer c) astronaut d) biologist

6 Education must be about learning and developing skills.
a) correctly b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly

7 The headmaster kept his friendly with the students who came to talk to him about the school trip.
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note

8 Many children enter kindergarten without skills of knowing colours, letters and numbers.
a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

9 Television, radio and other forms of mass have made the world a global village.
a) punctuation b) connection c) affection d) communication

10 People whose job staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) appears b) inquires c) requires d) applies

11 Some recent studies against drinking too much caffeine.
a) recommend b) fail c) deal d) warn

12 Being tall gave the young player a/an over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) care c) advantage d) experience

13 I drank coffee with my friend and about our experiences at work.
a) copied b) chatted c) admitted d) read

14 Choosing a new car is a matter of preference which differs from one to another.
a) personal b) common c) public d) general

15 The cost of the trip to Sharm El Sheikh is 1000 pounds for and 500 pounds for children.
a) enemies b) foreigners c) adults d) babies

16 A is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler

17 She warned us not to go too close to the fire. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb "..... ".
a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

18 There was an of fear on the child's face when he/she saw the lion.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) expressing

19 I usually use Facebook and Twitter to in touch with all my friends.
a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay

20 I really upset when father cancelled our trip to Alexandria because he had to go to work.
a) took b) made c) got d) did

21 The police fired a number of shots to make the people move away.
a) warn b) warning c) warring d) warned

22 A customer service clerk must be good at dealing people of different ages.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

23 My daughter is in the habit of a selfie in each place she visits for the first time.
a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making

24 Working hard all the year-round will help you all exams.
a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade

25 He seemed to approve of my choice. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb "..... ".
a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire

26 Nowadays, mass media helps us with each other easily. *(Longman)*
a) connect b) communicate c) join d) link

27 Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable for emails. *(Longman)*
a) formal b) informal c) foreign d) fluent

28 A is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. *(Longman)*
a) tan b) tune c) ton d) tone

29 This young man is a/an; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. *(Longman)*
a) innovator b) discoverer c) explorer d) surveyor

30 The language of text messages doesn't correct spelling. *(Longman)*
a) inquire b) acquire c) require d) enquire

B Language

Direct Speech — الكلام المباشر

- هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان الشخص مباشرة كما ينطقه هو، ويوضع الكلام المباشر بين علامات اقتباس " ".

My brother said to me, "Call me when you go home".

Indirect/Reported Speech — الكلام غير المباشر

- الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان.

My brother asked me to call him when I went home.

Reporting orders, requests and advice — تحويل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر

لتحويل الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة لغير المباشر

١) يتحول فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية إلى أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يوجه/يعلم	warn	يحذر

٢) تُلغى علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ويأتى بعدهما المصدر.

The teacher said to us, "Stop talking."

The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.

My mother said to me, "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."

My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.

My father said to me, "Don't waste time."

My father advised me not to waste time.

Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university."

Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

لاحظ

لكى تختار بين to أو not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تتحير فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى باللغة العربية يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

He warned his daughter (to/not to) walk in the dark alone.

فاربما تترجم وتقول: «هو حذر ابنته أن تمشى فى الظلام» وتختار to وهذا خطأ لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبت فنختار to أو منفى فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو «... Don't walk» فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The flight attendant instructed us our safety belts before taking off.

a) not to fasten
b) fastening
c) to fasten
d) don't fasten

2 My friend advised me nervous before the sports match.

a) not to be
b) to be
c) be
d) that I be

3 Ola said to Reham," the hotel your CV to apply for the job".

a) Not to send
b) To send
c) Sending
d) Send

4 Fatma Huda to revise for the test.

a) said
b) advised
c) encouraged
d) both b & c

5 The teacher warned the students to write their names at the top of the page.

a) to forget
b) forgetting
c) not to forget
d) that they forget

could/couldn't + inf.

A) could + inf.

- Refers to the general ability to do something in the past.

استطاعة فعل شيء فى الماضى مقدرة بوجه عام وبدون مجهود.

Our team could beat the star team last week.

للمقدرة فى موقف معين نستخدم : was/were able to – managed to

Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh managed to beat him.

B) couldn't + inf.

1 Unable to do something in the past.

عدم استطاعة فعل شيء فى الماضى.

I couldn't get the full mark in maths yesterday as the exam was for giants.

2 It was forbidden/against the law.

لم أستطع لأنه كان غير قانونى.

I couldn't park in Adly Street as parking wasn't allowed there.

could/couldn't have + P.P.

A) could have + P.P.

- تستخدم could have + P.P. كالآتى:

1 Something was possible in the past.

شيء كان ممكنًا حدوثه فى الماضى (احتمال ضعيف) تساوى might

My friend was absent yesterday. He could/might have been ill.

I didn't see Omar at the party last night. He could have left early.

2 Someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do.

كان فى مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

We travelled to Aswan by train. We could have travelled by plane.

You didn't pass the exam. You could have studied harder.

B) couldn't have + P.P.

تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. كالآتى:

Something wasn't possible in the past.

شىء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى أو مستحيلًا.

My father's keys are on the table. He couldn't have gone to work by car.

لاحظ أن معنى couldn't have + P.P. هو نفس معنى الاستنتاج المنفى فى الماضى can't have + P.P.

He couldn't/can't have known about the party from me. I haven't told anyone yet!

لاحظ

أيضا يمكن استخدام could/couldn't have + P.P. :

After wish/If only to refer to the past.

بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم فى الماضى.

I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.

I wish I couldn't have bought that expensive mobile.

If ⟶ past perfect ⟶ could/couldn't have + P.P.

فى جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.

If he had known that I was ill, he could have visited me.

Unless he had woken up early, he couldn't have caught the train.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't play football now, but I when I was younger.
a) couldn't b) could have
c) should have d) could

2 The copier isn't working. You the ink in a wrong way.
a) should have changed b) could change
c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed

3 If Sami had trained harder, he well.
a) should have played b) could have played
c) played d) couldn't have played

4 He at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.
a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
c) couldn't have been d) could be

5 I was so sick yesterday that I get out of my bed.
a) can't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

should/shouldn't have + P.P.

A) should have + P.P./ought to have + P.P.

- We use should have/ought to have + past participle to talk about things we regret.

تستخدم should have/ought to have + past participle للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء لم نفعله).

He was thirsty during the trip. He should have bought more water.

I ought to have left earlier to catch the train. I will take the next one.

B) shouldn't have + P.P./oughtn't to have + P.P.

- We use shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. to express feeling sorry about something that happened in the past.

تستخدم shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. للندم على شىء تم/حدث فى الماضى (لم يكن واجبًا فعله).

I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.

She oughtn't to have revealed her friend's secret. She was dishonest.

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There were so many people in the house. his father before inviting all his friends?

a) He should have asked
b) Should he have asked
c) Should he ask
d) He should ask

2 He is so ill. I think they a doctor earlier.

a) shouldn't have consulted
b) couldn't have consulted
c) should consult
d) should have consulted

3 I Ali during his sleeping hours, but I forgot.

a) shouldn't have phoned
b) couldn't have phoned
c) could have phoned
d) should have phoned

4 You should have been nicer to Asmaa. She was furious. This is a kind of

a) suggestion
b) regret
c) blame
d) offer

5 It is his wish that the money to charity.

a) should have given
b) should be given
c) should give
d) should have been given

Practice

Practise more

Language
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor me to drink plenty of water.
a) warned b) suggested c) begged d) told

2 You the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
a) could have caught b) could catch
c) might catch d) shouldn't have caught

3 They to China 3 years ago because of COVID-19.
a) could go b) couldn't have gone
c) should have gone d) should go

4 Fatma phoned me before going out. It was desirable.
a) shouldn't have b) needn't have
c) should have d) must have

5 I was sitting at the back of the theatre and very well.
a) shouldn't hear b) can't hear
c) shouldn't have heard d) couldn't hear

6 She warned her daughter near the campfire because it was dangerous.
a) not to go b) to go c) that she go d) going

7 Samir was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He anybody.
a) couldn't have beaten b) could beat
c) can beat d) shouldn't beat

8 He much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked
c) should have worked d) could work

9 Ahmed's father advised him the front door at night.
a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking

10 My brother to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone
c) could go d) couldn't have gone

11 I more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.
a) could walk b) shouldn't have walked
c) walked d) could have walked

12 The situation was bad, and it worse if he insisted on his ideas.

a) could have been b) should have been

c) shouldn't have been d) could be

13 I didn't want to delay Osama, so I asked him

a) to wait for me if I'm late b) not to wait for me if I was late

c) to wait for me if I was late d) not to wait for me if I'm late

14 You yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.

a) could behave b) shouldn't behave

c) ought to have behaved d) shouldn't have behaved

15 The tour guide warned the tourists into the desert on their own.

a) going b) to go c) that they go d) not to go

16 If I had known about the traffic problems, I a different route.

a) might have taken b) could take

c) might take d) couldn't have taken

17 I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I a book to read.

a) shouldn't have brought b) should have brought

c) could bring d) should bring

18 Galal was lucky. He hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.

a) could b) should have c) couldn't have d) could have

19 What made the police suspicious مرتاب was that I the number of my own car.

a) shouldn't have remembered b) should remember

c) couldn't remember d) could have remembered

20 You bought a new camera; it wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.

a) should have b) could have

c) must have d) shouldn't have

21 I missed the first lecture; I up late last night.

a) shouldn't have stayed b) could have stayed

c) should have stayed d) needn't stay

22 My mother always advises us avoid making friends with bad people.

a) not to b) don't c) to d) to not

23 I travelled by train. I by car, but I felt too tired to drive.

a) had to travel b) could have travelled

c) might have travelled d) have to travel

24 The teacher told us to do the exercise. This shows

a) order
b) persuasion
c) punishment
d) negative advice

25 We meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish.

a) shouldn't have bought
b) could have bought
c) needn't buy
d) couldn't have bought

26 It wasn't good of you to leave me in that critical situation. You me.

a) could phone
b) should have phoned
c) should phone
d) shouldn't have phoned

27 The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody escape.

a) managed to
b) should
c) must
d) could

28 Ola was going to the shop, so I her to get me some flour and sugar.

a) warned
b) suggested
c) advised
d) asked

29 The building was empty when the firemen entered. The workers through the exit doors.

a) couldn't have escaped
b) shouldn't have escaped
c) were able to escape
d) can't have escaped

30 He his son not to make friends with bad people.

a) spoke
b) warned
c) suggested
d) recommended

31 My son applied for a job as an accountant, but he his own business.

a) could have set up
b) could set up
c) must have set up
d) had to set up

32 "Could" is used at present to function as a and suggestion.

a) necessity
b) blame
c) prohibition
d) request

33 The opposing team were struggling all the time to win, but we beat them at the end.

a) might
b) managed to
c) can
d) should have

34 You punished her. She didn't deserve it.

a) needn't have
b) couldn't have
c) oughtn't to have
d) mustn't have

35 Choose the grammatically correct answer:

a) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
b) I warned my daughter to walk in dark streets alone.
c) I warned my daughter not to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
d) I warned my daughter not to walking in dark streets alone.

Test yourself

Take a Test

Part (1)
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 He said that his first reaction was shock. The word "reaction" is similar in meaning to the noun
a) response b) activity c) ability d) relaxation

2 My mother upset when I told her that I lost my mobile at school.
a) made b) turned c) got d) grew

3 My father believes that religion has a influence on our society as it helps implanting morals.
a) unknown b) passive c) positive d) negative

4 Some distant villages in Africa lack services such as water and electricity.
a) minor b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

5 Mohamed angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 It took the company a week to reply to my letter. The verb "reply" can be the opposite to the verb
a) accept b) request c) offer d) answer

7 We all about our children and hate to see them hurt in any way.
a) care b) ignore c) devise d) behave

8 The young couple gave each other some at Christmas.
a) prizes b) gifts c) emojis d) marks

9 Many people don't buy newspapers anymore as they read them
a) everyday b) inline c) offline d) online

10 The postman brought a/an and some letters for you.
a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention

11 I selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
a) regret b) admit c) recommend d) wish

12 It is said that dolphins use sound to with each other.
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

13 All staff members are expected to attend the next important about the company's future.
a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

14 You should for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
a) deal b) apply c) comply d) imply

15 The customer complained that he the store six weeks ago and didn't receive his order yet.
a) messaged b) warned c) chatted d) regretted

Language

16 Sara's mother warned her the oven because it was hot.
a) not to touch b) to touch c) touching d) don't touch

17 I my car in a "No parking area". I had to pay a fine.
a) shouldn't have parked b) couldn't have parked
c) couldn't park d) shouldn't park

18 He has got 80% only. He 90% if he had studied more.
a) could get b) should have got
c) must have got d) could have got

19 The policeman instructed the people so fast.
a) not to drive b) to drive c) that drive d) driving

20 I got up late this morning; I up late last night.
a) should have stayed b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed d) needn't stay

21 I phoned the plumber because I smell gas in the kitchen.
a) can b) could c) managed to d) couldn't

22 Habiba the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead.
a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
c) could have bought d) was able to

23 The teacher warned the students to write their name at the top of the page.
a) to forget b) forgetting
c) not to forget d) that they forget

24 Our neighbours down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) shouldn't have cut b) mustn't have cut
c) could have cut d) could cut

25 **A:** I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.
B: Why didn't you tell me! I you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

26 you speak French when you went to the university in Paris or did you learn later?
a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't d) Should

27 I to by a doctor.
a) was advised/see b) was advised/be seen
c) advised/be seen d) advised/see

28 My cousin read and write when he was five.
a) can b) must c) may d) could

29 His health condition got worse and worse. He a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have seen b) ought to have seen
c) could see d) shouldn't see

30 The boys left school before the end of the day. They were punished.
a) shouldn't have b) must be
c) should have d) could have been

Study Watch a video

Part (2)
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

anymore (adv)	لم يعد
blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة
check (v) (ed)	يراجع/يفحص
cite (v) (d)	ينوه/يذكر
conclusion (n)	خاتمة/خلاصة
debate (n)	مناظرة
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض/يخالف
findings (n)	اكتشافات
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
grandparents (n)	أجداد
headline (n)	عنوان
image (n)	صورة
key (adj)	رئيسى
modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى
partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
prefix (n)	بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)
procedure (n)	إجراء
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
receive (v) (d)	يتسلم/يتلقى
section (n)	قسم
society (n)*	مجتمع
sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
suffix (n)	لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
tips (n)	نصائح
uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

We should follow the customs of our society or at least respect them.

Workbook Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر/عصر
aim (n)	هدف
Angles (n)	قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
Greek (adj)	يونانى
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر
hobby (n)	هواية
interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمامًا
Latin (n) (adj)	اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى
member (n)	عضو/فرد
powerful (adj)	قوى/ذو نفوذ
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل

remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل	site (n)	موقع
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
result (n)	نتيجة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
Romans (n)	الرومان	title (n)	عنوان
Russian (n) (adj)	روسى	Vikings (n)	غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)
Saxons (n)	قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The head teacher has several calls from angry parents about the condition of the school bus.
a) received b) disagreed c) sent d) designed

2 A number of well-known film directors have expressed in turning the novel into a film.
a) debate b) interest c) invention d) discovery

3 The government aims at delivering care and treatment to people in the countryside.
a) probable b) recognisable c) proper d) careless

4 Facebook and Twitter are the most famous social websites.
a) competition b) service c) course d) media

5 All the staff and students need to be trained about safety during earthquakes.
a) products b) production c) procedures d) records

6 I just had time to scan the newspaper before leaving for work.
a) captions b) headlines c) articles d) analysis

7 Mohamed Salah played a/an role in Liverpool's winning seasons.
a) key b) minor c) unimportant d) aimless

8 There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles above.
a) searched b) removed c) recorded d) cited

9 The chef said that you must stir the sauce to avoid burning.
a) annually b) rarely c) frequently d) politely

10 The assistant told us that the frozen-foods is in the back of the shop.
a) section b) carriage c) aisle d) route

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	give an opinion	يعطي رأيًا
do the same	يفعل نفس الشيء	in general	بشكل عام
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
add to/into	يضيف إلى	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدًا عن
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
suitable for	مناسب لـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
disagree	يخالف/يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز (يمكن تمييزه)
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyse	discard/neglect	يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/controversy	agreement/harmony	اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/passion	indifference/boredom	لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث/عصري	contemporary/modernised	old/ancient	قديم

procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity	عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite	غامض/غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/record	hide/conceal	يخفى
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence	إهمال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I didn't recognise you in your uniform. The noun of the verb "recognise" is
a) recognised b) recognisable c) recognisably d) recognition

2 I am worried about my car as the engine is different and strange sounds.
a) making b) doing c) taking d) replying

3 A special expert the young graduates advice about finding a suitable job.
a) made b) gave c) devised d) took

4 I chose the quiet resort because it is particularly suitable families.
a) in b) on c) for d) at

5 In, Japanese cars are very reliable and breakdowns are rare.
a) advance b) public c) private d) general

6 The students continually notes during the lecture of the foreign professor as it was valuable.
a) inspected b) gave c) took d) received

7 Some people disagree with this argument. The noun from the verb "disagree" is "..... " .
a) disagrees b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

8 There was a wider debate on the issue of violence. The antonym of the word "debate" is "..... " .
a) agreement b) controversy c) argument d) denial

9 It's right and proper that his family should be present at graduation. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "..... " .
a) improper b) doubtful c) suitable d) inappropriate

10 A recent survey has recorded over 116 species of plants. The noun "survey" is similar in meaning to the noun
a) satisfaction b) distention c) neglect d) analysis

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

prefix

البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis – re – un)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand يسىء الفهم	misuse يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread يعيد قراءة	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo يلغى العمل	unrecognisable لا يمكن تمييزه

suffix

اللاحقة هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة، ومنها (able - er - less)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples	
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable يمكن فهمه	recognisable يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer مهتم/مراعٍ	writer كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless غير حريص	useless بلا فائدة

2

title

١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
٢- لقب
٣- مسمى وظيفى

- The title of the play we study this year is *"King Lear"*.
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

address

١- عنوان (مكان)
٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
٣- خطاب/يخاطب

- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

3

debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

The two politicians السياسيان will have a debate about their different economic ideas.

discussion

مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)

Our English teacher sometimes starts his lesson with a short discussion about the new topic.

society
المجتمـع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)

The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.

4

community
المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)

The president met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young poet's poems were published under the of *"Love and Romance"*.
a) address b) title
c) rank d) award

2 The government built a new hospital to serve the rural near the Siwa Oasis.
a) society b) government
c) community d) business

3 Nuclear power has always been a topic of considerable whether for or against it.
a) discussions b) debates
c) fights d) battles

4 The young man was accused of giving a false of his office to the police.
a) award b) title
c) headline d) address

5 There are several projects under and the board must give a decision about them soon.
a) debate b) fight
c) discussion d) battle

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 All over the world, there is a great whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
a) agreement b) debate c) search d) finding

2 The house where my lived is being demolished because it was old.
a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors

3 Guardiola, the 'Manchester City' manager, is an excellent coach who knows how to get great
a) reasons b) purposes c) conclusions d) results

4 All office workers must make regular progress to their managers.
a) conclusions b) reports c) conferences d) procedures

5 The website warned all participants that any rude or bullying will be deleted.
a) comment b) interest c) product d) record

6 The manager hopes he will become a in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

7 The Giza of the motorway is closed for repairs until the end of the month.
a) site b) centre c) section d) aim

8 The referees the times of all competitors to decide the winner.
a) resulted b) explored c) received d) recorded

9 The doctor advised her to in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) check

10 I asked my friend to help me get a new passport as I don't know the
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

11 Scientists the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) divided b) compared c) cited d) remained

12 Stamp collecting has been a of mine since I was a child.
a) result b) challenge c) tip d) hobby

13 Many negative of women are found in the media.
a) photos b) images c) procedures d) portraits

14 To be successful, the of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

15 I recommend that you buy a more computer to get the project ready soon.
a) powerful b) helpless c) ordinary d) ancient

16 The author's name is usually printed below the of his or her novel.
a) text b) address c) speech d) title

17 We contrasted the two characters of the story. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word
a) compare b) sum up c) record d) find

18 My hometown is hardly to me as I last visited it in 2001.
a) recognise b) recognition c) recognisable d) forgettable

19 I don't have any clothes which are suitable the party.
a) for b) about c) on d) over

20 The two boys had a major over who should clean their father's car.
a) disagree b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

21 Girls like to special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.
a) feel b) make c) work d) help

22 Do you want to add your name the waiting list for the tickets?
a) with b) for c) in d) to

23 The journalists who attended the conference notes of the most important points.
a) filled b) drew c) gave d) took

24 In modern times, advances in technology have made the world smaller. The antonym of the adjective "modern" is "..... ".
a) updated b) ancient c) fashionable d) helpful

25 My younger sister always asks me to her my opinion of her clothes.
a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver

26 A/An..... is added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. *(Longman)*
a) acronym b) abbreviation c) suffix d) prefix

27 This man standing next to your uncle in that photo isn't; I don't remember him. *(Longman)*
a) recognisable b) valuable c) arguable d) tolerable

28 The doctor the results of the two blood analyses to see how much the patient had improved. *(Longman)*
a) cured b) completed c) compared d) mixed

29 A/An is a discussion on a particular topic that frequently lasts for a long time and in which several points of view are expressed. *(Longman)*
a) post b) debate c) quarrel d) interview

30 A/An is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is regularly added. *(Longman)*
a) email b) post c) blog d) title

B Language

Important Notes

1 could/could have for other usages

Rule	Usage
could be (inf.) might be (inf.) may be (inf.)	When we are uncertain about something at present. عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء في المضارع.

Example

A: Where is dad? **B:** I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

Rule	Usage
can't have + P.P. couldn't have + P.P.	I'm certain that something didn't happen. (past deduction). شيء لا يمكن أن يكون حدث في الماضي (استنتاج قوي في الماضي).

Example

She can't have left the house yet because her car is still outside.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P. may have + P.P. might have + P.P.	The speaker is not sure whether something happened or not. المتحدث غير متأكد مما إذا كان شيء ما قد حدث أم لا.

Example

The copier isn't working. It might have run out of paper.
She could have gone to the shops. I'm not sure.

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	After wish/If only to refer to the present and the future If ⟶ past simple ⟶ could + inf. بعد wish/if only للتعبير عن أمنية في المستقبل أو المضارع، وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد If.

Examples

I wish/If only I could play the piano.
I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
He could go with us if he weren't ill.

Could (present)

- Polite request — طلب مؤدب
 Could + subj. + inf.?
 Could you buy me two kilos of sugar?
- Suggestion — اقتراح
 Subj. + could + inf.
 You could study science at college.
 You could buy a new car.
- More than a suggestion — أكثر من اقتراح
 could .. or ..
 You could come with us or you could stay here.
- Recommendations — التوصيات
 could + inf.
 You could visit the Citadel. It's interesting.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They at school. I'm not sure.
a) could still be b) are still c) have still been d) must still be

2 Ali to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
a) can travel b) can't have travelled
c) must travel d) should have travelled

3 Why didn't Salah come to our party? He have forgotten or travelled.
a) should b) might c) must d) mustn't

4 During coronavirus pandemic, we enter the train without a face mask. It was against the law.
a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) shouldn't

5 If Yasser got up late, he the train on time.
a) can't have taken b) couldn't take
c) couldn't have taken d) may take

2 should for advice/should have for regret/blame

Advice	Regret/Blame
should/ought to/had better + inf.	**should/ought to/have + P.P.**
• They should (ought to) help the poor. • We shouldn't waste our time. • They ought to study hard. • He had better not use the phone a lot.	• You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night (blame). • I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time (regret).

Should + inf. for prediction

should + inf. ought to + inf.	to make a prediction للتنبؤ توقع حدوث شيء بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل (من المفترض/لازم).

Osama should arrive soon. He left office at 6.

Passive

-عند استخدام modal verbs فى المبنى للمجهول إذا كان بعدها المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدها have نستخدم been + P.P. بعد have.

Examples

The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.

The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.



Summary

Direct & indirect orders, advice and requests

Direct	Indirect
• The teacher said to us, "Do the quiz". • My father said to me, "Don't run on the stairs."	• The teacher told/asked/ordered us to do the quiz. • My father advised/warned/told me not to run on the stairs.

Modal verbs (could / should)

Could + inf.

- I could ride a bike when I was 10. — المقدرة فى الماضى
- Could you lend me some money? — طلب مؤدب فى المضارع
- We could watch the final match on TV. — للاقتراح فى المضارع
- You could buy the book at the fair. It's cheaper. — للتوصيات

Couldn't + inf.

- I couldn't ride a bike when I was 10. — عدم استطاعة فعل شىء فى الماضى.
- I couldn't travel without a ticket. It's forbidden. — عدم الاستطاعة لأنه كان غير قانونى.

Could have + P.P.

- My friend was absent yesterday. He could have been ill. — شىء كان ممكنًا حدوثه فى الماضى (احتمال ضعيف)
- He didn't succeed. He could have studied harder. — كان فى مقدور شخص ان يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

Couldn't have + P.P.

- He was late for the party. He couldn't have taken the right road. — شىء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى او مستحيلًا.

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have booked the tickets last week. I feel sorry for not booking the ticket.
a) can't b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't

2 When you go to Paris next month, you with my cousin.
a) should have stayed b) shouldn't have stayed
c) could have stayed d) could stay

3 Hossam wasn't at the scene of the crime, so he have been guilty.
a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should

4 You have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
a) should b) must c) mustn't d) couldn't

5 He have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a) oughtn't b) should c) needn't d) must

6 He have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
a) can't b) must c) could d) might

7 Ali have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b) must c) might d) should

8 **A:** I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
B: You meat or chicken with some soup.
a) couldn't make b) could make
c) could have made d) should have made

9 You have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should

10 We have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do, but we didn't do it.
a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) might

11 He a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
c) consulted d) could have consulted

12 She's late. She have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

13 I have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!

a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

14 They smoke there. They aren't allowed.

a) can't b) must c) couldn't d) might

15 He have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a) must b) ought to c) shouldn't d) might

16 We were totally free. We what we wanted.

a) couldn't have done b) should do

c) couldn't do d) could do

17 **A:** How did the robbers get in?

B: We don't know yet. The old woman have forgotten to lock the door.

a) must b) might c) can't d) should

18 You have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.

a) couldn't b) should c) shouldn't d) could

19 you possibly give me a lift to the next village?

a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Should d) Could

20 He been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a) could have b) has

c) can't have d) shouldn't have

21 I'm so sorry; I have visited you, but I too busy.

a) shouldn't / am b) ought to / wasn't c) should / was d) ought / was

22 I my paragraph well; it was full of mistakes.

a) should have checked b) shouldn't check

c) should check d) shouldn't have checked

23 Kamal abroad; he is still in Cairo.

a) had to travel b) must have travelled

c) can't have travelled d) shouldn't have travelled

24 We the weekend in Alexandria, but we preferred to be with our old friends in the village.

a) had to spend b) could have spent

c) shouldn't have spent d) must have spent

25 Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's baby sleeping.

a) can't be b) may not be

c) may be d) should be

26 Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he it.

a) didn't buy b) regrets buying

c) saved but didn't buy d) was wrong to buy

27 I called her, but there was no answer. She for Alexandria.

a) has probably left b) should have left

c) can't have left d) might have left

28 Fady his exam as he seems happy.

a) could have passed b) shouldn't have passed

c) could pass d) can't have passed

29 He his exams. I'm not sure.

a) must have finished b) can't have finished

c) shouldn't have finished d) might have finished

30 Which of the following doesn't show regret? *(Longman)*

a) I should have followed my father's advice.

b) I ought not to have ignored my father's advice.

c) I regret not following my father's advice.

d) I shouldn't ignore my father's advice.

31 These flowers should be watered twice a week, but I always forget to water them. This means it's

a) must b) advisable c) unnecessary d) necessity

32 I speak English fluently until I was 20 when I travelled to England and met native speakers.

a) wasn't able to b) was able to

c) didn't succeed in d) wasn't capable of

33 I shouldn't have wasted my time playing and having fun. This can be a/an

a) suggestion b) regret c) request d) offer

34 A: You bought the tickets, didn't you?

B: No, I, but I didn't have enough money.

a) couldn't b) ought to have been c) must have d) should have

35 "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means

a) they can't help sick people

b) they must be helping sick people

c) they might have helped sick people

d) they ought to help sick people

Test yourself

Take a test

Part (2)
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The Cairo Tower can be recognisable from a long distance away. The adjective "recognisable" can be the opposite to the adjective
a) definite b) reachable c) clear d) ambiguous

2 Shakespeare's old English could be understood that time.
a) in b) by c) at d) for

3 We bought this house in 1986 and have lived here since.
a) never b) ever c) for d) before

4 It is important for any business owner to in touch with the latest technology.
a) keep b) play c) make d) leave

5 The experienced architect has worked on various building so the company chose him for an important project.
a) scenes b) views c) sights d) sites

6 Science is an important part of contemporary culture. The word "contemporary" is a synonym for the word "..... ".
a) ancient b) civilised c) modern d) behaved

7 You should the phone away from the child as he has been using it for a long time.
a) take b) give c) break d) repair

8 I asked my friend about the of this week's writing as I was absent.
a) address b) title c) site d) location

9 To ensure high quality, all products of the food factory go through strict testing
a) procedures b) findings c) results d) records

10 Experts advise all people to eat meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
a) probable b) interested c) comfortable d) proper

11 Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's
a) organisation b) society c) association d) interview

12 The of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
a) introduction b) tip c) conclusion d) start

13 Social have really changed the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a) service b) media c) status d) work

14 The interview with the new minister was on the front page of the newspaper.
a) summarised b) commented c) reduced d) increased

15 The hospital conducted a/an asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

Language

16 I wish I go to the stadium tomorrow.
a) can b) could c) will d) may

17 You me that the meeting has been cancelled.
a) should inform b) should have informed
c) shouldn't inform d) shouldn't have informed

18 Mum warned me play with matches.
a) not to b) don't c) to not d) to

19 Hossam was working with me all day, so you seen him at the park.
a) should have b) couldn't have c) could have d) shouldn't have

20 I went for a ten-mile run last Saturday. It nearly killed me! I move on Sunday.
a) can b) could c) managed to d) couldn't

21 I downloaded that program. Now, I have a virus on my laptop.
a) can't have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) will have

22 I'm really cold! I have brought my coat.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) might

23 If I had gone with my friends to the Red Sea, I scuba diving lessons.
a) must have taken b) can't have taken
c) could take d) could have taken

24 Really, I can't remember you, but I you before.
a) should have met b) shouldn't have met
c) might have met d) must met

25 Ahmed waited for you outside for a long time and was angry. You to have met him.
a) oughtn't b) should c) ought d) must

26 **A:** I threw your old books into the recycling bin.
B: Oh, no! You have done that. I need some of them for school.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) can't d) couldn't

27 I wonder why Ali hasn't come to my party. I suppose he have received the invitation.
a) must b) might not c) might d) shouldn't

28 You believe everything you read in the newspapers.
a) need b) must c) aren't d) shouldn't

29 Tamer walked into a wall. He have been looking where he was going.
a) couldn't b) must c) might d) could

30 the washing-up while I am doing the cooking?"
a) Could you have done b) Did you do
c) Could you do d) Should you have done

Study  Watch a video

Part (3)
Lessons 5 & 6

Act II, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
back (n)	ظهر	injured (adj)	مصاب/ مجروح
beggar (n)	متسول/ شحاذ	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
blood (n)	دم	plot (v) (ted)	يتآمر
call out (v) (ed)	يصرخ	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	جحود/عدم ثقة	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر
duty (n)	واجب	profit (v) (ed)	يربح/يستفيد
faithful (adj)	مخلص	reward (v) (ed)	يكافئ
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	stab (n)	طعنة
get (to) (v)	يصل	stocks (n)	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
guard (n) (v) (ed)	حارس/يحرس	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الخلف (الظهر)	change one's mind	يغير رأيه
(be) in a fight	يكون فى قتال	feel angry	يشعر بالغضب
faithful to	مخلص لـ	pick up	يلتقط
go back	يرجع/يعد	plot against	يتآمر ضد

Practice

Practise more

King Lear Exercises
Act II, Scenes i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young man has been on suspicion of using a stolen credit card.
a) arrested b) rewarded c) offered d) demanded

2 A is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
a) teller b) beggar c) blogger d) follower

3 The first reports about the plane crash were met with and people refused them.
a) rejoice b) belief c) disbelief d) cheer

4 My mother has always remained to the good values she learned as a child.
a) hateful b) lawful c) legal d) faithful

5 The stadium was protected by armed police during the match for security measures.
a) gangs b) enemies c) guards d) workers

6 My eldest son has his mother's patience.
a) bought b) inherited c) harmed d) tricked

7 Nobody could her to change her mind to leave the job.
a) persuade b) make c) defy d) deny

8 The spies were accused of..... against the country.
a) potting b) putting c) plotting d) parting

9 The little girl closed her eyes and to be asleep.
a) prohibited b) inhibited c) attended d) pretended

10 There was a rise in the company's this year. They made good money.
a) profits b) losses c) publicities d) publishers

11 Parents often give their children for passing exams.
a) awards b) rewards c) punishments d) medals

12 The old man was killed with a to the heart by a fierce criminal.
a) pull b) stick c) slab d) stab

13 The ferry عبارة was about to leave the when the machine broke down.
a) platform b) port c) pavement d) road

14 If new employees are unable to carry out their, they may be fired.
a) meals b) rights c) duties d) offices



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:

Writing tips

Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your readers on how to use their mobile phone in the most positive way?



Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday, I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises. In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 **The phrase "would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently" means**
 a) she was very happy
 b) she was very angry
 c) she was very ill
 d) she was bored with teaching

2 **When he was young, Albert Einstein**
 a) didn't care about learning
 b) was very stupid
 c) always made his teacher cry
 d) was clever enough to think about everything

3 **If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...**
 a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions
 b) Albert would have left the class happily
 c) Albert would have been angry
 d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4 **The best title for the passage is "....."**
 a) Albert Einstein's stupidity
 b) Albert Einstein and his teacher
 c) Albert Einstein and his deep-thinking
 d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5 Albert Einstein concluded that

a) there is something called the Earth
b) the Earth is oval
c) we live in a massive universe
d) asking questions is useful

6 Albert took time to answer questions at school because

a) he was busy
b) he was stupid
c) the questions were difficult
d) he thought a lot

7 Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her because

a) she didn't know the answer
b) the questions were embarrassing
c) the questions were off point
d) he was making fun of her

8 People always asked Albert about a lot of things as

a) he claimed prophecy
b) he was a physician
c) he knew many things
d) he was a clever student

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.

a) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

b) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم غير رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

c) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

d) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن كل الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

2 Competition in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds. Greed for money and power is the root of many crimes.

a) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشريرة فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

b) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الخيرة فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

c) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشريرة فالجشع من أجل المال والطاقة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

d) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتنتج أحيانًا من الأفعال الشريرة فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

3 We use messaging daily to communicate with friends and family, and its convenience has made us want to use it to communicate with businesses too.

a) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الصعوبة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

b) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلنا التلازم الذى توفره نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

c) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للشكوى إلى الشركات أيضًا.

d) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

4 Corruption and indiscipline are the main factors that lead to the deterioration of our economy. That's why the government is trying hard to fight them.

a) يُعد الفساد و الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
b) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
c) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الثانوية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
d) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تقدم اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.

5 Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the success and progress of any society. They must be taught at an early age.

a) التعاون والعمل الجماعى كميتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
b) التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
c) التعاون والعمل الجماعى مقداران ضروريان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
d) التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن باكرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 أصبح تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

a) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is a national language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.
b) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and propaganda purposes.
c) Learning English has become an important place of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.
d) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

7 أثبتت أزمة كوفيد- ١٩ والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أهمية أن نحاول تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى من إنتاج الغذاء وأن نقلل استيراده

a) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its export.
b) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have denied the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its import.
c) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its import.
d) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-dependency in food production and to reduce its import.

8 يحصل الأبطال المصريون فى الألعاب الفردية على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التى لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

a) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.
b) The Egyptian champions in member games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

c) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and report as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

d) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same intention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

9 يحذر الخبراء من استخدام الأطفال المفرط للإنترنت؛ لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى آثار سيئة على صحتهم؛ لذا يجب تعليمهم ترشيد هذا الاستخدام.

a) Experts warn against children's repulsive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

b) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to reinvent this use.

c) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

d) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this results in bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

10 للأصدقاء تأثير كبير فى حياة المراهقين؛ لذلك يجب على الآباء تشجيعهم على الصحبة الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح فى الحياة.

a) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good partnership. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

b) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

c) Friends have a tiny impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

d) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Nevertheless, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

3 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend wants to improve his/her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give his/her your advice."

Your friend's name is Manal and her email address is: manal10@gmail.com.

Your name is Leila and your email address is: leila10@yahoo.com

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We didn't have the proper tools to do the job right. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "……".
a) updated b) suitable c) fashionable d) helpless

2 As a linguistic innovator, Shakespeare could add many words and phrases …… the English language.
a) at b) for c) with d) to

3 The movie has a comic …… throughout although it has some adventure scenes.
a) scenery b) sound c) tone d) voice

4 Children must be taught the …… rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.
a) basic b) extra c) additional d) fictional

5 The teacher …… angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 Some new scientific theories take a very long time to …… in our real life.
a) apply b) reply c) imply d) intensify

7 As soon as I walked into the room, I …… gas.
a) could have smelt b) must have smelt
c) can't have smelt d) could smell

8 Many people are demanding that something …… about pollution.
a) should have done b) should do
c) should be done d) shouldn't be done

9 Reham …… have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.
a) mustn't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

10 "Don't wait for me, Ahmed," said Hany.
Hany told Ahmed …… .
a) to wait for him b) not to wait for him
c) didn't wait for him d) don't wait for him

11 The teacher …… us to keep quiet.
a) suggests b) wants c) warns d) says

12 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You …… have stayed with Tamer.
a) shouldn't b) might c) must d) could

13 We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we find him in the end.

a) can b) were able to c) should d) might

14 You could have left your phone at work. This means

a) it's impossible that you left it there

b) it's necessary that you left it there

c) it's advisable that you left it there

d) it's possible that you left it there

15 What yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!

a) did I have to do b) should I have done

c) should I do d) must I have done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glass makers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glass works from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices.

They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given along interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The main component of glass is

a) sand b) bottles c) silicate d) cups

17 Glass makers become craftsmen

a) at a very early age b) after three-year experience

c) when they join glass works d) after a lot of practice and experience

18 Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an

a) apprentice b) craftsman c) patient d) professional

19 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage:

a) making glass needs a lot of patience

b) making glass needs a lot of money

c) making glass needs a lot of experience

d) making glass needs a lot of heat

20 The silicate is heated to produce

a) sand b) glass c) moulds d) apprentices

21 Mistakes in this industry is unacceptable as craftsmen may

a) lose money b) harm their lungs c) lose their voice d) be disabled

22 The master craftsmen are asked to

a) handle special rim

b) take courses

c) sell their products

d) teach older craftsmen

23 The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The History of Glass

b) The importance of Sand

c) Glass Industry

d) Trade

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- أن تكون غير أناني ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا في ساعة المعاناة وقويًا في وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

a) If you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and lovely, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.

b) Unless you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.

c) Although you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good quantities.

d) While you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successive person, with many good qualities.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The champions who won medals in the last Olympics proved that the Egyptians are able to do wonders despite their present hardships. They only need facilities and encouragement.

(a) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

(b) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين غير قادرون على صنع المعجزات بسبب الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

(c) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع القدرات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

(d) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين غير قادرين على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات المستمرة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع للنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 3 & 4 Al-Adwaa Test 40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Egypt is hoping to achieve economic growth which will improve people's lives.
a) movable b) sustainable c) perfectible d) detestable

2 Hard work, patience and determination are the essential for success.
a) chemicals b) paints c) ingredients d) components

3 The first thing I noticed about the little girl was her blue eyes. The antonym of the verb "notice" is "..... ".
a) intend b) protect c) regard d) ignore

4 We use the "cm" for "centimetres", without any full stop after it.
a) indication b) domination c) declaration d) abbreviation

5 The story of the new car make was reported on the business of the newspaper.
a) title b) college c) section d) degree

6 It isn't a good idea to your personal information on websites that you can't trust.
a) derive b) post c) revise d) analyse

7 Riham is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she in the Mediterranean.
a) will sail b) 'll be sailing c) sails d) sailed

8 **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I know. I some this afternoon.
a) won't buy b) will have bought
c) will be bought d) am going to buy

9 My little grandchild three next Friday.
a) is going to be b) will have been
c) will be d) would be

10 In two years' time, Imad English at university.
a) will be studying b) will study c) will be studied d) studies

11 I expect him to dinner.
a) coming b) come c) to come d) should come

12 Our son promised to clean his room, but it is still messy. He it.

a) cannot clean b) couldn't have cleaned

c) can't clean d) shouldn't have cleaned

13 You missed a great party last night. You have come. Why didn't you?

a) might b) must c) should d) can't

14 He have committed this crime. He wasn't even in the city that night.

a) might b) must c) shouldn't d) couldn't

15 "..... on the grass as it is wet." said the gardener.

a) Don't walk b) Walk c) To walk d) Not to walk

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You may have seen pictures of astronauts. They float around in space. They fly in a space shuttle. Have you ever wondered why they float? Your feet stay firmly on the ground. Why don't theirs? When you drop something, why does it fall? The answer to these questions is something called gravity. It affects everything we do. Gravity is essential for life on earth. Many years ago, a man named Sir Isaac Newton wondered about gravity, too. He watched and tested the way things move and fall on Earth. He wrote his ideas down. Scientists today use a lot of his ideas. Those ideas are now considered laws of science. Gravity is a force that makes all objects attracted to each other. The bigger the object is, the more it attracts things. Since nothing on Earth is bigger than planet Earth itself, all the things and people on Earth are attracted by Earth. Everything is pulled toward the centre of the planet. That is why things fall to the ground. It is also why people and things stay on the ground instead of floating around in space. Earth is even large enough to attract our moon. That's why we can see it in our sky!

Gravity keeps our muscles and bones, up and working. Gravity allows earth to retain its atmosphere. Gravity, being able to store its energy as "potential energy", allows us to harness it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Why do your feet stay on the ground instead of floating?

a) Because they are heavy.

b) Because there isn't enough air.

c) Because of gravity.

d) Because the earth is very small.

17 Why are things and people attracted to Earth?

a) Because the Earth is attractive.
b) Because the Earth is bigger than other objects.
c) Because there is magnetism in things and people.
d) Because people like the Earth.

18 What can we see in the sky because of gravity?

a) The planets.
b) The stars.
c) The sun.
d) The moon.

19 The synonym of the word "essential" is ".....".

a) secondary
b) unnecessary
c) vital
d) option

20 Which best described Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation?

a) Gravity pulling depends on the length of its orbit.
b) The smaller the object, the greater the force.
c) The largest object exerts a force pulling every other object to it.
d) All objects exert a gravitational force on all other objects.

21 Which has a stronger force of gravity, the Earth or the moon?

a) The Earth.
b) The moon.
c) They are the same.
d) The moon has no gravity.

22 Which has the strongest gravitational pull?

a) The Earth.
b) The moon.
c) The Sun.
d) The North Star.

23 Because of gravity, everything is pulled to the of the planet.

a) margin
b) centre
c) left
d) ground

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some people believe that text messaging is a literary disease that will lead to the downfall of the language. However, young people believe that it is a way of innovation.

a) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض لغوى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

b) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية تطور أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للاتصال.

c) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

d) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية إبداع أدبى سيؤدى إلى نماء اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتواصل.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

في حين أن زيادة الوزن أصبحت إحدى مشكلات الدول المتقدمة، لا يزال الناس في بعض الدول النامية يعانون من سوء التغذية، بل يصابون بالمرض بسبب الغذاء غير الآمن.

a) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

b) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

c) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer at prosperity and even get sick from unsafe food.

d) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer of malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The mobile phone and social media affected our social relations badly. Do you agree? Why? Why not?"



Assess your progress

★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Being smart online

Unit 5

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research

Writing : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly

Listening : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people

Speaking : A presentation

Language : seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Resilience

Study

Watch a video

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	targeted advertising (n)	الدعاية الموجهة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	update (v) (d)	يحدث
follower (n)	متابع	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

I always get my information from reliable sources.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading texts

advertiser (n)	معلن	junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	knowledge (n)	معرفة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	mega meal (n)	وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	research (v) (ed)	يقوم ببحث
extra (adj)	إضافى	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	save (v) (d)	يحفظ
information (n)	معلومات	scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شىء محدد

skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى
source (n)	مصدر
task (n)	مهمة
URL Uniform Resource Locator	عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)

Workbook Vocabulary

access (n)	مدخل/إمكانية الوصول
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
app (n)	تطبيق
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
common (adj)	شائع
excuse (n)	عذر
fake (adj)	مزيف
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
Irish (adj)	إيرلندى
journalist (n)	صحفى
moral (n) (adj)	مغزى/أخلاقى/درس أخلاقى
musician (n)	موسيقار
obvious (adj)	واضح
perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
print (v) (ed)	يطبع
professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)
series (n)	سلسلة
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a well-known fact that animals can to different and extreme weather.
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

2 Most famous actors use social media such as Facebook to attract more
a) beginners b) followers c) bullies d) enemies

3 You can a free version of the game from the websites for free.
a) collect b) detach c) upload d) download

4 Before starting the journey, make sure you have a map of the area.
a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised

5 My advice is to a lawyer about the matter immediately.
a) consult b) support c) encourage d) check

6 According to the rules, all shops in the mall have to a smoke alarm.
a) break b) instill c) attach d) install

7 Leonardo DiCaprio, the American actor, played the lead in *Titanic*.
a) person b) character c) director d) servant

8 Advertising experts depend on to target their customers' needs.
a) viruses b) hackers c) cookies d) shares

9 Most job interviews focus on the candidate's ability to communicate
a) affectingly b) effectively c) horribly d) excitedly

10 Car factories use robots to do most of the hard in the process of car making.
a) rights b) plays c) sections d) tasks

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
do research	يقوم ببحث علمى	have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
do things	يقوم بأشياء	keep ... safe	يحافظ على ... آمنًا
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	knowledge of	معرفة بـ
careful about	حريص بشأن	information about	معلومات عن
find out	يكتشف	read on	يستمر بالقراءة
full of	ممتلئ بـ	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	معلن إعلان	----------	
apply	يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app) applicant	تطبيق/طلب وظيفة متقدم لوظيفة	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى
consult *	يستشير	consultation	استشارة	consultative	استشارى
influence	يؤثر	influence influencer	تأثير شخص موثر فى تفكير الآخرين	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض

- I prefer to consult old people to young people.
- Farmers always hold consultations about the agricultural techniques.
- There is a consultative group to ask about your inquiries.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real/original أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest مخادع/غير حقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent هاوٍ/غير كفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable غير أمين/غير موثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility اللامسئولية
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease يقلل/يخفض

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should find instant solutions to water pollution. The synonym of the word "instant" is "……".
a) original b) slow c) easy d) immediate

2 He had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to …… his research.
a) make b) play c) do d) carry

3 You must make sure you …… your important documents safe.
a) stay b) keep c) reply d) deploy

4 My friend …… no previous experience of managing a farm, but he started his own project.
a) had b) made c) grew d) turned

5 It's a good idea to collect rainwater for use in the garden. The noun from the verb "collect" is "……".
a) collects b) collected c) collection d) collective

6 With the internet, you can get all the information you look for …… the touch of a button.
a) out b) for c) in d) at

7 We sprayed fake snow over the trees to make it look like winter. The antonym of the adjective "fake" is "……".
a) false b) genuine c) fabricated d) duplicated

8 This is a better and more reliable car than my last one. The word "reliable" is similar in meaning to "……".
a) trustworthy b) doubtful c) dishonest d) vague

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

load يحمل (بضائع/برامج)/حمولة/عبئًا
- The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars.
- Newcomers couldn't afford the load of the work.

unload يفرغ حمولة
The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.

overload يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)
Be careful not to overload the washing machine.

download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت
There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.

upload يرفع إلى الإنترنت
It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

2

effective مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)
The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.

impressive مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)/رائع
Mohammad Salah has an impressive career which makes him a legend.

affecting مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)
The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.

3

experience
١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود)
٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)
- He had no previous experience for the job he applied for.
- The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.

experiment تجربة (علمية/معملية)
Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.

4

publish ينشر (عملًا فنيًا/جريدة/تقريرًا)
The novel was published last year.

spread
١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد
٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)
- Fire quickly spread through the building.
- The disease spread rapidly amongst the village.
- Mum spreads sandwiches with cheese like a chef.
- How dare you spread such evil lies!

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Astronauts performed some scientific during their expedition in the space station.
a) conditions b) experiments c) experiences d) licences

2 COVID-19 is primarily from person to person through coughing and sneezing.
a) spread b) published c) extracted d) sprayed

3 It might take a while for this video to to your blog as it is long.
a) load b) overload c) upload d) download

4 The recent research about the virus was in the Science Journal.
a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined

5 The most solution to traffic jams is to build more roads.
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nahdet Misr is a famous organisation which different kinds of books.
a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes

2 Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people to their channels.
a) subscribe b) adopt c) activate d) take part

3 The company's name is across the top of the letters they send.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

4 Samy found it hard to to life in the countryside when his father had to move there.
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

5 It might take some minutes to these high-definition photos to the website.
a) load b) download c) upload d) overload

6 Most websites use that enable them to show adverts which makes them a lot of money.
a) comments b) posts c) cookies d) shares

7 The website doesn't seem to be; there are lots of grammar mistakes.
a) available b) expectable c) avoidable d) reliable

8 advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
a) Banner b) Planner c) Amateur d) Targeted

9 Users have to pay to be able to the trial antivirus to the full version.
a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure

10 Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of of their fans.
a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses

11 will pay higher rates to be able to use the prime-time الأعلى مشاهدة entertainment shows.
a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals

12 You can find the site by typing the "forest bird" on the search page.
a) keys b) keywords c) images d) results

13 Unfortunately, most young people get all their about politics only from social media.
a) fancy b) concept c) election d) knowledge

14 China is a country which has few energy such as oil of its own.
a) stations b) reactors c) resources d) wells

15 I the waiting list quickly for my name.
a) scanned b) researched c) applied d) replied

16 Email password should be at least 8 long and not more than 15 ones.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

17 The actor was wearing a/an moustache and beard for the role of an old warrior.
a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

18 The text message was ambiguous as it was written in a secret code. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective "..... ".
a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

19 We must watch for our children who online a lot so as to be careful that they aren't misled.
a) come b) go c) travel d) view

20 My young brother can play video games and talk on the phone the same time.
a) at b) in c) for d) by

21 As a young actor, you have to be careful the roles you accept.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

22 You can run this on a computer and a mobile phone if you like.
a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

23 Nowadays, almost every young man or woman access to the internet through their mobile phones.
a) do b) make c) have d) win

24 This essay can be considered a document for everyone who uses social media.
a) consult b) consulted c) consultative d) consultant

25 Please, accept our sincere thanks. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective "..... ".
a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

26 Nowadays, we have good to most websites. *(Longman)*
a) stress b) accent c) across d) access

27 I must my doctor; I have a chest pain. *(Longman)*
a) result b) insist c) consult d) insult

28 I need to my antivirus software to make my personal computer fully protected. *(Longman)*
a) date b) update c) deactivate d) vibrate

29 Is it easy to videos to YouTube? *(Longman)*
a) upload b) download c) load d) overload

30 are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. *(Longman)*
a) Cookies b) Antiviruses c) Downloads d) Hackers

B Language

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed

We use "seem to" to talk about how something or someone appears to be.

للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تمامًا.

seem/seems/seemed يبدو

Rule	Usage
seem seems + adj.	He seems angry. You seem ill. He seemed pleased with his new job.
seem to be + adj. seem to be + n seem to be + v.ing seem to + inf.	للتعبير عن المضارع يأتى بعد to be صفة أو اسم أو فعل مستمر بـ ing . He seems to be clever. It seems to be true. He seems to be a driver. He seems to be playing a game. ويمكن أن يأتى بعد to أى فعل فى المصدر. Belal seems to like his new laptop. They seem to work hard.
seem to have + P.P.	للتعبير عن الماضى. You seem to have made a lot of money. I seem to have lost my car keys.
seem to have been + P.P.	للتعبير عن المجهول فى الماضى. The car seems to have been repaired by a clever mechanic.
seem like/as if يبدو كما لو	Ola seems like a nice girl. The last few days seemed like a dream. It seemed as if the end of the world had come.
It seems that + جملة	It seems that you have lost weight. It seems that our team will lose the next match. It seemed that someone had left the building unlocked.
There seem to be	There seem to be a lot of people outside.

Negative

Rule	Negative	Examples
seem	don't seem	They don't seem to be playing well.
seems	doesn't seem	Farah doesn't seem to be happy at her new school.
seemed	didn't seem	Lack of money didn't seem to be the main problem.



- لا تستخدم seem فى المجهول ولا فى الاستمرار بعد v. to be

He is seeming happy. ✗
He seems happy. ✓
The vase is seemed to be broken. ✗
The vase seems to be broken. ✓

2 mean/means/meant

	Rule	Usage
mean/means/meant	mean	تأتى mean بمعنى "يقصد/يعنى". The red light means 'Stop'.
	mean (that)	I mean (that) we'll have to leave early – that's all.
	(be) meant to + inf.	من المفترض أن: للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شىء ما. School is meant to be educational.
		للحديث عن شىء متوقع. They were meant to arrive by now.
		للحديث عن شىء مقصود. It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.

لاحظ أن be meant to مجهول ولذلك دائمًا قبلها المفعول أما إذا كانت الجملة للمعلوم فلا تسبق بـ v. to be ويكون الفاعل عاديًا ويكون معناها أن فلانا قصد شيئا من كذا مثل:

Alexander the Great meant Alexandria to be the capital of Egypt.

وعند تحويلها للمجهول تصبح

Alexandria was meant to be the capital of Egypt.

Negative

Rule	Negative	Examples
mean	don't mean never mean	You don't really mean that, do you? I never mean to hurt or harm anyone.
means	doesn't mean never means	He doesn't mean to insult you. He never means to insult you.
meant	didn't mean never meant	I didn't mean to learn magic. I never meant to learn magic.
be meant	am not/isn't/ aren't meant	You can go, Ahmed, you aren't meant to be helping me.

3 be supposed to + inf.

Rule	Usage
(be) supposed to من المفترض أن	to talk about obligation للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية. - I'm supposed to cook dinner tonight.
	to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون. - It is supposed to rain this afternoon.
	to talk about arrangements للحديث عن الترتيبات - I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.
	to talk about our beliefs about something للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما. - Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't join you for lunch. I'm attend a meeting in ten minutes.

a) supposing to
b) supposing
c) supposed
d) supposed to

2 He to have been studying for the test all night.

a) is supposing
b) supposed
c) seems
d) meant

3 The hospital to help the local people, but everyone came to it.

a) supposed
b) was meant
c) is seemed
d) was meaning

4 I hope that you have read the report and understand what it

a) seems
b) is supposed
c) means
d) is meaning

5 I am supposed for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.

a) applying
b) will apply
c) apply
d) to apply



Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Eiffel Tower to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed

2 There were some problems at first, but they to have been solved.
a) meant b) seem
c) supposed d) will be supposed

3 I shouldn't eat too much. I to be on a diet.
a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant

4 It to be an apology, but it made her angry.
a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant

5 The wedding to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing

6 Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He to be enjoying his job.
a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed

7 The food to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed

8 Collecting money to make us happy, but to some people, it has become an aim.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed

9 Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He to know a lot of people.
a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming

10 The garbage today. Please take it out.
a) didn't suppose to collect b) is supposed to collect
c) is supposed to be collected d) was meant to collect

11 What are you doing at work? You to be on holiday.
a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed

12 They stay at home all the time. They never to go anywhere.
a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant

13 The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't to be working.

a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need

14 That piece of cloth to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.

a) seemed b) was meant c) supposed d) was supposing

15 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English to be getting better.

a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means

16 The open space to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.

a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant

17 I'd better hurry. I to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.

a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

18 The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock to be forced.

a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs

19 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still to do any heavy work.

a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed

20 All my friends to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.

a) were supposed b) seemed

c) meant d) are supposed

21 Car drivers are to wear seat belts. *(Longman)*

a) seemed b) supposing c) supposed d) meaning

22 Rami's homework to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with him. *(Longman)*

a) means b) supposes c) seems d) sees

23 **A:** Did he mean her late at night? **B:** No, it was a mistake. *(Longman)*

a) to call b) to be called c) call d) to calling

24 She to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job. *(Longman)*

a) supposed b) seems c) is seemed d) is meant

25 They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This sentence shows *(Longman)*

a) ability b) impossibility c) prohibition d) expectation

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.

b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.

27 "We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means

a) it's necessary to do so

b) we aren't allowed to do so

c) it's impossible to do so

d) it's kind of us to do so

28 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect: "You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that

a) it's necessary to do so

b) it's your duty to do so

c) it's forbidden to do so

d) it's advisable to do so

29 "My friends to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."

a) were supposed

b) were meaning

c) seem

d) mean

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

b) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

c) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

d) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

31 Let's go to the party. It interesting.

a) is meant

b) is supposing to be

c) supposes

d) seems to be

32 You problems with your washing machine.

a) seem to be having

b) are supposed to have

c) are seemed to have

d) are meant to have

33 The new method improve agriculture, but it was incorrectly used.

a) was supposing

b) seems to

c) was meant to

d) seemed

34 Maher to be good at interpreting, ... he?

a) didn't seem/doesn't

b) seemed/did

c) doesn't seem/does

d) seems/does

35 My little brother English fast.

a) seems learn

b) seems to have learnt

c) seems learning

d) is meaning to learn

Test yourself

Take a test

Part (1)
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 It wasn't easy for me to to the new regulations in our company's system.
a) adapt b) adopt c) admire d) admit

2 I was astonished at the slowness of my new bike. The noun "slowness" is an antonym to the noun"....."
a) greed b) speed c) habit d) custom

3 How long will it take to this sand onto the lorry?
a) load b) overload c) download d) upload

4 The police are trying to discover the of the criminals who broke into the bank.
a) respect b) description c) identity d) prosperity

5 To apply for the babysitter job, you must have some working with kids.
a) experiment b) research c) inspection d) experience

6 You've really got no need to worry your weight. You look smart.
a) in b) about c) for d) at

7 Many young people are fond of having a great number of on social networking sites.
a) bloggers b) loaders c) followers d) advisors

8 My uncle works for a company that reference books.
a) spreads b) rehearses c) deploys d) publishes

9 Where did you get your wedding invitations? They have a creative design.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

10 To hear the full interview, ... to the free National Geographic News podcast.
a) subscribe b) describe c) inscribe d) prescribe

11 My little cousin doesn't anyone about his career, so he gets in trouble.
a) invent b) summon c) expertise d) consult

12 Customers gain to up-to-date information through a computer database.
a) recess b) exit c) access d) entry

13 I always use Google Chrome as my default internet
a) image b) hardware c) media d) browser

14 The of the film was that crime does not pay.
a) aspect b) moral c) role d) start

15 The latest Windows automatically your antivirus settings.
a) deteriorates b) outdates c) reverses d) updates

Language

16 The match to start at 8:30, but it was cancelled.
a) seemed b) is meant c) was supposed d) wanted

17 Schools to follow rules of safety.
a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must

18 The car engine is meant
a) to check b) to have checked c) to be checking d) to be checked

19 Cookies are to make it easier for us to use the internet.
a) meant b) seems c) suppose d) meaning

20 Students to do their best to succeed.
a) suppose b) are supposed c) supposed d) are supposing

21 Ali to study hard to get high marks.
a) suggested b) is meaning c) is supposed d) is seemed

22 What to do to improve your memory?
a) you are supposed b) did you suppose
c) you are meant d) are you supposed

23 The Great Wall of China was to be a barrier between two cities, but it has turned into a tourist attraction.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

24 We to go to the party, but we got an important meeting.
a) seemed b) are supposed c) are meant d) were supposed

25 Clothes be getting more and more expensive all the time.
a) seem to b) are supposed c) are meant d) want to

26 There to be so many choices and we've only got a limited amount of money.
a) is supposed b) meant c) seem d) is meant

27 I to buy groceries this Friday as my wife is ill.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) have supposed d) 'm supposing

28 **A:** What is the problem with her? **B:** I don't know, but she to have a high temperature.
a) seems b) is meant c) meant d) supposed

29 If something "makes sense", it reasonable.
a) meant b) is meant c) seems d) is supposed

30 I'm sorry I didn't to hurt you.
a) meant b) supposed c) seem d) mean

Study  Watch a video

Part (2)
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Listening texts

addicted (adj)	مدمن
anyway (adv)	على كل حال
behaviour (n)	سلوك
birth (n)	ميلاد
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل/يوصل/يربط
cons (n)	عيوب
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد
cute (adj)	لطيف
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
each (pron)	كل
employee (n)	موظف
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
exciting (adj)	مثير/رائع
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل
forever (adv)	للأبد
forum (n)	منتدى
game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو
guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)/يرشد
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
order (n)	ترتيب
platform (n)	منصة
pleased (adj)	مسرور
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
privacy (n)	خصوصية
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى/التعريفى
programmer (n)	مبرمج
programming (n)	برمجة
pros (n)	مميزات
rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
safely (adv)	بأمان
sensible (adj)	عاقل
similar (adj)	مشابه
solve (v) (d)	يحل
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
symbol (n)	رمز
take care (v)	يهتم
teen (n)	مراهق
unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
victim (n)	ضحية

 لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك 

Workbook Vocabulary

represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن	explain (v) (ed)	يفسر
feelings (n)	مشاعر	highlight (v) (ed) (n)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
register (v) (ed)	يسجل	example (n)	مثال
purpose (n)	غرض	linking word (n)	اداة ربط
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Unfortunately, most kids are now to surfing the internet and games.
a) addicted b) depicted c) avoidable d) available

2 Mandela became a/an of the struggle for human rights in Africa and the whole world.
a) status b) image c) symbol d) story

3 At the family party, my uncle, a former sailor, ... us with exciting stories of his adventures at sea.
a) implanted b) entertained c) annoyed d) departed

4 The World Economic is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum

5 It's the parents' job to train children in acceptable standards of
a) behaviour b) lecture c) culture d) rapture

6 The Ministry of Education has set up a special for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
a) pavement b) building c) platform d) facility

7 The actress complained that the photographs taken without her approval were an invasion انتهاك of her
a) fame b) privacy c) wealth d) health

8 The oil company is known for paying the pretty well.
a) crews b) employers c) employees d) robbers

9 The secretary asked the head teacher how many students have for English summer classes.
a) treated b) retired c) resigned d) registered

10 Five Egyptian female players are now in the top ten squash players in the world.
a) graded b) retired c) ranked d) divided

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	in person	شخصيًا
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	in short	باختصار
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة	keep in contact with	يُبقى على اتصال مع
for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)	keep ... entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	make rules	يعد القواعد
have an effect on	له تأثير على	on your own	بمفردك
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
divided into	مقسم إلى	set of	مجموعة من
loads of	كثير من	share with	يشارك مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive addicted	مسبب للإدمان مدمن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب العمل	employed employable	موظف قابل للتوظيف
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍّ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	registered	مسجل (رسميًا)
represent*	يمثل	representation representative	تمثيل/إنابة عن مندوب/ ممثل	representative	نموذجى/تمثيلى (نيابيا)

- The President was represented at the conference by the Minister.
- The lawyer was very efficient at the representation of the man in trial.
- My brother works as a sales representative for a famous company.
- These paintings are representative of the modern painting trend.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly	كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire	يوظف/يستأجر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase	يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose	يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike	different/opposite	مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance	عدم تشجيع/إعاقة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She got fired from her first job for being late. The antonym of the verb "fire" is "……".
a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply

2 I'm sorry, I didn't …… attention to what the presenter said about the weather.
a) pay b) push c) cost d) buy

3 The book is divided …… six sections, each one is about 20 pages.
a) for b) into c) on d) at

4 All rules are …… to ensure that all games are fair for everyone.
a) called b) broken c) done d) made

5 …… short, the report says that more money should be spent on reforming the road system.
a) At b) In c) On d) Out

6 I am keen to keep in close …… with you on this subject. Keep in contact with me.
a) rehearse b) connection c) communication d) contact

7 The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonym of the adjective "similar" is "……".

a) far b) puzzled c) representative d) alike

8 She has been sharply criticised for her comments. The noun from the verb "criticise" is "……".

a) criticised b) criticises c) criticism d) critical

9 She entertained the children with stories, songs and drama. The verb "entertain" is the opposite of "……".

a) annoy b) satisfy c) reply d) amuse

10 The lawyer represented the criminal at court. The verb "represent" is similar in meaning to "……".

a) differ b) act c) introduce d) speak for

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

each

نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلّ مرة.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.

every

نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).

Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.

2

platform

١- رصيف القطار

٢- منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)

٣- منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)

- The Aswan train leaves from platform six.
- He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience.
- Due to COVID-19, many educational platforms emerged to help students study online.

pavement

رصيف الشارع

He stopped the car just off the pavement.

3

represent

يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)

He represented his company at the meeting.

act

١- يتصرف

٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى عمل فنى

- My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say.
- As a child, she began acting in television commercials.

4

sensible عاقل/ حكيم/ عملى

- The young manager is sensible and can take good decisions.
- It's sensible to keep a note of your passport number.

sensitive حساس (لفهم مشاعر الناس/ سريع التأثر)

- Our teacher is very sensitive to other people's feelings.
- Coral reefs are very sensitive to changes in seawater temperature.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our geography teacher explained that each colour on the map a different area.

a) represents
b) acts
c) attaches
d) connects

2 There was a small raised at one end of the meeting room for the speaker to stand on.

a) pavement
b) side
c) platform
d) stop

3 There were cars parking along side of the street.

a) both
b) all
c) every
d) each

4 person should have a role in the progress of their country.

a) Neither
b) Every
c) Either
d) Both

5 It would be to consult a parent or a teacher if you faced a problem on the internet.

a) sensible
b) sensitive
c) insane
d) powerless

Practice

Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You shouldn't add a lot of personal data on your Facebook so as not to be misused by any hackers.
a) profile b) drawer c) desk d) book

2 The doctor should have the risks of the treatment to the patient before starting it.
a) waved b) told c) promised d) explained

3 Some people prefer to lines when they read so that they can memorise the information.
a) cut b) enlighten c) highlight d) darken

4 The songs of some new folk singers are as they contain slang language.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

5 Grandmother her grandchildren with her funny stories and exciting songs.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained

6 Some experts believe that children need to things for themselves in order to learn from them.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) cure

7 The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum

8 The old man said that he couldn't his life without his wife.
a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand

9 Facebook has become the most important social media all over the world.
a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal

10 The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely to it.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

11 The police officer behaved in a way and didn't lose his self-control.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

12 There was an accident on the highway yesterday, fortunately, there were no
a) researchers b) victims c) survivors d) inventors

13 The should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

14 The company director will be making short in the meeting.
a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations

15 The university is number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared

16 You can for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse

17 The theme of the novel is based on the of the writer and doesn't relate to real life.
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination

18 He can only walk with the assistance of a stick. The word "assistance" is the synonym of the word "....."
a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

19 The students who were on the trip were divided three groups according to their age.
a) at b) into c) with d) about

20 Although the mobile helps young people to in contact with their friends, it can waste their time.
a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay

21 Strict rules should be to limit the increase in air pollution.
a) ignored b) done c) made d) finished

22 The teacher ordered the class to stop talking and attention to what she said.
a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay

23 My little sister loves to share her toys other children.
a) with b) into c) at d) about

24 There is a between pollution and the death of trees.
a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

25 He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes. The verb "entertain" is an antonym of the verb "....."
a) annoy b) amuse c) assist d) delay

26 Unfortunately, my friend has become technology; he spends too much time using the internet for unnecessary things.
a) suggested b) protested c) protected d) addicted (Longman)

27 is the state of being free from public attention.
a) Publicity b) Piracy c) Privacy d) Accuracy (Longman)

28 Mr Awany is going to our company at the upcoming conference. He will speak on behalf of the entire staff.
a) reproduce b) represent c) introduce d) produce (Longman)

29 The little girl is so cute. "Cute" is opposite in meaning to "....."
a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) attractive (Longman)

30 There were of people standing around a TV set watching the final match in the club.
a) loads b) loans c) leads d) loons (Longman)

B Language

Other uses

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed

seem/seems/seemed

Rule	Usage
It seems to somebody (that)	يبدو لشخص أن ... It seems to me that you don't have much choice.
seem (state verb)	فعل غير حركى (حالة) يسمى linking verb يربط الفاعل بالاسم أو الصفة ولا يأتى بعده الحال مثل الأفعال الحركية (dynamic/action) The boys seem satisfied with the teacher's explanation.
doesn't seem himself	لوصف العاطفة. He doesn't seem to himself these days. لا يبدو فى حالته هذه الأيام.
seeming (adj)	ظاهرى (صفة قبل اسم فقط) We were suspicious of their seeming enthusiasm حماس ظاهرى.
seemingly (adv)	ظاهريا (حال غالبا لوصف الصفة والجملة) She was seemingly unaware of all the activity around her. Seemingly, he borrowed the money from the bank.

2 mean/means/meant

mean/means/meant

Rule	Usage
mean	يقصد/يعنى (تأتى آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to. What does this word mean?
be meant to be + v.ing	تستخدم be بعد to ثم v.ing للتعبير عن استمرار حدث فى المضارع. Come on, Osama, you're meant to be cleaning the room.
mean + v.ing = involve	يشمل - يضم Being a doctor means working long hours.
mean + to + inf. = intend	ينوى - يهدف الى I wasn't criticising you, I really meant it for the best. I didn't mean to upset you.
mean that + جملة	The high cost of housing means that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a means – means	تعنى وسيلة وهى مفرد وبها s والجمع به s ولكن بدون a. The train is an important means of transport.
mean something to	للدلالة على أهمية شىء بالنسبة لشخص. I know how much your work means to you. Time meant nothing to me while I was travelling.
mean (adj.)	تستخدم كصفة بمعنى قاسٍ أو غير عطوف وبمعنى بخيل ايضًا. It was mean of him not to invite her. Don't be so mean to her! He's too mean to buy a present for his wife.

لاحظ

- لا نستخدم الفعل mean فى الاستمرار فى معظم أحوالها.

What is this word meaning? ✗ This is meaning trouble. ✗
What does this word mean? This means trouble. ✓

3 be supposed to

suppose/be supposed to

Rule	Usage
be + not supposed to	١- تعبر be + not supposed to عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفى. You're not supposed to do something= you aren't allowed You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
be supposed to = be said to	٢- تستخدم be supposed to بمعنى يقال/قيل. He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have
suppose (verb)	يفترض What makes you suppose we're going to sell the house?
It is supposed that + جملة	إذا استخدمنا that فنستخدم جملة بعدها. It is usually supposed that girls are less aggressive than boys.
Suppose/Supposing	تأتى فى أول الجملة بديلًا لـ if بمعنى الافتراض (شىء غير حقيقى). Suppose you lost your job tomorrow, what would you do?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She means to open her own shop. The word "means" here means "..... ".
a) intends b) must c) needs d) indicates

2 The internet is an important means of communication. The word "means" here means a/an
a) intention b) way c) need d) indication

3 After being fired from the company, he nervous.
a) seemed b) was supposed c) was meant to d) meant

Summary

seem to + inf.

seem + adj.

- She seems angry today.
- He seems disappointed.

seem

seem + adj → The story seems to be true.

seem + noun → He seems to be a doctor.

seem + v.ing → She seems to be doing her homework.

seem + to have + P.P.

- The winner seems to have trained hard last week.

للتعبير عن الماضي.

be meant to + inf.

To talk about what the purpose or truth of something should be.

للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما.

- The finished project is meant to be more than just a power station.
- This building was meant to be a huge museum.

be meant to + inf.

To talk about something that is expected.

للحديث عن شيء متوقع.

- They were meant to arrive by now.
- He was meant to get home now.

To talk about something that is intended.

للحديث عن شيء مقصود.

- It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.
- Her child's present was meant to please her, but she was sad.

be supposed to + inf.

To talk about obligation.

للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية.

- I'm supposed to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.

be supposed to + inf.

To talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be.

للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع ان يفعل او يكون.

- It is supposed to rain this afternoon.

للحديث عن الترتيبات.

To talk about arrangements.

- I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.

للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما.

To talk about our beliefs about something.

- Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My teacher to be happy.
a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

2 It's blue, but it was to be purple.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

3 Amal to phone me last night, but she didn't.
a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing

4 There to be a mistake in these figures.
a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems

5 I'm sorry. I didn't to break your vase.
a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed

6 I to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing

7 Do you know what the weather to be like tomorrow?
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) does seem

8 I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
a) to be b) being c) be d) to being

9 Being a teacher means a lot of homework.
a) to check b) to be checked c) checking d) checked

10 The high cost of housing that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) means c) supposed d) is supposing

11 Why are you outside the factory? You to be working.
a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed

12 This old computer doesn't to be working properly.
a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem

13 I can't join you for lunch. I'm attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to

14 I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it like weeks.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed

15 These shoes don't to fit. They're a little small.

a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want

16 Factories are to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.

a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant

17 Egyptian students to study day and night to get the full mark.

a) are supposed b) mean c) are seemed d) supposed

18 He like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.

a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed

19 Don't wait for me. I to visit my uncle in hospital after school.

a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

20 Life in Siwa will probably a little strange to you at first, but you'll get used to it.

a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) want

21 He to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable. *(Longman)*

a) doesn't seem b) isn't seemed

c) isn't supposing d) not supposed

22 I'm to tidy my room before I start studying. *(Longman)*

a) have b) seemed c) meaning d) supposed

23 He to be absent-minded; he didn't see the car coming towards him. *(Longman)*

a) opposed b) supposed c) meant d) seemed

24 He have read many books; he is really knowledgeable. *(Longman)*

a) seems to b) supposed to c) can't d) should

25 The factory to provide work opportunities for more than two hundred people. *(Longman)*

a) supposed b) is meant c) is meaning d) seem

26 People aren't supposed to get on the train without a ticket. This means

a) it isn't a good idea for people to get on the train without a ticket

b) it is against the law to get on the train without a ticket

c) it is advisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket

d) it is inadvisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) He seems that he is innocent.

b) He is seeming to be innocent.

c) He seems to be innocent.

d) He seems innocent.

28 One answer is grammatically correct:

a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.

b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.

c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.

d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you are asleep.

29 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:

Amr seems a good day.

a) that he has

b) has

c) to have

d) to be having

30 One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:

"My uncle's new car"

a) seems like a luxurious one

b) seems to be a luxurious one

c) seems a luxurious one

d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

31 These tablets be good for the nerves and sleeplessness.

a) means to b) seem c) are meant d) seem to

32 What to do to improve your English?

a) do you seem

b) are you meant

c) do you mean

d) you are supposed

33 A: What is Ahmed's problem? B: I don't know, but he angry.

a) is meant to be b) is supposed to be c) supposes to be d) seems to be

34 The children have been playing for an hour now. They a wonderful time.

a) are meant having

b) are supposed having

c) seem to be having

d) were supposed to have

35 "You weren't supposed to do that." means:

a) You should do that, but you don't.

b) You should have done it, but you didn't.

c) You shouldn't have done it.

d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.

Test yourself



Take a test

Part (2)
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 All the patients at this hospital have health problems; it is specialised in treating patients with bone diseases.
a) different b) similar c) sincere d) resourceful

2 The teacher a big problem with the slow learners in the school.
a) has b) does c) performs d) owns

3 The head teacher seems to be liked by single person in the school.
a) both b) all c) every d) each

4 The company where my father works has only 60
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

5 The famous actor is in charge of the publicity for next year's festival. The noun "publicity" can be the opposite of the noun "..... ".
a) privacy b) property c) probability d) acceptability

6 I bought mother a new set kitchen knives as a birthday present.
a) of b) for c) in d) with

7 The lazy worker was dismissed from his job. The verb "dismiss" is similar in meaning to the verb "..... ".
a) welcome b) retrieve c) defy d) fire

8 The report the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) deprived b) declined c) granted d) highlighted

9 I understand your about the new system, but do not share it.
a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty

10 The politician tried to make his speech more for the audience.
a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained

11 This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it your own.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

12 The tour took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide

13 Mohamed Salah has become a of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means

14 The film was for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised

15 The World Health Organisation provides the best for the exchange of views and ideas about world pandemics.
a) firm b) corporation c) farm d) forum

Language

16 The police are looking for him. He to have a criminal background.
a) supposes b) seems c) means d) appears

17 They are happy; they be having a nice time.
a) are meaning to b) supposed to c) seem to d) won't

18 You're to start work at 8:30 every morning.
a) seemed b) meaning c) wanted d) supposed

19 She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means a lot of money.
a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

20 The internet to be more important than it really is.
a) supposes b) is supposed c) means d) seeming

21 I'm going to buy this car. It to be very good.
a) is seemed b) was seemed c) is supposed d) suppose

22 What by "globalisation"?
a) are you meaning b) supposed to mean
c) do you mean d) are you seeming to mean

23 Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never to get tired.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

24 That bag too heavy for the old woman to carry.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) is seemed d) seems

25 It as if there will be rain soon.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) supposed

26 This is a painting of an elephant, but it was to be a horse.
a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

27 She to finish her homework, so she can't come with us.
a) is supposed b) supposes c) is seemed d) is meaning

28 He's so that he wouldn't give a beggar a crust of bread.
a) seemed b) supposed c) meant d) mean

29 You to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.
a) are supposed b) are meant c) are not supposed d) are seemed

30 He that we must do our best to get the high marks.
a) means b) seemed c) seems d) is meaning

Study Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act ii,scene iii & Act iii scene i

Vocabulary

apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر
bear (n)	دب
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)
cave (n)	كهف
choice (n)	اختيار
disagreement (n)	خلاف
double (v) (d)	يضاعف/ضعف
joke (n)	نكتة/فكاهة
patience (n)	صبر
ring (n)	خاتم
room (n)	مكان/حيز
shelter (n) (v) (ed)	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
spy (n) (v)	جاسوس/يتجسس
wet (adj)	مبلل/مطير
wind (n)	رياح

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at the right time	فى الوقت المناسب
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من الدخول
for all time	للأبد
set eyes on	تقع عيناه على
go mad	يصاب بالجنون
turn someone's back on	يتجاهل/يتنكر لـ
keep you warm	يبقيك دافئًا



Practice



Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act ii,scene iii & Act iii scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should to your customers for wasting their time.
a) rejoice
b) please
c) affect
d) apologise

2 A is a large hole that was formed by natural processes in the side of a cliff or hill or under the ground.
a) palace
b) hut
c) cave
d) cottage

3 Money is a source of between many couples these days. It causes them a lot of disputes.
a) pride
b) disagreement
c) shame
d) species

4 The material I was buying for these shirts suddenly in price, so they are expensive.
a) doubled
b) decreased
c) divided
d) applied

5 The soldier's experiences in the war affected him so much that he mad.
a) came
b) went
c) fell
d) gave

6 This is a silly old I've heard it lots of times and didn't make me laugh.
a) research
b) view
c) joke
d) riddle

7 Wildlife photography requires a lot of You have to wait much for a good photo.
a) speed
b) failure
c) patience
d) atmosphere

8 When it started raining, they took under an old forest bridge.
a) clothing
b) vanity
c) pride
d) shelter

9 The soldier was arrested on suspicion of being an enemy
a) spy
b) presenter
c) prey
d) director

10 Mahmoud is a good man and would never his back on a friend.
a) got
b) grew
c) turn
d) face

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

An email to a friend

. Write an email to your friend Hesham advising him how to use social media well.

Writing tips

Layout of an E-mail

New message

From اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

To اسم المُرسَل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject موضوع الرسالة

Hi Hesham,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives so we must use it carefully. Therefore, you can depend on social media for several purposes, such as communication, study, paying money, gaining money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or to promote their products.

As students, we can get benefitted from it by learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that; you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays. Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye

Send

Send an email to your best friend now saying hello!

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily(1) over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority(2) of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining(3) interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and a reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive(4).

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting(5) them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced(6) of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reading helps people to be
a) well-paid b) good actors c) well-educated d) good writers

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) the youth b) video and television
c) children d) reading skills

3 According to the writer's view, TV is means of entertainment.
a) not an effective b) an encouraging
c) an effective d) not a cheap

4 The synonym of the word "independent" is "..... ".
a) active b) intelligent
c) self-centred d) self-determining

5 What is the reason behind the decline in the reading habit among youth?
a) Lack of free time. b) Not going to schools.
c) Doing sports. d) TV and video.

(1) بثبات (3) منخفض (5) يفسر
(2) الأغلبية (4) سلبى (6) مقتنع

6 There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when

a) a video is watched
b) a short story is read
c) an article is published
d) a book is sold

7 Children, who read slowly, ...

a) like TV
b) speak fast
c) like reading
d) are disabled

8 The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Importance of Reading
b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology
d) Children's Preferences

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Mobile addiction has become one of the psychological problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

a) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

b) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

c) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دور خاص لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

d) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لمعاملته مثل أى مرض نفسى.

2 Due to technology, advertising has become a real science. Some colleges have already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

a) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشاء أقسام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

b) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلام "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشاء أقسام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

c) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشاء مقررات جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

d) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنهاء أقسام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

3 Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So, we should all remember them.

a) التاريخ المصرى يزدحم بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

b) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية براحتهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

c) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل مختلف. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

d) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

4 Charities play an important role in helping poor people and providing assistance to them. That's why we should support them with our time and money.

a) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية قاعدة مهمة فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.

b) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن نحرمهم من وقتنا وأموالنا.

c) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.

d) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولذلك يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.

5 The New Administrative Capital is a huge project which will take years to complete. However, it will provide a perfect solution to the problem of overcrowding in Cairo.

a) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا عارضًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.

b) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.

c) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ولذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.

d) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة السكان فى القاهرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات التى قد تدمر سمعة الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

a) People don't have to believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

b) People should not believe or divide everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

c) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of fiction that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

d) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

7 غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

a) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot stand them.

b) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people connect, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

c) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

d) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate especially young people. Nevertheless, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

8 كثيرًا ما تُتهم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى بانتهاك خصوصية المستخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصها على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.

a) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
b) Social media are often accused of expecting the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
c) Social media are often accused of obeying the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
d) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their deformity that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

9 كلما تقدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشكلات النفسية التى قد يعانى منها الناس ويتناولها الكُتاب فى قصصهم والمخرجون فى أفلامهم.

a) The most science and technology advances, the greater the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
b) The more science and technology advances, the greater the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
c) The more science and technology advances, the greatest the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
d) The most science and technology advances, the greatest the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.

10 تحذر وسائل الإعلام الشباب من الهجرة غير الشرعية إلى أوروبا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهم حياتهم و ذلك لأنهم يسافرون عبر طرق خطيرة.

a) Mass media admit young people against illegal immigration to Europe because they may lead of their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
b) Mass media warn young people against legal immigration to Europe because they may lead in their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
c) Mass media warn young people against illegal immigration to Europe because they may lead to their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
d) Mass media warn young people against illegal immigrants to Europe because they may lead for their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. – I used the right structure. – I used a topic sentence. – I wrote the conclusion. – I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We need to run many adverts to spread our products widely.
a) sponsored b) active c) shared d) achieved

2 The story of the terrible murder was given a high in today's papers.
a) sight b) profile c) character d) view

3 The World Youth is held in Sharm El-Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum

4 The weak students of the 6th grade were offered Saturday courses to their skills.
a) subscribe b) outdate c) upgrade d) install

5 Text messaging enables people to keep in close at all times.
a) link b) connection c) contact d) contraction

6 The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The antonym of the verb "criticise" is ".....".
a) praise b) retreat c) denounce d) reverse

7 There to be a problem with the trains this morning.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems

8 Finding a job means many interviews.
a) attending b) to attend c) to be attended d) being attended

9 It to snow last week.
a) seems b) didn't suppose c) wasn't supposed d) meant

10 Libraries to be places for reading.
a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) were meant

11 I want to see that film. It to be good.
a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

12 Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable of transport.
a) means b) mean c) suppose d) seem

13 There is no reason to she's lying.
a) suppose b) seem c) mean d) be supposed

14 They to be landing at Cairo airport. But if the fog gets any thicker, the plane may be diverted.

a) mean
b) are seemed
c) are supposed
d) are supposing

15 Wael to be happy today. – You're right, he has just had good news!

a) opposes
b) supposes
c) seems
d) is seeming

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favourite family member. He is above sixty years old, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, Aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they are not on the same page. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy's birth, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, Uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled around on the floor, laughing hysterically. Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these deeds because I really understand him. This guy had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile. He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he was born again as he described his feeling. The only one who is against his actions is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers a strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him I was shocked when I knew that he had it a year before and had already one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was named Azmy Pranks. What an old man!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Although Mr Azmy is old, he is

a) wise
b) weak
c) strong
d) helpful

17 Mr Azmy loves his wife so he

a) helps her carry heavy bags
b) buys fruits for her
c) plays silly pranks on her
d) calls her darling

18 Mr Azmy is years old.

a) sixty
b) about fifty
c) sixty five
d) seventy five

19 Mrs Fateema's face got red

a) because she put much hot sauce
b) because she was embarrassed
c) because of her husband's prank
d) when she saw the red sauce

20 The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because

a) he does better tricks
b) he is an army officer
c) he thinks they are silly
d) the tricks are dangerous

21 What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise as

a) everybody likes tricks
b) everybody knows Uncle Azmy's character
c) the writer told them about the trick previously
d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

22 The underlined word "vibes" means

a) feelings
b) ideas
c) components
d) actions

23 The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Elderly Life
b) Mr Azmy's Rebirth
c) Cooperation and Love
d) Mr Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

a) The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
b) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
c) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
d) The major global projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start in teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to do this at their age.

a) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان الأدوية والسلوك السيء تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك فى سنهم.

b) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب ألا يحرص الشباب على عدم القيام بذلك فى سنهم.

c) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك فى عصرهم.

d) يقال إن بعض العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك فى سنهم.

26 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend will take part in a reading competition on Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research about them. Give him your advice."

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع للنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Learning from our mistakes

Unit 6

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

Reading : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens

Writing : Captions for a picture story

Listening : A radio programme about regrets, listening for detail

Speaking : Role-play about recognising mistakes

Language : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)

Life Skills : Learning from our mistakes

Study

Watch a video

Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل
mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
pile (n)	كومة
sigh (v) (ed) (n) ☆	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة

When I play football, I sigh heavily because I run a lot.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading texts

actually (adv)	بالفعل
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
disappointed (adj)	محبَط
dream (n) (v)	حلم/يحلم
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
enormous (adj)	ضخم
faraway (adj)	بعيد
foggy (adj)	ضبابى/مغيم بالضباب
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود
including (prep)	مشتملًا على/بما فيه
large (adj)	كبير
life (n)	حياة
mistake (n)	خطأ
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ/ابن الأخت
novel (n)	رواية
office (n)	حجرة مكتب
pay (v)	يدفع
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
race (n)	سباق
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
surprised (adj)	مندهش
tone (n)	نبرة صوت
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
upset (v) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج

Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) (ed)	يتصل	logical (adj)	منطقى
donation (n)	تبرع	map (n)	خريطة
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	museum (n)	متحف
generous (adj)	كريم	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
health (n)	صحة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
international (adj)	دولى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
invite (v) (d)	يدعو		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 While we were watching TV, Mother came in carrying a of ironing in her arms.
a) pile b) hay c) hole d) wreckage

2 We were shocked to see homeless children for food on the street.
a) ordering b) begging c) attacking d) delaying

3 The police think that the was started deliberately, not accidentally.
a) shot b) job c) fire d) task

4 The New Capital has a/an airport that can receive planes from all over the world.
a) local b) vague c) intimate d) international

5 The clerk sadly as he looked at the files he had to finish on his desk.
a) cheered b) sighed c) laughed d) yelled

6 You have to for the tickets at some cinemas in cash.
a) take b) borrow c) credit d) pay

7 My friend is determined not to repeat the he had made years ago.
a) mistakes b) favours c) decisions d) fights

8 By law, all have to offer a safe work environment for their workers.
a) employees b) customers c) employers d) clients

9 Our neighbour is so that he never even buys his wife a birthday present.
a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean

10 My aunt has no children, that's why she considers her as her sons.
a) nieces b) nannies c) nephews d) sisters

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the beginning	فى البداية	get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
change his mind	يغير رأيه	get lost	يضل الطريق
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	keep ... warm	يحافظ على الدفء
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	make friends	يصادق/يكوّن صداقات
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
ask for	يطلب	run off	يجرى بعيدًا
feel about	يشعر بشأن	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
pay for	يدفع مقابل	work for	يعمل لصالح
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised surprising	مندهش مفاجئ
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

- I always treat my employees well.
- My treatment of my employees affects work.
- Some people think that mental illness is not treatable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
assistant	مساعد	helper/aide	opponent/enemy	خصم/ عدو
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge	give/reply	يعطى
disappointed	محبَط	depressed/dissatisfied	cheerful/comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance	blockage/hindrance	غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/misty	clear	صافر
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable	mean/miserly	بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/fault	correctness/soundness	صواب/سلامة
treat	يعامل	deal with/conduct	abandon/ignore	يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/misuse	maintain/save	يحافظ على

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonym of the word "disappointed" is "……".
a) pleased b) depressed c) impressed d) infected

2 The young boy …… lost during hiking in the mountains and it took three days for the police to find him.
a) got b) fell c) made d) did

3 When my little brother asked me to help him with his homework, I smiled …… him and agreed.
a) in b) about c) at d) of

4 Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonym of the word "waste" is "……".
a) maintain b) damage c) puzzle d) ignore

5 My brother is determined to have a new job; nothing will make him …… his mind.
a) decide b) plan c) change d) design

6 My grandfather is a very generous man who always gives us presents. The adjective "generous" is similar in meaning to "……".

a) useless b) mean c) miserly d) hospitable

7 My brother and I both work …… the same company, but in different branches.

a) as b) for c) on d) among

8 Ahmed wasn't able to attend the meeting as he …… the train to Benha.

a) lost b) gained c) caught d) missed

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

life	الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)	Poor people usually suffer much in life.
a life	طريقة العيش يسبقها أداة نكرة	Sami says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.
the life	حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة	I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandela.

2

treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.
cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	- It might be several months before she's fully cured. - Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.
heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	- The wound took a long time to heal. - Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

3

let	يترك/يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
cause	يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - We all should work for the improvement of our society.
work in	يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

4

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The fault caused the whole computer system down.
a) shutting b) shut c) shuts d) to shut

2 My brother is working a software developer for one of the biggest computer companies.
a) with b) as c) for d) on

3 Some people seem to let their kids whatever they like just to make them happy.
a) do b) does c) doing d) to do

4 It took three months for my broken arm to properly.
a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal

5 Our new boss, Mr Essam, is a cheerful man who seems to love very much.
a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives



Practice



Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My family were with the low marks I got in my maths exam.
a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) satisfied

2 I'm not going to any more time on more plans for the project and start at once.
a) benefit b) waste c) keep d) save

3 The relationship between workers and should be good in order to achieve good profits.
a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients

4 Our old neighbour was a man who never gives presents to anyone.
a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean

5 The clerk complains that he can't concentrate on his work as he shares his with other colleagues.
a) office b) club c) court d) plane

6 It was of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
a) mean b) miserly c) hasty d) generous

7 Teachers have been using visual aids such as and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
a) machines b) chalk c) maps d) laps

8 My son always says he wishes I would stop him like a child.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting

9 The Davis Cup is an important tennis championship in which all the countries take part.
a) local b) national c) limited d) international

10 I not wearing a thicker coat as I got wet in the rain.
a) regretted b) repeated c) pleased d) rejoiced

11 It's dangerous to leave your little children at home and go out.
a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular

12 The church choir كورال is rehearsing some to be sung on Christmas Eve.
a) films b) carols c) games d) stations

13 The poor lady the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled

14 The young boy with relief when he saw that he passed the test.
a) pleaded b) cried c) fought d) sighed

15 Several police shots were at the criminals, but no one was injured.
a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed

16 The old house had been knocked down, and there was nothing left but of stones.
a) holes b) piles c) wells d) pools

17 We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym of the word "".
a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing

18 I received my friend's to his wedding and I was very happy for him.
a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) invention

19 Doctors advise all people to exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.
a) make b) note c) do d) neglect

20 The client said that he didn't want to pay the cold meal that the waiter brought.
a) at b) about c) in d) for

21 My daughter used to change her a lot, especially about clothes.
a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

22 The passenger arrived ten minutes late, so he the six o'clock train.
a) missed b) lost c) arrived d) scored

23 I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are
a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless

24 The man I work isn't kind. He can easily dismiss any worker.
a) for b) on c) as d) at

25 He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym of the noun "".
a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d) accuser

26 He's too to buy a toy for his little nephew despite the money he has. *(Longman)*
a) main b) mean c) generous d) sufficient

27 The children their father to take them to the funfair on Friday. *(Longman)*
a) agreed b) looked c) made d) begged

28 Sorrowfully, this disease can't easily be *(Longman)*
a) disappeared b) dealt c) healed d) cured

29 the beginning of the film, a mysterious man appeared to be doing strange things. *(Longman)*
a) At b) In c) Out d) Away

30 He felt sorry for all the opportunities he had missed, so he out in despair. *(Longman)*
a) sighed b) signed c) sent d) sighted

B Language

If Conditional Forms — حالات If الشرطية

1 The Zero Conditional — الحالة الصفرية

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص.

وتتكون من:

If / When → **Present simple** مضارع بسيط , **Present simple** مضارع بسيط

- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.
- If/When the sun goes down, it gets dark.
- If/When I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.
- If we go out with friends, we normally go to a restaurant.

Active	If you heat ice, it melts.
Passive	If ice is heated, it melts.
Yes/No question	Does ice melt if/when you heat it?
Wh- question	What happens if/when you heat ice?

2 The First Conditional — الحالة الأولى

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If → **Present simple** مضارع بسيط , will / may / can / should للنصيحة + Inf.

- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.
- If I have a lot of time tonight, I can go to the party with you.
- If he runs very fast, he may catch the bus.

1 نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة والاستحباب و (have to/must) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

2 تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first at your English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

3 إذا كانت الجملة حالة صفرية ووضع لها زمن أو مدة فإنها تتحول إلى موقف خاص وليس حقيقة مثل:

- If you sit in the sun, you get burned.
- If you sit in the sun today, you will get burned.

4 نستخدم الفعل فى الأمر بدون will فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى.

- If you see Ali, tell him to call me.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If my husband cooks, he usually the food.
a) would burn
b) burns
c) will burn
d) burnt

2 If I feel ill tonight, I at home.
a) would stay
b) stay
c) will stay
d) stayed

3 What if you feel unhappy?
a) do you do
b) would you do
c) you did
d) have you done

4 When I read in bed, I always asleep.
a) fell
b) would fall
c) will fall
d) fall

5 I early if you
a) come/want
b) come/will want
c) will come/want
d) will come/will want

3 The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

• We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice.

- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل، وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة.

If → **Past simple** ماضٍ بسيط , would / could / might + Inf.

- If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car.(I don't have much money at present.)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. I'm not a bird. (untrue in the present)

*** For advice:** تُستخدم If للنصيحة كالآتى:

If I were you, I , would / wouldn't + Inf.

- If I were you, I'd study harder.
- If I were you, I wouldn't buy this expensive mobile.

4 The Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

• We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:

- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If → **Past perfect** ماضٍ تام , would have / could have / might have + P.P.

- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)
- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)

Practice

Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you need money, I you some.
a) lend b) can lend c) would lend d) lent

2 What will you do if you the exam?
a) would fail b) will fail c) fail d) had failed

3 If it snows, ... drive to the coast?
a) you will b) will you
c) would you d) would you have

4 I would have come home earlier if I you were worried.
a) knew b) 'd know c) 'd known d) know

5 If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you your exam.
a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass

6 If they me a good salary, I would have accepted the job.
a) had offered b) offered c) offer d) hadn't offered

7 I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I at home.
a) will stay b) would have stayed
c) would stay d) stayed

8 If we had waited for another 10 minutes yesterday, we the minister.
a) had seen b) will see
c) would have seen d) 'd see

9 If I need advice about my life, I usually to my mother.
a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk

10 If Magdi had enough money, he a new mobile phone.
a) buys b) will buy
c) would have bought d) would buy

11 If a balloon is filled with hot air, it
a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise

12 If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
a) tell b) would tell c) will tell d) won't tell

13 If I ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen
c) fell d) didn't fall

14 The teacher happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.

a) would have been b) will be

c) would be d) was

15 If he had tried harder, he in achieving his ambition.

a) will succeed b) wouldn't have succeeded

c) would succeed d) would have succeeded

16 If I a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.

a) had b) had had

c) have d) was having

17 If I hadn't overslept, I on time.

a) will have been b) would have been

c) would go d) will be

18 Ali would act in the school play if he good at acting.

a) had been b) were

c) will be d) would be

19 If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I you.

a) would contact b) will contact

c) would have contacted d) contacted

20 They on time if they hadn't missed the train.

a) will have arrived b) would arrive

c) might have arrived d) will arrive

(Longman)

21 Ice if it gets hot.

a) is melting b) won't melt

c) melt d) melts

22 If Rami had listened more carefully to the instructions, he that mistake.

(Longman)

a) wouldn't have made b) would have made

c) didn't make d) isn't making

23 If I hadn't been ill, I'd have worked harder. This means that I harder because I ill.

(Longman)

a) hadn't worked/was b) didn't work/was

c) didn't work/am d) had worked/had been

24 If I a lot of money, I would have the chance to help the poor people in my area.

(Longman)

a) had b) hadn't had c) have had d) have

25 If our garden after, trees would have grown better.

(Longman)

a) had been looked b) had looked

c) wasn't looked d) is being looked

26 If you to learn a musical instrument, you have to practise.

a) will want b) wanted

c) want d) had wanted

27 If the weather was nice today, we out for a walk.

a) would have gone b) go

c) will go d) would go

28 One answer of the following is grammatically correct:

a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.

b) If you want to buy a good carpet, goes to Al-Hussein Market.

c) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al-Hussein Market.

d) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al-Hussein Market.

29 One answer of the following is grammatically incorrect:

a) If we boil water to 100°C, it evaporates.

b) If water is boiled to 100°C, it evaporates.

c) When water boils at 100°C, it evaporates.

d) If water boils at 100°C, it is evaporated.

30 One answer gives the same meaning to the following sentence:
If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.

a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.

b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.

c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.

d) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

31 If they to stop the protest, there would have been a riot شغب.

a) had tried b) tried c) try d) could try

32 If Hossam for the job, they him.

a) applies/would choose b) applied/might choose

c) applied/will choose d) applied/ might have chosen

33 If you finish early, ...?

a) you will help me b) you should help me

c) helped me d) will you help me

34 If he had enough money, he the car.

a) would have bought b) will have bought

c) might buy d) might have bought

35 If he this book, he a lot of knowledge.

a) read/can get b) will read/can get

c) read/would be able to get d) read/will be able to get

Test yourself



Take a test

Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The government has spent a/an amount of money on road projects.
a) enormous b) tiny c) intense d) useless

2 Vegetables which contain vitamin C are very important to our
a) luck b) fortune c) wealth d) health

3 The dentist has her sterilise the instruments يعقم الأدوات every day.
a) patient b) assistant c) system d) foe

4 Careless students usually make more than careful students.
a) rights b) corrections c) mistakes d) behaviours

5 If you are a/an worker, you must keep doing exercises to avoid being fat.
a) office b) sports c) house d) field

6 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

7 The weather is clear today, so we can go on a picnic. The adjective "clear" is the opposite of the adjective
a) foggy b) clean c) high d) pure

8 Leila her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cures b) heals c) treats d) advises

9 The Cancer Hospital has collected 200,000 pounds through online
a) sales b) profits c) losses d) donations

10 Within three days the sailors exhausted their supply of food. The verb "exhaust" is the synonym for the verb
a) waste b) spend c) save d) try

11 It isn't that the poor office clerk can buy such an expensive car.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

12 The students the P.E. teacher to play with them, but he knows nothing about football.
a) regretted b) begged c) managed d) regarded

13 Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the, but came fourth.
a) champion b) path c) race d) passage

14 My uncle feels really after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) alike c) happy d) relieved

15 Our children were very that we couldn't go to the zoo at the weekend.
a) delighted b) pleased c) appointed d) disappointed

Language

16 If he at hospital, I'd have to visit him, but he isn't.
a) were b) has been c) had been d) is

17 If I my car, I would have a lot of money.
a) sell b) will sell c) had sold d) sold

18 If they well, they would have passed the exam.
a) studied b) have studied c) had studied d) study

19 If Ahmed had read that book, he what happened at the end.
a) knew b) would have known c) would know d) will know

20 If her dreams true, she would have been happy.
a) comes b) came c) had come d) hadn't come

21 If I have a headache, I a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.
a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank

22 We you more often if you didn't live so far away.
a) saw b) will see c) had seen d) would see

23 Ehab fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) had gone b) will go c) would go d) is going

24 If my brother had a lot of money, he it all on music and clothes.
a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

25 If he read the questions slowly, he them.
a) will understand b) would understand
c) understands d) can understand

26 If Nihal watches horror movies, she at night.
a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

27 When you put too much water in rice when you cook, it sticky as usual!
a) would get b) will get c) got d) gets

28 I think I can fix it tomorrow. If not, you wait till Friday.
a) will have to b) might have c) mustn't d) won't

29 If I go to bed late, I always dreadful in the morning.
a) would have felt b) will feel c) would feel d) feel

30 If anyone calls, ... them I'm not at home and I'll come back in an hour.
a) would have told b) would tell
c) tell d) will tell

Study

Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Phrases

bring back	يعيد ذكريات
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع
get on with	ينسجم مع
hang out with	يقضى وقتًا مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال

I never fall out with my elder brother; we share our objects easily.

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Listening texts

apparently (adv)	بوضوح
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة فى جريدة أو مجلة
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
go back (v)	يرجع/يعود
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
magazine (n)	مجلة
mall (n)	مركز تسوق
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية

Workbook Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية
conversation (n)	محادثة
friendship (n)	صداقة
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
leader (n)	قائد
necklace (n)	قلادة
opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
pocket (n)	جيب

polite (adj)	مؤدب	rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية	relationship (n)	علاقة
pretty (adj)	جميل	reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mohamed has never on with his cousin and they often quarrel.
a) went b) got c) come d) received

2 Egypt is keen on keeping a good with all world countries.
a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure

3 I used to hang with my old friends when I was at college.
a) on b) in c) out d) at

4 I that my father is angry with me after losing my new tablet.
a) decline b) guess c) detest d) object

5 Egypt does its best to its industry to limit our imports and save hard currency.
a) prove b) approve c) disapprove d) improve

6 On Mother's Day, I bought a gold for my lovely mum.
a) machine b) necklace c) serials d) series

7 The spokesman the reporter's question and continued his speech.
a) attended b) listened c) increased d) ignored

8 European countries have a tense with Russia due to the last war.
a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) game

9 Seeing those pictures on TV back all bad memories about my accident.
a) brought b) got c) dated d) repeated

10 Many world met to discuss the environmental problems in Sharm El-Sheikh Climate Conference last November.
a) armies b) enemies c) fighters d) leaders

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء
as usual	كالمعتاد	keep attention on	يستمر في الاهتمام بـ
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع	take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى	go past	يمر بـ
argue with	يجادل مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
bad for	سيئ لـ	pick up	يلتقط

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appear*	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر

- The moon appears in the sky.
- The appearance of the moon is impressive.
- The moon is very apparent among the clouds.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	vaguely/uncertain	بشكل مبهم/غير مؤكد
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant	بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder	يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/ignorance	نسيان/تجاهل
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	scatter/confuse	يبعثر/يربك
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint/motive	hindrance	إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection	انفصال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonym of the word "memory" is "……".
a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia

2 The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will …… worse as he is very old.
a) pick b) turn c) get d) fall

3 Don't get too close to the fire. The antonym of the adjective "close" is "……".
a) near b) nearly c) happy d) distant

4 Our neighbour left the children at home with the babysitter …… usual.
a) like b) as c) for d) in

5 We went …… all the new buildings on our way to the suburb.
a) on b) above c) past d) out

6 I guess that you'll be looking for a new job now. The verb "guess" is similar in meaning to "……".
a) question b) wonder c) request d) suppose

7 I said hello but the teacher ignored me. The noun from the verb "ignore" is "……".
a) ignores b) ignored c) ignorance d) ignorant

8 You should try and organise your time better. The verb "organise" is the opposite of "……".
a) arrange b) coordinate c) collect d) confuse

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

memory ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)
- My grandfather suffers from memory loss.
- He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.

souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)
I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.

anniversary ذكرى سنوية
October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.

title
عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب.

The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.

subtitle
١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب.
٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.

- The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography".
- I watched a French documentary in English subtitles about the First World War.

caption
تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.

The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

conversation
محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل معلومات (لا تكون غالبًا على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)

I was having a conversation with a friend the other day.

chat
محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل الحديث (يمكن أن تكون على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)

I've just had a chat with my friend online.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A student with a poor may suffer much at school.
a) memory b) souvenir c) memorial d) anniversary

2 The present Prince of Qatar inherited the from his father, the former Prince.
a) address b) title c) speech d) talk

3 My sister spends hours on a with her friends on WhatsApp application.
a) chat b) murmur c) rumour d) conversation

4 The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a/an for each one of them.
a) title b) address c) caption d) rank

Practice



Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The two neighbours out over the place to park their cars.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

2 We on well enough, but we're not really close friends.
a) give b) get c) take d) go

3 They were friends in college, but then they moved to different cities and touch.
a) replaced b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4 The young man spent a couple of days out with his old friends as part of their vacation.
a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving

5 We were surprised when their happy marriage ended after only two years.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6 The on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

7 It is not advisable to with other people about your personal life on the internet.
a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

8 Can you the number of guests who will come to the party?
a) think b) guess c) disagree d) agree

9 As a teacher, I never my students' questions even if they seem to be unimportant.
a) assist b) welcome c) ignore d) apply

10 One of the ways to your English is to practise it with your friends at school.
a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

11 Grandfather suffers from a weak due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

12 The tour guide told us that the water from the natural well contains a small of minerals.
a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

13 President Sadat was a respected Egyptian who made great achievements.
a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

14 Don't try to up your phone while talking to a friend.
a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

15 The between Arab countries should always be strong because they have common enemies.
a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

16 Mr Sameh has always dreamed of a/an to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

17 Look at the thick clouds; it's apparently going to rain today. The opposite of the adverb "apparently" is "..... ".
a) obviously b) vaguely c) clearly d) gradually

18 The photographs brought many pleasant memories.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

19 Social media websites help you your attention on your friends' affairs.
a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have

20 Despite her problems, she carried on working usual.
a) as b) in c) at d) on

21 She's always arguing her sister about sharing their clothes.
a) on b) for c) at d) with

22 The school bus goes many students' houses on the way to school.
a) past b) for c) inside d) into

23 The scientist had never been greatly concerned with her
a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent

24 A good teacher should never make his students feel
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignoring d) ignored

25 The book includes helpful hints for inexperienced cooks. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word "..... ".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt

26 Samar well with her new classmates, and they all adore her. *(Longman)*
a) quarrels b) gets along c) falls out d) loses touch

27 He hung out with his friends. This means that he with them. *(Longman)*
a) spent time b) made trouble
c) lost contact d) stopped being friendly

28 The government an interest in people with special needs. *(Longman)*
a) does b) takes c) appears d) sits

29 A is an ornamental chain or string of beads or jewels worn round the neck. *(Longman)*
a) tie b) shoe c) ring d) necklace

30 I was surprised that he me completely; he pretended that he hadn't seen me. *(Longman)*
a) looked b) ignored c) recognised d) realised

B Language

Important Notes

Wish/If only + past perfect	**Regret in the past** ندم فى الماضى	▸ I wish/If only I hadn't forgotten my book. The teacher was angry. ▸ I wish I had arrived early. I didn't see my uncle.
Wish/If only + past simple	**Wish about present situation** أمنية فى المضارع	▸ I wish/If only I were/was taller to be able to play basketball. (I'm not tall.) ▸ I wish I had enough money to buy this dress.
Wish/If only + would/could + Inf.	**To express a strong desire that we believe is unlikely or impossible.** للتعبير عن رغبة قوية نعتقد أنها غير محتملة أو مستحيلة.	▸ I wish/If only they would stop talking. ▸ I wish I could speak Turkish.

- عنـد التعبيـر عن الرغبـة والأمنية نرجع بالزمن درجة إلى الوراء، فلو أردنا التعبير عن المضارع نسـتخدم الماضى، ولو أردنا الماضى نستخدم الماضى التام، ولا نستخدم شكل المضارع بعد Wish/If only.

▸ He's ill. He wishes he weren't ill. (Present)
▸ I overslept yesterday. I wish I hadn't overslept yesterday. (Past)
I wish I could be an engineer when I grow up. (Future)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I wish we enough money to buy a car.
a) were having b) have c) had d) will have

2 She wishes she to her teacher's advice. She didn't succeed.
a) listened b) had listened c) listens d) would listen

3 I wish the school holidays longer.
a) will be b) are c) have been d) were

4 Ahmed is angry with me. I wish I to his wedding last week.
a) had gone b) went c) would go d) will go

5 I regret going to the final match. I wish I there.
a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) wouldn't go d) won't go

Alternatives to using "If" (If) بدائل

هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل If وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1 Providing/Provided that/On condition that/As (So) long as + جملة

- You can borrow my pen if/provided that/on condition that/as long as you give it back.

لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل If فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2 Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) + جملة

- Supposing/Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- Supposing it rains, will you go for a picnic with him?

3 Unless + جملة مثبتة/Without + noun or v. + ing = If ... not

Unless لو لم	+	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)	,	جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless		he had phoned me,		I wouldn't have visited him.

We can't enter the building	if we don't wear a helmet.
	unless we wear a helmet.
	without wearing a helmet.

If they hadn't had a ticket,	they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.
Unless they had had a ticket,	
Without having a ticket,	

4 In case of/In the event of + noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

5 In case = If

- نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى if فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى، لأنها تعنى فعل شىء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

- Take this money in case you need some. فى حالة/ربما
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (not if)

6 But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

7 Should/Were/Had + subject + verb

- تستخدم were/had/should بدلًا من If كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.
- تستخدم should بدلًا من If فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
- Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

8 Were + subject + noun/adjective
Were + subject + (to + Inf.)

- تستخدم Were بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثانية فقط، ويأتى بعدها إما اسم وإما صفة أو (to + inf).

- Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
- Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

- تستخدم Had بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + subject + P.P.

- Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

- فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

- Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

9 If it weren't for/If it hadn't been for = Without

- If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
- If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)

If/Unless + v. + ing + verb لاحظ

- يجب مراعاة أن (v. + ing) يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد If أو Unless كالآتى:

- If studying online saves time, I'll download the lessons and study them at home.

The Mixed Conditional (للفائقين)

- يمكن دمج الحالتين الثانية والثالثة إذا كان المعنى يتعلق بالماضى والمضارع معًا.

- If you had planned things at the start, you wouldn't be in this mess now.

- لو خططت للأشياء من البداية (ماضٍ) لم تكن فى هذه الفوضى الآن (مضارع).

- If you hadn't left all these dirty dishes, the place would look a bit tidier.

- لو لم تترك كل هذه الأطباق المتسخة (ماضٍ) لكان المكان يبدو أكثر ترتيبًا الآن (مضارع)

- If Ali were taller, they would have chosen him in the basketball team yesterday.

- على ليس طويلًا بدرجة كافية ليتناسب مع كرة السلة وهذه حالته فعكس الواقع يوضع حالة ٢ ولكن الاختيار وقع فى زمن ماضٍ فيكون حالة ٣.

Summary

الحالة الصفرية The Zero Conditional

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:
نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص. وتتكون من:

If / When → **Present simple** مضارع بسيط → **Present simple** مضارع بسيط

- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.

الحالة الأولى The First Conditional

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future.
نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If → **Present simple** مضارع بسيط → will + Inf. / may + Inf. / can + Inf. / Imperative فعل أمر

- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.

الحالة الثانية The Second Conditional

We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice.
نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل. وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة

If → **Past simple** ماضٍ بسيط → would + Inf. / could + Inf.

- If I had much money, I would buy a new car. (I don't have much money at present).

الحالة الثالثة The Third Conditional

We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen.
- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If → **Past perfect** ماضٍ تام → would have + P.P. / could have + P.P. / might have + P.P.

- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it).

Practice



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Visitors are welcomed they don't make troubles.
a) without b) unless c) as long as d) provides

2 an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that

3 he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
a) Should b) Hadn't c) If d) Had

4 I won't do anything you agree.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) but for

5 she invited me to her birthday, I would have attended it.
a) If b) Unless c) Had d) When

6 Were COVID-19 again, hospitals would now be ready for it.
a) to reappear b) reappeared c) be reappeared d) to reappearing

7 You can go out with your friends you come back before midnight.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) as long as

8 Supposing there no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
a) were b) had been c) are d) have been

9 If it your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

10 We will be at work in time the bus comes soon.
a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of

11 his many crimes, he wouldn't have been sent to prison.
a) But for b) In case of c) unless d) Provided that

12 Should she more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
a) had b) have c) to have d) had had

13 having a car, we would have found it difficult to get there in time.
a) If b) In case of c) Without d) Provided that

14 They wish they speak French.
a) could b) can c) will d) may

15 If it for the medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.

a) haven't been b) hadn't been c) hadn't d) weren't

16 You must take your umbrella it rains.

a) in case b) unless c) in case of d) without

17 your generosity, I would have been in big trouble.

a) But for b) If it weren't for c) Provided that d) Unless

18 I'll talk to the press they don't reveal my identity.

a) unless b) on condition that c) without d) in case of

19 I wish I more revision this year. I didn't get high marks.

a) did b) could do c) would do d) had done

20 If only I more time for my hobbies. I'm very busy.

a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

21 I wish I had travelled by express train. This means that I regret by the express train.

a) travelling b) not travelling

c) not to travel d) for not travelling

22 I regret dropping my cup of tea. I wish I

a) had been careful b) was careful

c) wasn't careless d) hadn't been careful

23 He feels sorry for insulting her. He wished he more polite.

a) has been b) had been c) wasn't d) will be

24 on time, he wouldn't miss the lecture.

a) Will he arrive b) Weren't he to arrive c) Were he to arrive d) Has he arrived

25 I wish I hadn't spent all this money on silly things! This shows

a) probability b) advice c) regret d) possibility

26 If he sold the five feddans, he would be rich and a new house.

a) bought b) buy c) will buy d) buys

27 One answer to the following sentence is correct:

"If I enough money, I around Europe. But, unfortunately, I am broke مفلس."

a) had/would backpack b) had had/would backpack

c) had/would have backpacked d) have/will backpack

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.

b) Unless I were a doctor, I could help you.

c) Unless I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.

d) Unless I weren't a doctor, I could help you.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically INCORRECT:

a) I will lend you my car if you promise to return it today.

b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

c) I won't lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

d) I will lend you my car as long as you promise to return it today.

30 Choose one correct answer to the following question:

What if you enough money?

a) did you do/had

b) had you done/had had

c) would you have done/had had

d) would you do/had had

31 The door unless you it.

a) won't open/push

b) doesn't open/will push

c) isn't open/push

d) won't open/will push

32 You can't take my car carefully.

a) if you drive

b) unless you drive

c) provided you drive

d) in case you drive

33 Hossam can get high marks he does his best.

a) in case of

b) without

c) provided

d) unless

34 his bravery, the house would have been burnt.

a) If

b) In case of

c) If it weren't for

d) But for

35 emergency, call the police.

a) Were there

b) Unless there is

c) In case of

d) Had there been

Test yourself

Take a test

Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I guess you're mad at me for losing your sunglasses. The verb "guess" is an antonym of the verb "……".
a) wonder b) suppose c) presume d) declare

2 Mother usually …… with our aunt for hours on the phone every day.
a) fights b) chats c) quarrels d) reverses

3 Doctors say that you will feel better if you …… your sad moments with your close friends.
a) share b) divide c) split d) argue

4 Mona and Leila have been intimate friends since childhood. The adjective "intimate" is similar in meaning to the word "……".
a) hated b) far c) distant d) close

5 I usually buy my clothes at the …… near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) mall d) restaurant

6 I need new computer parts which will make its …… more powerful.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

7 When the phone rang, my little brother …… it up immediately.
a) held b) picked c) moved d) rose

8 Staying at this hotel brought …… sweet memories of our honeymoon.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

9 The two sisters …… out over who will wear the new dress to the party.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

10 I felt embarrassed when my teacher …… my question and moved on to the next point.
a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied

11 I advised my son to …… his study well to get high marks in exams.
a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise

12 The doctor said that the old man …… died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
a) unlikely b) fortunately c) luckily d) apparently

13 Mother always tells my little brother that it's not …… to talk with his mouth full.
a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy

14 My sister is really interested …… reading about the news of actors and actresses.
a) at b) for c) in d) about

15 The two girls have had a long-standing since they were in primary school.
a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship

Language

16 We wish we the matter seriously and phoned the doctor from the beginning.
a) took b) taken c) had taken d) have taken

17 I wish you throw the litter on the floor.
a) would b) wouldn't c) could d) won't

18 he been invited, he would have come to the party.
a) Had b) Should c) Were d) Would

19 If Mona someone the way to the museum, she would have known where to go.
a) asked b) would ask c) asks d) had asked

20 Were you too much, you would be fat.
a) eat b) to eat c) ate d) had eaten

21 he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.
a) Without b) If c) Unless d) In case

22 knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.
a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless

23 It's too bad; Hany isn't with us. If he here, he the letter for us.
a) had been/'d have translated b) is/will translate
c) were/wouldn't translate d) were/could translate

24 If you need anything from the shop, I it for you.
a) will get b) get c) would get d) got

25 the sun's disappearance, there would be no life on Earth.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Without

26 they had much time, they would have studied better.
a) If b) Had c) Were d) Have

27 Were you harder, you'd get higher marks.
a) work b) to work c) had worked d) worked

28 I will call her she wants to join us at the cinema.
a) without b) unless c) in case d) but for

29 If I hadn't worked hard yesterday, I tired now.
a) wouldn't have been b) would be
c) will be d) wouldn't be

30 having a car of your own is troublesome, you can use public transport.
a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

Study Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act iii, scenes ii–iv

Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية
burn (v)	يحرق
force (v) (d)	يجبر
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح
go into (v)	يدخل
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسي القلب
homeless (adj)	بلا مأوى/مشرد
horrible (adj)	رهيب
hut (n)	كوخ
lightning (n)	برق
philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
rise (n)	ينهض
stomach (n)	معدة
straw (n)	قش
torch (n)	كشاف/شعلة
try (v) (tried)	يحاول

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى موقف شخص ما
win the trust	يكسب الثقة
go around	يتجول
keep away	يبتعد



Practice

Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act iii,scenes ii-iv

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the storm, a flash of lit up the sky and the children were afraid.
a) lightning
b) thunder
c) wind
d) tornado

2 My elder sister would never me for losing her ring.
a) prohibit
b) forgive
c) allow
d) expect

3 A is a small simple building with only one or two rooms.
a) palace
b) resort
c) hut
d) hall

4 Closing the factory was a/an decision as it led to the loss of jobs.
a) hearted
b) easy-hearted
c) soft-hearted
d) hard-hearted

5 All the animals in this small farm sleep on
a) sheets
b) leather
c) straw
d) skin

6 Our host, Mrs Adams, insisted on from her chair to greet us.
a) raising
b) rising
c) keeping
d) staying

7 Despite the pain, the old woman herself to get out of bed.
a) forced
b) delighted
c) punished
d) pleased

8 The floods have killed hundreds of people and made thousands
a) speechless
b) sightless
c) homeless
d) useless

9 One of the main symbols of the Olympics is the Olympic which is lit all through the Games.
a) sword
b) torch
c) stadium
d) circle

10 Ahmed's brother lost his life in a/an train accident.
a) effective
b) impressive
c) delightful
d) horrible

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret.
Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

Last summer, I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a café at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The café was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee to the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."



I am arriving at the airport.



I am sitting with the old man at the café.



I am shouting at the old man angrily.



I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

What can we learn from this embarrassing situation?

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later.

Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms.

When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work. When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Energy is
a) the ability to bounce a ball
b) the ability to cause change
c) the ability to ride a bike
d) the ability to switch on the light

2 The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is
a) bounce
b) kick
c) store
d) convert

3 Energy that is based on an object's position is called
a) potential energy
b) kinetic energy
c) thermal energy
d) mechanical energy

4 The antonym of the word "raw" is "..... ".
a) uncooked
b) fresh
c) cooked
d) natural

5 Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of
a) light
b) sound
c) bouncing
d) motion

6 **When a person starts to move, ...**
a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one
b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one
c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one
d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7 **Which one is not mentioned in the passage?**
a) The energy in a battery.
b) The energy in a mobile phone.
c) The energy in a basketball.
d) The energy of heat.

8 **The best title for the passage is "..... ".**
a) Types of Power
b) What Is Energy?
c) Sports and Energy
d) Energy Consumption

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

a) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشـياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المسـاعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

b) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشـياء فى الحياة حيث يجب للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المسـاعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

c) الصداقـة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشـياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لـك كل الماليات والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

d) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث لا يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المساعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

2 We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

a) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا التعرف على وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

b) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

c) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس قاعدة كبير فى هذا.

d) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا النفسية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم الجيدة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

3 The Olympic Games are now a political question as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour their country. So, the Games may have lost their original meaning.

a) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن سؤال سياسى حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

b) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب ربحها الأصلى.

c) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

d) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل إراحة بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

4 Literature can play a vital role in solving many social problems. That's because it is one of the best means to portray these problems and look for solutions for them.

a) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا عاديًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.

b) يمكـن أن يلعـب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه مـن أفضل النتائج لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.

c) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن تعويض لها.

d) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.

5 Retirement age can be considered a time of rest for a lot of people. However, many old people want to continue working for social and financial reasons.

a) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب صحية ومالية.

b) يمكن اعتبار سن التقاعد وقت باقى لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

c) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

d) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ولذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسـباب اجتماعية ومالية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 ما لم تحاول تطوير مهاراتك و اكتساب مهارات جديدة فلن تستطيع الحصول على أى ترقية أو مرتب أعلى فى هذه الشركة.

a) Unless you tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

b) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you will not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

c) Unless you had tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

d) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you are not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

7 صورت قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

a) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

b) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz photographed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

c) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was rewarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

d) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz painted the Egyptian society with all its evaluations and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

8 يعانـــى الكثيـــر من الناس من غلاء المعيشـــة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمـل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الأزمات المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

a) Many people suffer from the high rise of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

b) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society organs must work to increase production and change their consuming customs to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

c) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to stand various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

d) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

9 لا تؤثر البطالة فقط على الأفراد ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرا سلبيًا على النمو الاجتماعى والاقتصادى للبلاد، لذا لابد أن نضع حدًا لها.

a) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economical growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

b) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

c) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a different impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

d) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we may put an end to it.

10 هناك الكثير من العيوب للتكنولوجيا، فبسبب ارتباط الشباب بأدوات التواصل الاجتماعى التكنولوجية، مثل: الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول، يفقد بعضهم فن الحوار مع باقى أفراد المجتمع.

a) Technology has many advantages. Because of the youth's contact to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

b) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the portrait of dialogue with the rest of society.

c) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

d) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media kits, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. – I used the right structure. – I used a topic sentence. – I wrote the conclusion. – I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mum always warns me not to be with my children so as not be hated.
a) brave b) mean c) generous d) kind

2 The new cancer hospital on 6th of October City accepts from all people.
a) donations b) sales c) products d) crops

3 When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day out with my friends.
a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving

4 I realised that time was getting and we would have to hurry.
a) on b) back c) into d) about

5 My cousin has a keen interest in music since he was a child.
a) missed b) designed c) kept d) taken

6 The computer trouble was apparently caused by a programming error.
The synonym of the adverb "apparently" is ".....".
a) successfully b) vaguely c) temporarily d) clearly

7 Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she at school yesterday.
a) have been b) was c) were d) had been

8 Mobile phones usually working if they fall in water.
a) will stop b) stop c) would stop d) stopped

9 If the internet, our life would be gloomy.
a) didn't exist b) existed
c) doesn't exist d) exists

10 My brother wouldn't have missed the bus if he so slowly.
a) walked b) had walked
c) hadn't walked d) walks

11 If I go to bed early, I usually early.
a) wakes b) would wake up
c) will wake up d) wake up

12 What if you'd been late for the exam?
a) will you do b) would you do
c) would you have done d) do you do

13 If your grades good in the first term, you will have to work harder in the second term.

a) weren't
b) aren't
c) hadn't been
d) had been

14 If I anywhere in the world, I would go to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a) could go
b) had gone
c) go
d) was gone

15 He would have visited a lot of historic places if the holiday he had longer.

a) had
b) had been
c) had had
d) has had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that electric eels have quite a misleading name? They do! That's because even though it's true they are electric, they're actually not eels! Instead, they are a kind of fish called "knife fish". The most interesting thing about electric eels is that they can produce an electric charge.

The shock can go up to 600 volts. This can knock down a full-grown horse. Electric eels use their charge to hunt and protect themselves. They also use the charge in another way. Since these eels have poor eyesight, they don't rely on their eyes to see. Instead, they give out a weak electric signal that they use like radar. This radar helps them find their way around. It also helps them locate their prey.

Electric eels live in fresh water. They are nocturnal, which means they sleep during the day and are active at night. They mostly live in rivers in South America. They like dark waters, mud and caves. Most of their time is spent underwater and will regularly come to the surface about every ten minutes to inhale air through their mouth, then they will swim back to the bottom of the water.

Electric eels are carnivores, so they love to eat meat. They are very good at attacking their prey and their teeth are really sharp. If you saw an electric eel, you might think it looks like a snake. They have long, thin bodies. They can be white, black, blue, purple, or grey. They rarely harm humans. In fact, they are afraid of people. In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy. Since the blood can be toxic, the eels need to be fully cooked. Would you eat one?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Where might you find an electric eel?

a) In the deep waters of the Pacific Ocean.

b) In the shallow coastal waters of the Mediterranean Sea.

c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.

d) Only in zoos because they are extinct in the wild.

17 What does delicacy mean in "In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy."?

a) A specialty food item.

b) A common snack food.

c) A symbol of good luck.

d) An unlucky omen.

18 How are electric eels different from most fish in the way they obtain oxygen to breathe?

a) Electric eels get oxygen through the food they eat.

b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.

c) Electric eels have an extra set of gills on their bodies.

d) Electric eels do not need to obtain oxygen to survive like other fish.

19 The antonym of the word "toxic" is "……".

a) innocent

b) poisonous

c) harmful

d) harmless

20 The electric eels use electricity to …… .

a) hunt their children

b) feed their children

c) hunt and move

d) breathe

21 Electric eel's name is misleading as …… .

a) it is not electric

b) it is not a fish

c) it's not a knife fish

d) it's not an eel

22 If you eat an electric eel, you must …… .

a) have it with salad

b) cook it well

c) make it toxic

d) get it broiled

23 The best title for the passage is "……".

a) The Wildlife

b) A Knife Fish

c) Electricity in the Sea

d) How to Cook an Eel

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- واجبنا تجاه أصدقائنا أن نقدم لهم النصائح المفيدة والتى اكتسبناها خلال تجاربنا وتعلمناها من أخطائنا.

a) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advices that we have gained through our experiments and that we have learned from our mistakes.

b) From our duties towards our friends is to offer them useful advice that we have won through our experiments and that we have learned from our mistakes.

c) It is our duty towards our friends to request them useful advices that we have earned through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.

d) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advice that we have gained through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

a) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حقوق وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

b) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

c) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تقضى على فيروسات جديدة.

d) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تصنع لقاحات جديدة.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



King Lear

Play

- Introduction
- Summary
- Exercises

امسح الكود

لقراءة نص القصة
من كتاب الطالب

Introduction

(A) The Writer (William Shakespeare)

. William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright and actor. Shakespeare is considered as the greatest writer in the English language. He wrote about 38 plays, 154 sonnets, two long narrative poems. His plays have been translated into every major living language and are performed more often than those of any other playwright.

. Shakespeare was born in Stratford-upon-Avon in 1564. His father was a merchant and his mother was a housewife. Shakespeare received little formal education, but he was clearly an excellent reader. He began writing plays in the late 1580s and his first works were performed in the early 1590s. Shakespeare's career was successful and he became a wealthy man. He married Anne Hathaway in 1582 and they had three children. In 1601 Shakespeare withdrew to Stratford-upon-Avon, where he died in 1616.

(B) The Play

. *King Lear* is a tragedy play written by William Shakespeare. It is a depiction تصوير of the slow descent into insanity جنون of the main character King Lear. This occurs after his disposal of his kingdom to two of his daughters due to their flattery تفاق. This play studies the correlation between appearances and reality as well as the result of putting too much trust in appearance than reality.

(C) Characters in the Play

KING LEAR	: The King of Britain
GONERIL	: King Lear's eldest daughter
REGAN	: King Lear's second daughter
CORDELIA	: King Lear's youngest daughter
KING OF FRANCE	: He wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF BURGUNDY	: He also wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF ALBANY	: Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL	: Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT	: A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER	: A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR	: Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND	: Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL	: Lear's clown
OSWALD	: A servant
OLD MAN	: A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN	: A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN	: One of Edmund's soldiers

Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family

Act I, Scene i Summary

- The play begins with a talk of two noblemen, Gloucester and Kent. Gloucester introduces his son, Edmund, explaining that Edmund is the younger of his two sons, while Edgar is the older. King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave. King Lear announces يعلن his plan to divide the kingdom among his three daughters. He asks his daughters to say which of them loves him the most, promising to give the greatest share to that daughter.
- Lear's older daughters, Goneril and Regan, respond to his test with flattery النفاق, telling him that they love him more than anything else. But Cordelia, Lear's youngest (and favourite) daughter, refuses to flatter her father saying that she loves him exactly as much as a daughter should love her father, and that her sisters wouldn't have husbands if they loved their father as much as they say. Lear becomes very angry, deprives يحرم Cordelia of her share of the kingdom, and divides it between her two sisters.
- The Duke of Kent is the only one who disagrees with the king's actions. Kent tells Lear it is foolish to reward the flattery of his older daughters and deprives Cordelia, who loves him more than her sisters do. Lear turns his anger on Kent, banishing ينفى him from the kingdom and telling him that he must be gone within five days.
- The King of France and Duke of Burgundy are at Lear's court, waiting for his decision as to which of them will marry Cordelia. Lear calls them in and tells them that Cordelia no longer has any title or land. Duke of Burgundy withdraws يسحب his offer of marriage, but the King of France is impressed by Cordelia's honesty and decides to make her his queen. Lear sends her away without his blessing بركة.

Practice — Act I, Scene i Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 King Lear wanted to his kingdom into three parts. *(Student's book)*
a) divide b) share c) connect d) collect

2 The old king had a large amount of like silver and gold. *(Student's book)*
a) beauty b) riches c) power d) strength

3 Cordelia couldn't think of a good for her father. *(Student's book)*
a) search b) questionnaire c) answer d) survey

4 Kent thinks that it's to tell Cordelia to go away. *(Student's book)*
a) honest b) political c) foolish d) financial

5 The of Kent was a powerful person in England. *(Workbook)*
a) King b) title c) kingdom d) Duke

6 When you have a to do something, you must do it. *(Workbook)*
a) scene b) disguise c) title d) duty

7 A is something you can use to cut things or fight people. *(Workbook)*
a) stick b) cart c) sword d) gun

8 King Lear decides to give his to his daughters. *(Workbook)*
a) duke b) title c) kingdom d) sword

9 King Lear intended to give a of his kingdom to each daughter. *(Longman)*
a) third b) three c) thirdly d) thirteen

10 What I liked most in my journey to Sinai is the natural of the landscape.
a) riches b) beauty c) cost d) wisdom

11 The fishermen were very to go out in a boat in such bad weather.
a) sensible b) wise c) foolish d) sensitive

12 The new shop gives a bottle of perfume to their customers as samples.
a) down b) off c) in d) away

13 I like my neighbours very much because they are good and people.
a) cruel b) deceitful c) honest d) foolish

14 Only world leaders and noblemen were invited to the coronation تتويج of His the King of Britain.
a) Minister b) Majesty c) Superior d) Officer

15 Mr Rafat, our science teacher, has been single for so long, I don't think he'll ever
a) marry b) depart c) believe d) divorce

Act I, Scenes i–ii Summary

- Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters before leaving England and begged them to take care of their father. Goneril and Regan get together in secrecy السرية. Although they know that they now have complete power over the kingdom, and they agree that they must act to reduce their father's remaining authority السلطة thinking that he is becoming mad in his old age.
- Edmund enters the scene – in Gloucester's house – talking out loud to himself. Edmund expresses his dissatisfaction عدم الرضا about his father's decision that his elder brother, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. He decides to do something to solve this problem. Edmund reveals يكشف عن his plan to undermine his brother's position by tricking his father with a forged مزيف letter, which he presents to Gloucester. In it, Edgar, as Edmund suggests, is trying to persuade him to get rid of يتخلص من their father. Gloucester gets very angry and asks Edmund to look for Edgar and catch him to be punished.
- Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that he's looking out for his safety when he suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection from their father's anger. Edmund convinces Edgar to hide away from his father.



Practice

Act I, Scenes i-ii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mr Ahmed did not buy his house. It was a/an from his parents. *(Workbook)*
a) invention b) robbery c) inheritance d) deceit

2 My younger brother always tells the He never lies. *(Workbook)*
a) truth b) trust c) anger d) infection

3 It is natural to feel with something, but it is important to learn to control it. *(Workbook)*
a) content b) anger c) hunger d) respect

4 We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we *(Workbook)*
a) inspected b) failed c) passed d) succeeded

5 The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't him. I think they are all quite old. *(Workbook)*
a) deny b) trust c) doubt d) punish

6 My grandmother had a small as a cleaner, but she never had very much money. *(Workbook)*
a) wealth b) health c) income d) treasure

7 This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to us. *(Workbook)*
a) deceive b) deserve c) award d) forgive

8 You can go into the building one way and through a different door. *(Workbook)*
a) stay b) break c) deceive d) exit

9 When someone your heart, they hurt your feelings and make you unhappy.
a) breaks b) keeps c) sends d) loves

10 is very important to me, so I want friends who will always stand by my side. *(Workbook)*
a) Loyalty b) Inheritance c) Riches d) Beauty

11 Edmund wants his father to believe something that isn't true, so he him. *(Workbook)*
a) attacks b) deserves c) deceives d) believes

12 He was admired for his loyalty to his colleagues. "Loyalty" is similar in meaning to "..... ". *(Longman)*
a) envy b) popularity c) faithfulness d) hatred

13 Our team was very bad. We didn't to win the match. *(Longman)*
a) conserve b) reverse c) observe d) deserve

14 My friend has never to me before, so I have no reason to doubt his word.
a) trusted b) laid c) lied d) faced

15 In a fit of anger, King Lear sent Cordelia because she couldn't express her love to him.
a) away b) in c) of d) out

Act I, Scenes iii-iv Summary

- In the palace of Goneril and the Duke of Albany, the scene opens with Goneril asking her servant, Oswald, if Lear hit her servant. Oswald confirms يؤكد the incident. Goneril instructs يرشد Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something, and if the King is unhappy with this treatment معاملة, he should be told to move to Regan's palace. Goneril then commands تامر her servants to treat the King's company with coldness since the soldiers are starting to behave badly.
- Kent, earlier banished منفى by Lear, reappears in disguise متنكر as a poor old man. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity هوية and his intention. Kent asserts يؤكد his loyalty and willingness to serve the King. Kent's obvious admiration impresses Lear.
- When the King asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without responding رد to the request. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the members of Goneril's household أفراد الأسرة are treating the king rudely.
- Goneril enters, complaining about the King's Fool and his soldiers. Goneril demands that Lear reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the King declares يصرح that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer reception استقبال حار.



Practice

Act I, Scenes iii-iv Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He rarely makes mistakes. He is very and careful. *(Workbook)*
a) arrogant b) rash c) foolish d) wise

2 We all respect him because he politely. *(Workbook)*
a) fights b) shouts c) behaves d) regrets

3 My father usually us to read different books. *(Workbook)*
a) discourages b) encourages c) punishes d) deploys

4 Don't be, or you'll be punished. *(Workbook)*
a) rude b) honest c) wise d) respectful

5 We have a very honest who never steals anything from the house. *(Workbook)*
a) boss b) servant c) manager d) relative

6 The criminal tried to himself, so the police wouldn't recognise him. *(Workbook)*
a) improvise b) revise c) disguise d) reinvent

7 Don't be cruel to animals; the little horse can't pull this huge *(Workbook)*
a) cruiser b) lorry c) vehicle d) cart

8 If you did something bad, then you are of doing it. *(Workbook)*
a) guilty b) free c) innocent d) criminal

9 King Lear thinks that Goneril will have a taste of her own if her child is cruel to her. *(Workbook)*
a) riches b) loyalty c) inheritance d) medicine

10 A/An is someone whose job is to travel or live with an important person and help him or her.
a) guide b) ambassador c) attendant d) driver

11 The criminal the old man with a broken bottle, but he was arrested.
a) attached b) attacked c) attracted d) intended

12 We really must leave or we will miss the train.
a) immediately b) later c) lately d) gradually

13 Children have to their parents' hand when they cross the road.
a) detest b) hold c) leave d) tie

14 My younger brother used to problems at school, but he doesn't do this anymore.
a) solve b) follow c) do d) make

15 The first thing I about the hotel room was the efficient air conditioner.
a) told b) hated c) noticed d) delayed

Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i Summary

- Lear's sadness grows when Regan refuses to host يستضيف him and his hundred soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتآمر with her sister, proposes that Lear dismiss يطرد his soldiers. With Oswald and Goneril now present, Cornwall admits to Lear that he ordered Kent's punishment عقاب.
- The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear says that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company of those who disrespect his proper place as father and King. Regan and Goneril tell Gloucester not to stop their father from going out in the storm. Regan and Goneril remain unmoved and unconcerned غير مهتم that the old king is going out into a severe storm.
- In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier. Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent tells the soldier that there's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when he gets there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered. Kent gives the messenger رسول a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.



Practice

Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough for a desk. *(Student's book)*
a) hole b) palace c) room d) gap

2 We had a/an about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy. *(Student's book)*
a) agreement b) disagreement c) treaty d) cooperation

3 Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny *(Student's book)*
a) jokes b) locks c) scripts d) research

4 He plotted against his country. He was a *(Student's book)*
a) noble b) patriot c) spy d) modal

5 We can in this shop until the rain stops. *(Student's book)*
a) shelter b) escape c) appear d) reply

6 Nurses need to have a lot of so they can be kind to people. *(Workbook)*
a) anger b) beauty c) patience d) power

7 I think I will mad if I need to do this again. *(Workbook)*
a) talk b) send c) come d) go

8 I to Eman because I was late meeting her at the cafe. *(Workbook)*
a) told b) apologised c) persuaded d) said

9 I lost my key, so I was locked of our house until my mum came home. *(Workbook)*
a) out b) under c) into d) off

10 Please, don't turn your on me. *(Workbook)*
a) side b) head c) front d) back

11 Honestly, I loved the little boy the moment I eyes on him. *(Longman)*
a) fell b) set c) hit d) sat

12 The criminal wore a beard and moustache to be fully disguised. *(Longman)*
a) free b) fake c) fair d) fire

13 Alarmingly, the hole in the ozone layer has in size recently.
a) reduced b) formed c) doubled d) deteriorated

14 A is a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff, or mountain, or one that is underground.
a) well b) cave c) funnel d) channel

15 The firefighter saved the girl when he reached her the right time.
a) at b) of c) for d) against

Act III, Scenes ii – iii – iv Summary

- In another part of the field, King Lear enters with the Fool. The storm continues. Lear's mood حالة مزاجية matches the intensity شدة of the storm as he rages against his daughters' bad treatment. The Fool tries to persuade the King to take shelter. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut for protection, while he returns to Gloucester's castle to ask that they admit the King.
- At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund. Gloucester tells his son that when he asked Regan and Cornwall to leave, so that he might help Lear, they asked him not to do this. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter telling that some of the French army has already reached Dover. The letter is locked in his bedroom. He asks Edmund not to tell anyone about that. Gloucester exits. Alone, Edmund plans to gain Cornwall's favour by revealing the plan to aid the King.
- In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool. Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the King refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, exclaiming that a madman is in the hut. The madman is really Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. Lear has a short conversation with him.
- Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear declines يرفض, claiming that he needs to talk more with the poor man. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter.

Practice

Act III, Scenes ii – iii - iv Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandmother is scared of thunder and She hides under the stairs. *(Workbook)*

a) lightning b) lighting c) wind d) breeze

2 In the past, people used to light a with fire. Today, we use batteries. *(Workbook)*

a) sword b) torch c) bow d) pot

3 Hatem's finding it hard to Hazem for what he said in that online post. *(Workbook)*

a) deny b) forget c) forgive d) award

4 I asked my brother, but he won't help me. He is very *(Workbook)*

a) well-known b) well-believed c) kind-hearted d) hard-heartened

5 Hatem could be a because he likes to think about important questions. *(Workbook)*

a) photographer b) journalist c) philosopher d) painter

6 My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh *(Workbook)*

a) corn b) straw c) sofa d) cucumber

7 We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden *(Workbook)*

a) cave b) spring c) hut d) well

8 The young man dealt with the little child violently. *(Longman)*

a) generous b) hard-hearted c) young d) kind-hearted

9 My parents usually me for the mistakes I make: They show me how to behave well instead, and I benefit from their advice. *(Longman)*

a) fire b) punish c) forgive d) forget

10 Doctors were to work impossibly long hours during the COVID-19 pandemic.

a) fired b) dismissed c) deprived d) forced

11 When we arrived, my grandmother from her chair to welcome us.

a) sat b) laid c) rose d) fixed

12 To understand my decision, you have to in my shoes.

a) live b) walk c) keep d) run

13 Many families were left after the earthquakes in Turkey and Syria.

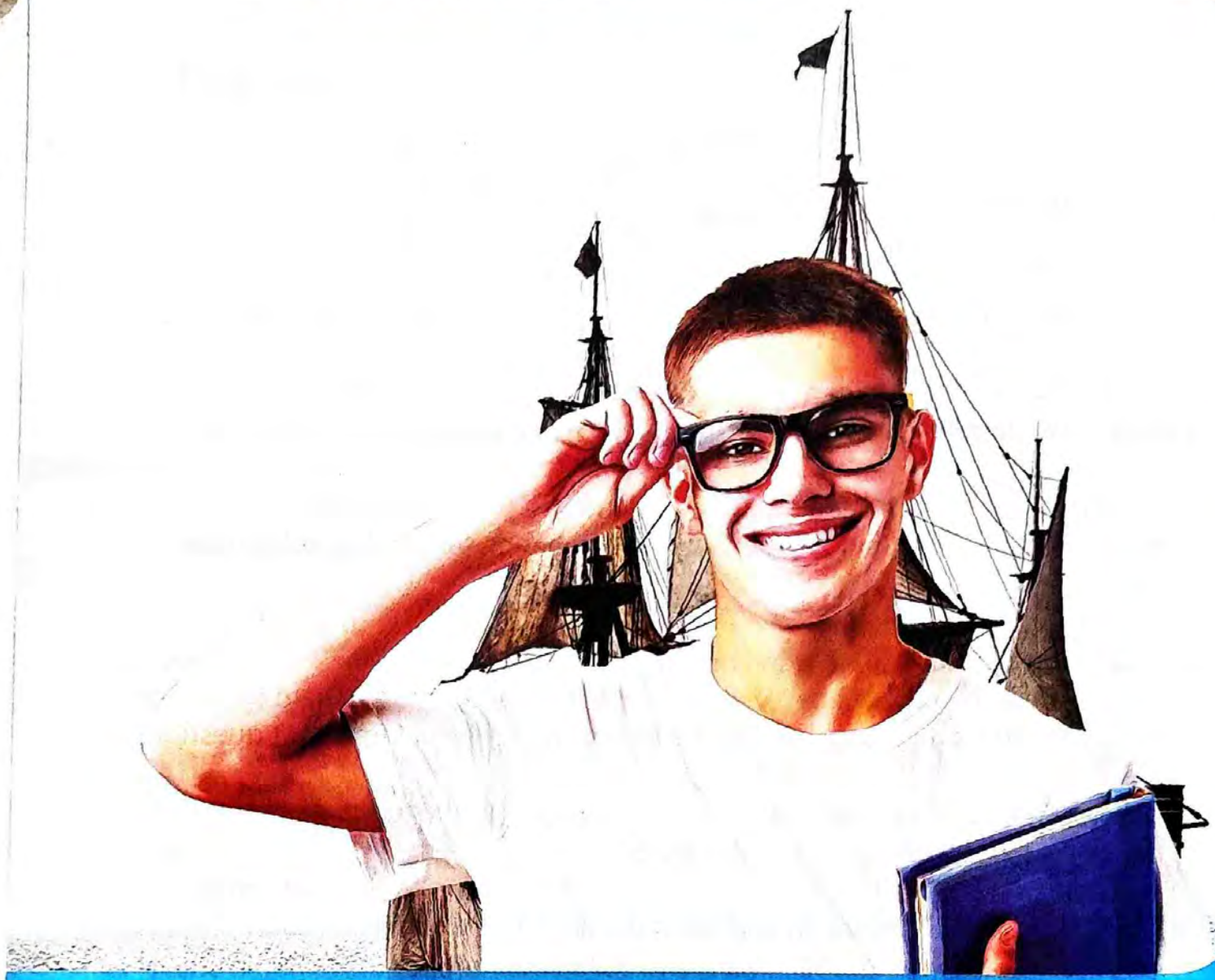
a) homeless b) healthy c) wealthy d) sporty

14 I always ask my children to keep from the kitchen so as to avoid accidents.

a) in b) away c) of d) for

15 The clerk is working very hard in order to the trust of his new boss.

a) lose b) delay c) win d) earn



Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises Answers

Unit (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should wash the dress in cold water so the colours don't
a) match b) bleed c) raise d) add

2 If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an
a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss

3 The Americans established a naval on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
a) space b) table c) column d) base

4 El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of dairy products.
a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity

5 Our old neighbour her husband by ten years.
a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced

6 Nowadays, many young people against traditional values.
a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform

7 Our prep school headmistress was a woman who rarely smiled.
a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative

8 It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance

9 The students learned how to calculate the of a triangle.
a) region b) distance c) district d) area

10 She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the she is creative.
a) roof b) well c) surface d) wall

11 We had a party last night spend all morning cleaning up the mess.
a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I need

12 I have lost my keys. I ought them in a safe place.
a) that I put b) to have put c) to be putting d) to put

13 There was no one else in the post office. I in a queue.
a) didn't need to wait b) needn't wait
c) mustn't wait d) needn't have waited

14 Dina have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

15 I'm taking an umbrella. It rain.
a) should b) must c) may d) has to

16 You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that
a) you can't b) you are allowed c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

17 **A:** **he finish the report before 10 p.m.?**
B: No, he needn't. The boss hasn't asked for it yet.
a) Mustn't b) Need c) Does d) Needs

18 **You mustn't ride a bicycle in this park. It's**
a) necessary b) inadvisable c) not allowed d) unnecessary

19 **It's a/an** **for all of us to protect the country from any danger.**
a) necessary b) has to c) importance d) must

20 **That's a bridge nobody** **cross. It's about to collapse.**
a) must b) have to c) must not d) were to

Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 **I watched a good movie** **the life and work of Nelson Mandela.**
a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting

2 **The police can really help you in the** **of an emergency.**
a) event b) accident c) incident d) story

3 **Police officers were able to** **useful information from the company's financial records.**
a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny

4 **In fact, I** **it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.**
a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made

5 **It is believed that the tiger is** **to India.**
a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted

6 **Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper** **stories about famous people's life.**
a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid

7 **We need to create a/an** **in which business can prosper.**
a) air b) breath c) climate d) location

8 **I have to say, with all due**, **that I don't think your solution will work.**
a) case b) cause c) design d) respect

9 **Hussein's fluency in English and German** **him well in getting the job.**
a) played b) presented c) served d) rewarded

10 **A parent can, on**, **help his/her son with his homework, but not all the time.**
a) event b) occasion c) accident d) incident

11 **Mr. Sobhi works in a** **school.**
a) medical famous German b) German famous medical
c) famous German medical d) German medical famous

12 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

13 For information about the flights, you can call the travel agency.
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

14 information we have is not enough to proceed.
a) Late b) Little c) A little d) The little

15 He considered his friends either geniuses or idiots, and I fell into the category.
a) latter b) later c) latest d) late

16 One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:
a) What a big car he has! b) How big a car he has!
c) What a big car has he! d) How big his car is!

17 We cannot act until orders from our boss.
a) far b) further c) the farthest d) farther

18 They are waiting for the updates in this matter.
a) latter b) late c) last d) latest

19 Toyota or Mercedes: which do you like?
a) good b) well c) better d) best

20 The red car is more expensive than the black one.
a) many b) very c) pretty d) slightly

Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Saline is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

2 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the for such a vast country.
a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain

3 If you click on this, it will make you able to get to your bank account.
a) connection b) contact c) link d) way

4 No doctor at the hospital was for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable

5 These days, poor people find it very difficult to their keep.
a) win b) award c) apply d) earn

6 When I read the job, I found it suitable for me and applied for it immediately.
a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division

7 Competition between the two companies is up.

a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating

8 The firefighters the fire in the building after three hours.

a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included

9 The nursery teacher gets ready for a new of students every year.

a) flock b) team c) crop d) line

10 The news of the promotion had a/an effect on the employees who were waiting for us.

a) electronic b) electric c) shocked d) exclusive

11 I like to have the radio on while

a) I study b) I'm studying

c) studying d) all are possible

12 Always turn your television off

a) before you leave home b) when you went to bed

c) as soon as you got bored d) after you have fallen asleep

13 He'll drink coffee while he for the bus.

a) is waiting b) wait c) was waiting d) has waited

14 Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?

a) can you want b) are you wanting

c) do you want d) have you wanted

15 I promised my father the full marks in the next exam.

a) will get b) would get

c) to get d) am going to get

16 My friend is very intelligent. He the test easily.

a) is going to pass b) will pass

c) is passing d) would pass

17 Look out! A car towards you.

a) is coming b) is going to come

c) will be coming d) will come

18 "Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation for the sentence is

a) request b) promise

c) offer d) on-the-spot decision

19 I don't think you any problems when you land in France.

a) will have b) won't have c) will have had d) will be having

20 Once you take a nap, you a lot better.

a) feel b) will feel c) will have left d) will be feeling

Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great of time and effort.
a) part b) quality c) section d) deal

2 Our team has won six basketball in the local championships.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses

3 My wife wasn't well enough to visitors, so we cancelled the party.
a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist

4 Opening remarks are important since they set the for the rest of the job.
a) music b) tone c) sign d) report

5 My cousin, Sameh has a/an for making friends easily.
a) comment b) present c) gift d) image

6 The story of the murder was important enough to make the
a) differences b) interests c) addresses d) headlines

7 The architect drew the new shopping centre in
a) section b) general c) progress d) record

8 The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic by 44 records.
a) prize b) headline c) record d) medal

9 He joined the Egyptian Cancer to be able to help other people.
a) Community b) Society
c) District d) Area

10 The advertisements are intended to improve the company's
a) photo b) location c) site d) image

11 That was a question nobody answer.
a) could b) cannot c) can d) should

12 You the job. Why didn't you use a chance?
a) may take b) can take
c) had to take d) could have taken

13 It rained heavily every day during their holiday, so they have had a very nice time.
a) can't b) must c) should d) could

14 Two hundred years ago, not many people read or write.
a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) could have

15 She could have taken the underground to save time and money, but she
a) couldn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) didn't

16 Nader have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
a) shouldn't b) should c) could d) couldn't

17 Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You nothing about it.
a) should have said b) could have said
c) shouldn't have said d) couldn't say

18 My younger brother swim 4 years ago, but he swim very well now.
a) could/can b) can/could c) could/can't d) couldn't/can

19 In a hundred years' time, we out of water to drink.
a) must have run b) could have run
c) should have run d) may have run

20 This application last week.
a) should be sent b) must have sent
c) ought to have been sent d) should have sent

Unit (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young artist asked the expert to his drawings.
a) prepare b) redetect c) criticise d) deform

2 The actress is very clever at presenting her best to the camera.
a) director b) profile c) character d) view

3 The of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation

4 The patient's brain is regularly so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.
a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated

5 I usually my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver

6 Most people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the of their neighbourhoods.
a) feeling b) character c) direction d) assumption

7 I missed the flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.
a) connecting b) contacting c) communicating d) commuting

8 When the photographer the film, he was astonished by what he saw.
a) manufactured b) designed c) spread d) developed

9 Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to fish.
a) hunt b) support c) catch d) poison

10 The earthquake 3 on the Richter scale.
a) weighed b) graded c) registered d) linked

11 The children in our street do not like that man. They say he is
a) seem b) suppose c) supposed d) mean

12 Hard exercises are meant before the match.
a) to do b) to have done c) to be done d) done

13 likely that they will lose the election.
a) It seem b) It seems c) He seems d) They seem

14 The plan is to be a secret, but everybody to know about it.
a) meant/ seems b) seemed/meant
c) seemed/seems d) supposes/means

15 Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is
a) not necessary b) predictable c) prohibited d) obligatory

16 He stayed in Europe more than his friends
a) supposed b) seemed c) needed d) meant

17 Galileo is supposed the telescope.
a) having invented b) to invent
c) to have invented d) have invented

18 Charles Dickens' writings seem by his life experiences.
a) to influence b) influential
c) to be influenced d) to be influencing

19 It was to be a chicken sandwich, but they'd been a bit with the chicken.
a) meant/supposed b) supposed/means
c) meant/seem d) supposed/mean

20 He to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
a) isn't supposing b) doesn't seem
c) isn't seemed d) not supposed

Unit (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The businessman made a of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill

2 The Health Minister has come under from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot

3 I'm going to the park outside the city for a of fresh air.
a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality

4 International schools in New York accept children from all and religions.
a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races

5 The carpenter the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.
a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated

6 Samy shouldn't let his elder brother him around like that.
a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head

7 Sales of the products at present low prices would be a of the company's investment.
a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit

8 I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get all the reasons why it happened.
a) back b) into c) on d) out

9 I know he broke the window, but so far, he hasn't up.
a) possessed b) spent c) owned d) admitted

10 In some parts of the country, there are still of violence and unrest.
a) packets b) piles c) resources d) pockets

11 If I had heard my phone ringing, I it.
a) would have had to answer b) would have to answer
c) would answer d) would have answer

12 Would you know what to do a heart attack?
a) but for b) in case c) in case of d) providing

13 When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it
a) will boil b) is boiled c) is boiling d) boils

14 If I had gone to university, I a lawyer now.
a) would have been b) would be
c) will be d) am

15 studying Turkish bothers you, you can stop it.
a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

16 If I taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.
a) wasn't b) had been c) were d) have been

17 If I a car, I you a lift.
a) had/would have given b) had/would have to give
c) had had/would have to give d) had had/would give

18 You're free to do whatever you want you respect the rules.
a) provide b) unless c) even if d) provided

19 he know the instructions, he wouldn't do that silly mistake.
a) Should b) did c) Had d) If

20 If my uncle visited us, we would be happy.
a) yesterday b) that day c) today d) then

Answers — Advanced General Exercises

Unit 1

1. b) bleed
- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).

2. c) injury
- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).

3. d) base
- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).

4. a) label
- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).

5. c) survived
- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يعيش أكثر من شخص أخر).

6. c) react
- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض/يكره).

7. a) severe
- تستخدم severeهنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).

8. b) allowing
- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. d) area
- تستخدم area هنا بمعنى (مساحة شكل هندسى).

10. c) surface
- تستخدم under the surface بمعنى (تحت السطح – شىء عكس ما هو ظاهر).

11. c) I've had to

12. b) to have put

13. a) didn't need to wait

14. a) must

15. c) may

16. a) you can't

17. b) Need

18. c) not allowed

19. d) must

20. a) must

Unit 2

1. c) celebrating
- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفى/يمجد شخصًا أو حدثًا).

2. a) event
- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (فى حالة حدوث).

3. c) extract
- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص/يستنتج).

4. d) made
- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شىء دائما).

5. b) native
- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسًا فى مكان محدد).

6. a) spicy
- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).

7. c) climate
- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).

8. d) respect
- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

9. c) served
- تستخدم serve هنا بمعنى (يقوم بدور).

10. b) occasion
- يستخدم التعبير on occasion بمعنى (أحيانًا/بشكل غير مستمر).

11. c) famous German medical

12. a) as tall as

13. b) further

14. d) The little

15. a) latter

16. c) What a big car has he!

17. b) further

18. d) latest

19. c) better

20. d) slightly

Unit 3

1. c) solution

- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).

2. a) ocean

- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة فى محيط/جهد قليل بالنسبة لشىء أكبر).

3. c) link

- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت) .

4. b) available

- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).

5. d) earn

- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).

6. c) description

- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).

7. d) heating

- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).

8. a) contained

- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوى النار أو يطفئها).

9. c) crop

- تستخدم crop هنا بمعنى (جيل/دفعة لتعليمها).

10. b) electric

- تستخدم electric هنا بمعنى (مثير/مؤثر).

11. d) all are possible

12. a) before you leave home

13. a) is waiting

14. c) do you want

15. c) to get

16. b) will pass

17. a) is coming

18. c) offer

19. a) will have

20. b) will feel

Unit 4

1. d) deal

- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).

2. a) titles

- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب فى لعبة أو مسابقة).

3. a) receive

- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).

4. b) tone

- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد فى مقابلة أو مكان).

5. c) gift

- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).

6. d) headlines

- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر فى عناوين الأخبار).

7. a) section

- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).

8. c) record

- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسى).

9. b) Society

- تستخدم Society هنا بمعنى (جمعية).

10. d) image

- تستخدم image هنا بمعنى (صورة/موقف).

11. a) could

12. d) could have taken

13. a) can't

14. b) could

15. d) didn't

16. d) couldn't

17. a) should have said

18. d) couldn't/can

19. d) may have run

20. c) ought to have been sent

Unit 5

1. c) criticise
- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).

2. b) profile
- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).

3. d) presentation
- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).

4. a) scanned
- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).

5. c) collect
- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).

6. b) character
- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).

7. a) connecting
- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).

8. d) developed
- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. b) support
- تستخدم support هنا بمعنى (يوفر البيئة المناسبة لحياة كائن حى).

10. c) registered
- تستخدم register هنا بمعنى (يسجل رقمًا على مقياس محدد).

11. d) mean

12. c) to be done

13. b) It seems

14. a) meant/seems

15. d) obligatory

16. a) supposed

17. c) to have invented

18. c) to be influenced

19. d) supposed/mean

20. b) doesn't seem

Unit 6

1. c) pile
- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

2. b) fire
- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).

3. a) breath
- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).

4. d) races
- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).

5. b) treated
- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبًا بمادة كيميائية).

6. c) boss
- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).

7. a) waste
- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).

8. b) into
- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. c) owned
- تستخدم own up هنا بمعنى (يعترف).

10. d) pockets
- تستخدم pocket هنا بمعنى (جيوب/مناطق عنف/إرهاب).

11. a) would have had to answer

12. c) in case of

13. d) boils

14. b) would be

15. a) If

16. c) were

17. b) had/would have to give

18. d) provided

19. a) Should

20. c) today

Vocabulary on Translation Exercises

achievement	إنجاز
acquire	يكتسب
addiction	إدمان
advances	التقدم
aspiring	الطموح
assistance	مساعدة
attempts	محاولات
attention	انتباه/ اهتمام
awareness	وعى
boon	نعمة
challenges	تحديات
characterised	يتميز
charitable	خيرية
civilised	متحضر
coexistence	التعايش السلمى
contribute	يساهم
convenience	راحة
cooperation	تعاون
crisis	أزمة
customs	عادات
data	بيانات
demolish	يهدم
distinguished	متميز
economic	اقتصادى
emerge	ينشأ
evil deeds	أفعال شريرة
excessive	مفرط
expiry date	تاريخ الصلاحية
facilities	إمكانيات/مرافق
factor	عامل
food shortage	نقص الطعام
formal	رسمى
form	يشكل
generations	أجيال
good qualities	صفات حميدة
Greed	الجشع
humanity	البشرية
humble	متواضع
illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية
impact	تأثير
indiscipline	عدم الانضباط
individual games	الألعاب الفردية
institutions	مؤسسات
integral	متكامل

limits	حدود
Literature	الأدب
mass media	وسائل الإعلام
methods	طرق
misdistribution	إساءة توزيع
moral values	القيم الأخلاقية
national unity	الوحدة الوطنية
obstacle	عائق/ عقبة
oppose	يعارض
perfect	كامل/ تام / ممتاز
perseverance	المثابرة
political question	مسألة سياسية
portray	يصور
poverty	الفقر
privacy	الخصوصية
productive	منتج
progress	التقدم
psychological	نفسى
public opinion	الراى العام
rationalise	يرشد الاستهلاك
relieve	يخفف
reputation	سمعة
restore	يستعيد
retirement	تقاعد
rumours	إشاعات
sacrifice	يضحى بـ
self-sufficiency	اكتفاء ذاتى
severe	شديد
stability	استقرار
strict	صارم/ حازم
suitable	مناسب
talents	مواهب
tamper	يتلاعب بـ
teamwork	العمل الجماعى
tolerance	التسامح
tools	أدوات
trade	التجارة
unemployment	البطالة
vaccine	لقاح
violate	ينتهك

ALADWAA

Gem

New Hello!

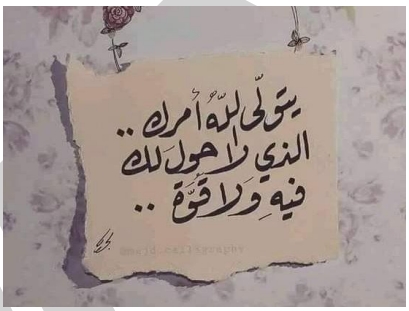


الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Final Revision & Tests

ملحق المراجعة النهائية والاختبارات



By

Emad Fawzy Mohamed Abdel Aal Ahmed Fadel Ayman M. Ebrahim Yacoub Moawad



حمّل تطبيق الأضواء الآن

ابحث عن كودك الشخصى الموجود فى ظهر الغلاف واحصل مجاناً على جميع مزايا التطبيق.

1234567890

طالب

- اختبارات تفاعلية
- شرح الدروس
- تقارير وإحصائيات
- هدايا ومكافآت
- اسأل الأضواء
- تحدى الأصدقاء

ولى أمر

- تابع مستوى أولادك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- تعرّف أهم مستجدات العملية التعليمية.

معلم

- تابع مستوى طلابك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- كون مجموعة من طلابك وتواصل معهم.

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

Contents

Part 1

General Revision

1 Revision (1) (Units 1-3) 4
2 Revision (2) (Units 4-6) 42

Part 2

Final Tests

Final Tests 84

ALPHA Gem

Part 1

General Revision

General Revision

Part 1

Revision (1) (Units 1-3)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة
amount (n)	مقدار/كمية
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية التنفس الصناعى
crop (n)	محصول
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل
infection (n)	عدوى
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة
livestock (n)	ماشية
occasion (n)	مناسبة
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى
prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
production (n)	إنتاج
react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعام
severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب
traditional (adj)	تقليدى
variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة

Helpful Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق
advertisement (n)	أعلان
algae (n)	طحالب
area (n)	منطقة
argument (n)	جدال/حجة
arrive (v) (d)	يصل
article (n)	مقال
attractive (adj)	جذاب
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة الشىء
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان
bleed (v) (ed)	ينزف
boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس
breathing (n)	التنفس
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
cell (n)	خلية
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط
champion (n)	بطل رياضى

Al-Wa Cem

championship (n)	بطولة
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
chest (n)	صدر
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك
complicated (adj)	معقد
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام
confused (adj)	مرتبك
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
continent (n)	قارة
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
curious (adj)	فضولى
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
description (n)	وصف
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
details (n)	تفاصيل
diet (n)	نظام غذائى
distant (adj)	بعيد
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
education (n)	التعليم
efficiently (adv.)	بكفاءة
electric (adj)	كهربى

else (adv.)	أخر
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
energy (n)	طاقة
environment (n)	البيئة
event (n)	حدث
evidence (n)	دليل
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
Executive Director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
expert (n)	خبير
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى
feed (v)	يطعم/يغذى
festival (n)	مهرجان
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
flat (adj)	مسطح/مستو
focus (v) (ed)	يركز
foreigner (n)	أجنبى
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ
general (adj)	عام
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
heat up (v)	يزداد حرارة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يُشمل
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
injury (n)	إصابة

ALAWA Gem

introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
land (n)	أرض
level (n)	مستوى
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط
local (adj)	محلى
lung (n)	الرئة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
menu (n)	قائمة طعام
muscle (n)	عضلة
native (adj)	أصلى
negative (adj)	سلبى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
operation (n)	عملية
options (n)	اختيارات
ordinary (adj)	عادى
organ (n)	عضو
organisation (n)	منظمة
outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
oyster (n)	محار
perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
performance (n)	أداء
personally (adv.)	شخصيا
persuasive (adj)	مقنع
pioneer (n)	رائد
pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
population (n)	السكان
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
press (v) (ed)	يضغط
produce (n)	إنتاج زراعى

products (n)	منتجات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
quantity (n)	كمية
questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
rainfall (n)	سقوط المطر
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
relatives (n)	أقارب
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
respect (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
rule (n)	قاعدة
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
seriously (adv.)	بجدية/بخطورة
share (v) (d)	يشارك
shellfish (n)	المحار
sign (n)	علامة
solution (n)	حل
source (n)	مصدر
southern (adj)	جنوبى
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء
specific (adj)	محدد
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
suitable (adj)	مناسب
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند

ALAWA Gem

survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
tourism (n)	السياحة
tradition (n)	تقليد
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

unusual (adj)	غير عادى
urban (adj)	مدنى
vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى
vertically (adv.)	عموديًا
wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
windy (adj)	عاصف
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ
achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من
around the country	حول البلد
around the world	حول العالم
as a result	نتيجة لذلك
at all	أبدا/مطلقا
at any time	فى أى وقت
at least	على الأقل
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت
catch up with	يلحق بـ/يجارى/يعرف أحوال
do an action	يقوم بالتصرف
do CPR	يجرى عملية التنفس الصناعى
do sport	يمارس رياضة
do the course	يدرس منهج تعليمى
fall asleep	ينام فجأة
feel strong and healthy	يشعر بالقوة والصحة
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن
for example	على سبيل المثال
get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...

get better	يتحسن
get ill	يصاب بمرض
get worse	يسوء
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
have a meal	يتناول وجبة
have an infection	يصاب بعدوى
have the flu	يصاب بالأنفلونزا
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in my view	فى رأيى
in the first place	فى المقام الاول
make more money	يدر مالًا
make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
make sense	ذو معنى
make sure	يتأكد
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة التالية
perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
sound nice	يبدو لطيفا

ALAWAL Gem

sound perfect	يبدو رائعا (ممتازا)
stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
take up a new sport	يمارس (يتخذ) لعبة جديدة
tell the difference	يميز الفرق(الاختلاف)
years to come	السنوات القادمة

Phrases & Prepositions

amount of	كمية من
ask about	يسأل عن
available for	متوفر لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على
care about	يهتم بـ
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ
cut down	يقطع
difference between	اختلاف بين
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على
focus on	يركز على
good for	جيد لـ
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى
grow to	ينمو إلى
happy with	سعيد بـ
hope for	أمل لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
instead of	بدلا من
interested in	مهتم بـ
keep out of	يبتعد عن
kind of	نوع من
learn about	يعرف عن
link to	رابط لـ
lock ... together	يغلق ... معا
look after	يعتنى بـ
look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
look for	يبحث عن
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
made from	مصنوع من
opinion on/about	رأى عن
remove from	يزيل من
reply to	يرد علي/يستجيب لـ
rise up	يرفع (يرتفع) لأعلى
solution to	حل لـ
source of	مصدر لـ
spend on	ينفق على
start with	يبدأ بـ
take place	يحدث
taste of	مذاق لـ
tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
think of/about	يفكر في
travel to	يسافر إلى
variety of	تنوع من
wait for	ينتظر
work with	يعمل مع
worried about	قلق عن
wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
write about	يكتب عن

ALAWA Gem

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting active	قائم بعمل (فعل) نشيط
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
allow	يسمح	allowing	سماح	allowed	مسموح
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	----------	
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	----------	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
destroy	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed	مدمر (تم تدميره)
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	مرشد/موجه
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى معدى
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار	innovative	مبدع
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحي/مشغل
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدى
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناجى
sustain	يساند/يؤازر/يدعم	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

ALADWA Gem

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate	reproach/dishonour	يعاتب/يوبخ
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/ partnership	separation	انفصال
continue	يستمر	proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
decide	يقرر	determine	delay/postpone	يؤجل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	tasteless	بلا طعم
destroy	يدمر	smash	construct	يشيد
disease	مرض	illness	health	صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation	neglect/ignorance	إهمال/تجاهل
exist	يوجد	live	depart	يغادر
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing	common/ordinary	عادى
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight	rough	خشن/غير مستقيم
fun	مرح	amusement	sorrow	أسى/حزن
gather	يتجمع	assemble	separate	يفصل
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise	misguide	يسئ التوجيه
immediately	فورا	instantly/soon	later	فيما بعد
increase	يزيد	raise	decrease	يخفض
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility	تعقيم
injury	إصابة	wound	comfort	راحة
mention	يذكر	name	ignore	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	adverse	positive	إيجابى
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated	fashionable	ذو طراز حديث
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	behave	give up	يتوقف/يقلع
popular	محبوب	attractive	unpopular	غير محبوب
press	يضغط	squeeze	release	يطلق
probably	من المحتمل	possibly	unlikely	من غير المحتمل

ALAWA Gem

rare	نادر	scarce		common	شائع
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed		cease	يتوقف
responsibility	مسئولية	duty		irresponsibility	عدم مسئولية
severe	شديد/خطير	acute		gentle	بسيط/لطيف
skill	مهارة	proficiency		incompetence	عدم كفاءة
source	مصدر	origin		outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement		failure	فشل
surprised	مندهش	astonished		unsurprised	غير مندهش
survive	ينجو	remain		die	يموت
sustainable	مستدام	continuous		temporary	مؤقت
traditional	تقليدى	conventional		modern	حديث
variety	تنوع	diversity		similarity	تشابه
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet		exclude/deny	يستبعد/ينكر

Notes on Vocabulary

1

another — آخر (للمفرد)
- I had to change my old suit with another one.

other
١- الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)
٢- أخرون (للجمع/اسم لا يعد)
- I can't find my other shoe.
- I've got some other friends I'd like to invite.

others
الأخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت «s» بعد حذف الاسم)
- Some people are at greater risk from the virus than others.

else
١- آخر/أيضا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some - any - every - no)
٢- آخر/أيضا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)
- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
Where else can we meet?

2

sign
١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات
٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)
- The sign in the store window says "OPEN."
- All the signs point to him as the guilty party.

signal
١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)
٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء
- Satellite dishes receive television signals.
- The teacher gave us the signal to finish what we were doing.

landmark
علامة بارزة (تميز مكان) مثل برج أو مبنى
- The Empire State Building is a familiar landmark on the New York skyline.

3	**athlete** رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)	▸ The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.
	athletic رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)	▸ He was a true champion, a man among men, known for his kindness as well as athletic powers.
	athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى)	▸ Athletics is largely an individual sport.
4	**kit** عدة/طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من أدوات تستخدم لغرض معين)	▸ My uncle runs a shop which sells sewing kits.
	tool آلة (غالبا يدوية) تستخدم لإصلاح أو تركيب أو العمل على شىء	▸ A saw is a tool for cutting wood.
5	**operation** ١- عملية جراحية ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة	▸ She's going to need an operation on her ankle. ▸ Britain will carry out a joint military operation with the US.
	process ١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)	▸ Breathing and the circulation of blood are life processes. ▸ Learning a foreign language can be a long process.
6	**advertisement** إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	▸ The advertisement will appear in three magazines.
	announcement تصريح/إذاعة خبر	▸ The minister will make a formal announcement tomorrow.
7	**organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم	▸ The liver is an extremely complex organ.
	member عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادى أو فريق	▸ She's a member of the local band.
8	**champion** بطل رياضى	▸ The show will be opened by the former world boxing champion.
	hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	▸ His father was a war hero, a former fighter pilot.
9	**arrive** ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر in/at)	▸ When will the plane from Paris arrive? ▸ We arrived at the hotel very late after the party.
	reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شىء معنوى	▸ We were the first people to reach the party. ▸ Finally, they reached their goal and became professional footballers.
10	**event** ١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	▸ Getting married is a major event in anyone's life. ▸ The conference was an important social event.
	incident ١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	▸ The report describes a number of related incidents. ▸ The film was boring and it didn't have many incidents.
	accident حادث (شئ خاطئ أو مؤذى حدث بغير ترتيب)	▸ Ahmed had an accident at work and had to go to hospital.

ALAWA Gem

11	special — خاص (من نوع خاص)	I don't want an ordinary wedding. I want something special.
	private — خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	He didn't want to discuss his private life.
12	menu — ١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)	He looked at the menu and decided to have the salad.
	٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	Select PRINT from the main menu.
	list — قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	Make a list of all the things you have to do.
13	outdoor (adj) — بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم	The programme of outdoor activities includes skiing, climbing, and hiking.
	outdoors (adv) — بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) حال تصف فعلً ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	They could play outdoors.
14	lose — يفقد/يخسر	Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods.
	miss — يفتقد/يفوته شئ	It was great living in Prague, but I really missed all my friends.
		By the time we got there, we'd missed the beginning of the movie.
15	earn — يكسب (مالًا عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	You don't earn much money being a nurse.
	gain — يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.
	win — يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
	beat — يهزم/يتغلب على	My brother easily beats me at chess every time we play.
16	tasty — ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	The breakfast is complete and tasty.
	tasteful — ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)	The room is filled with tasteful furniture.
17	local — ١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة)	You can find all these books in your local library.
	٢- أحد السكان المحليين	We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national — قومى (خاص ببلد)	These buildings are part of our national heritage.
	international — دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The island now has an international airport.
18	earth — الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The Earth is the third planet from the sun.
	ground — أرض فضاء	He fell to the ground, crying out in pain.
	land — اليابسة	The army fought both at sea and on land.
	soil — تربة (زراعية/رملية)	Herbs should be planted in warm soil.
	floor — طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	He grabbed a broom and began sweeping the floor.
19	cause — ١- سبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)	We do not know the cause of the building collapse till now.
	٢- يسبب	The infection can cause severe pain.
	reason — ١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر why/for)	We'd like to know the reason why she didn't accept the job.
	٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	They reasoned that other businesses would soon copy the idea.

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. Egypt is investing more in energy resources such as solar and nuclear energy.
 a) removable b) avoidable c) sustainable d) acceptable
2. Mary the new job with a party for family and friends.
 a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded
3. The training has the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
 a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared
4. In modern farming, the are regularly sprayed with pesticides مبيد آفات.
 a) products b) crops c) roots d) ingredients
5. Scientists are trying to trace يتتبعوا the source of of the COVID-19 in China.
 a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
6. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a of sizes; single, double or suites.
 a) property b) variety c) difference d) site
7. In America, it is to eat turkey and cranberry sauce on Thanksgiving.
 a) traditional b) fashionable c) modernised d) recent
8. This powerful computer can many tasks at once.
 a) design b) assign c) make d) perform
9. The number of people employed in has fallen in the last few years because many people left the countryside to live in the city.
 a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) economy
10. We aren't used to eating a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
 a) inside b) down c) out d) across
11. The recent in information technology have completely transformed the way students work.
 a) invitations b) decorations c) acceptances d) innovations
12. Firefighters are trained to quickly to emergency.
 a) react b) represent c) introduce d) inspect
13. The storm caused damage to the farmer's house and garden which were destroyed.
 a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
14. Heart surgery..... have improved considerably in the last few years.
 a) statuses b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
15. are the animals kept on a farm, for example cows or sheep.
 a) Household b) Population c) Livestock d) Poultry
16. We wished our son all the best on the of his 20th birthday.
 a) accident b) assignment c) promotion d) occasion

17 The patient must take some medicine to boost his body's of red blood cells.
a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production

18 Car designers from some countries got and held a joint exhibition.
a) out b) away c) together d) up

19 In all five-star hotels, meals can be to you in your room.
a) sold b) served c) prepared d) consumed

20 Doctors say that we should all try to reduce the of fat in our diet.
a) amount b) quality c) intent d) expectance

Helpful Vocabulary

21 We had a/an with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
a) fight b) treaty c) argument d) truce

22 With the internet it is possible to make learning wherever it is needed.
a) avoidable b) invincible c) exceptional d) available

23 The accident victim was from the wounds in her face and hands.
a) bleeding b) paining c) relieving d) breeding

24 The desert land which the government reclaimed has wheat production by 25 percent.
a) blasted b) boosted c) damaged d) consumed

25 Caustic soda الصودا الكاوية is a/an which is often used to make cleaning products.
a) acid b) metal c) chemical d) induction

26 The book is the product of a/an between two writers.
a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection

27 The factory owner offers a pay rise only for the workers who work
a) lazily b) hardly c) carelessly d) efficiently

28 Athletes should have a regular heart especially before major championships.
a) surgery b) examination c) treatment d) operation

29 I have read only some from the new novel, but I liked it much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

30 is a method of growing plants in water rather than in soil.
a) Hydroponics b) Mathematics c) Micronics d) Gymnastics

31 To fight this new virus, you must try hard to make your system stronger.
a) security b) immune c) alarm d) nerve

32 It took the wounded soldier six months to recover from the
a) quarrel b) process c) invention d) injury

33 For elderly people, TV is an important with the outside world.
a) search b) outlet c) link d) exit

34 Regular mild exercise will help to strengthen your as much as training.
a) muscles b) vessels c) results d) substances

ALAWAM Gem

35 The island's bird population began disappearing due to exposure to التعرض لـ diseases.
a) foreign b) native c) international d) vague

36 Selling the house was our only to overcome our financial problems.
a) result b) consequence c) option d) relevance

37 All the fans were impressed by their team's at the final match.
a) training b) performance c) relaxation d) avoidance

38 The young politician is a very speaker, so he was chosen for the Parliament.
a) aggressive b) convinced c) disorganised d) persuasive

39 A working woman has to deal with a lot of family and work
a) rights b) promotions
c) researches d) responsibilities

40 The best for water shortage is to greatly reduce our use of water.
a) evolution b) analysis c) solution d) exception

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 Nurses are taught how to CPR as part of their first-aid course.
a) do b) make c) design d) operate

42 One of the main reasons of climate change is cutting rainforests.
a) in b) about c) down d) for

43 All vaccines will be safe and if they are used properly.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affecting

44 The noun "contagion" is similar in meaning to the noun "....." .
a) affection b) reflection c) perfection d) infection

45 People always come to this old restaurant because the food is very there.
a) taste b) tasty c) tasteful d) tasteless

46 The mother wrapped a scarf her child's neck as it was cold.
a) around b) away c) about d) off

47 If our son's illness any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises

48 The adjective "gentle" can be the opposite to the adjective "....." .
a) nice b) ordinary c) severe d) giant

49 My aunt has a severe allergic to Penicillin and some other drugs.
a) react b) reaction c) reactive d) reactor

50 Clubs insist that children must have a medical examination if they want to up a new sport.
a) make b) change c) play d) take

51 Major changes have taken in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
a) part b) place c) apart d) down

52 Most people are more in the morning than other times of the day.
a) produce **b)** production **c)** productive **d)** product

53 The verb "squeeze" is a synonym to the verb "....." .
a) release **b)** press **c)** iron **d)** shield

54 I asked my wife to make a of the ingredients she needs for the pizza.
a) list **b)** menu **c)** brochure **d)** notice

55 I heard a/an on the loudspeaker saying that the hypermarket was closing in 10 minutes.
a) intention **b)** commercial **c)** announcement **d)** advertisement

56 Everyone should keep an emergency first-aid in their car.
a) tool **b)** instrument **c)** device **d)** kit

57 The word "temporary" is an antonym to the word
a) sustainable **b)** regular **c)** gradual **d)** timeless

58 Please, tell the children to go and play somewhere I'm trying to work.
a) another **b)** other **c)** others **d)** else

59 The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a that he was worried.
a) sign **b)** signal **c)** landmark **d)** note

60 Our small factory began to more money after three years of building it.
a) do **b)** perform **c)** make **d)** assign

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

hunger – Agriculture – member – countries – food – Nations

One of the important organisations of the United Nations is Food and(1)..... Organisation (FAO) which is the specialised organisation of the United(2)..... that leads international efforts to defeat(3)..... . Its main goal is to achieve(4)..... security for all and make sure that people have regular supply of enough high-quality food to lead active, healthy lives. With over 194(5)..... states, FAO works in over 130(6)..... worldwide. It believes that everyone can play a part in ending hunger.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

serve – tasty – menu – spicy – types – dishes

When you come to Egypt you should try different(1)..... of Egyptian food because the Egyptian dishes are very(2)..... and worth the experience. One of the famous Egyptian(3)..... is koshari, which is a mix of rice, brown lentils and macaroni topped with fried onions and a(4)..... tomato sauce, koshari is normally eaten in dedicated koshari restaurants that(5)..... the dish exclusively. Some hotels even put it in their(6)..... to provide tourists with a delicious traditional meal.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

On January 30, 2020, the WHO declared the COVID-19 outbreak a public economic / health emergency of international concern and, in March 2020, began to characterise it as a pandemic in order to emphasise the gravity of the situation / location and urge all countries to take action in detecting infection / destruction and preventing spread. Although there are cures for illnesses and developments made by the virus, the strongest and most defective / effective weapon that society has against this virus is the prevention of its spread. The main points in preventing the spread in society are hand bathing / hygiene, social distancing and quarantine. With increased testing capacity, detecting more COVID-19 positive patients in the community will also enable the reduction of secondary cases with stricter quarantine rules / directions.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

5 Choose the correct answer:

There are some rules that you should follow if you are helping a person with wounds. The most important one to consider with any open wound is control of operation / bleeding and infection. Before providing care, put on protective / infective gloves or use a barrier between you and the victim to reduce the chance of disease infection while assisting the sound / injured person. In case of bleeding, apply direct pressure with a clean cloth or absorbent dressing until bleeding stops. Wash the affected area / region with an antibacterial soap to improve / remove any foreign matter. Cover the dressing with a bandage / belt. Check for the person's feeling, warmth, and wound colour.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

ALAWWAL Gem

Language

Unit (1)

1) Necessity **2) Lack of necessity** **3) Prohibition**

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + Inf.	had to	It was necessary for ... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + Inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to/needs to		needed to		will need to	

- It is necessary for all of us to fight diseases.
- All of us must/have to/have got to/need to fight diseases.
- It was necessary for him to find a job to support his family.
- He had to find a job to support his family. ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها.
- It will be necessary for the new government to solve the problems related to health and education.
- The new government will have to solve the problems related to health and education.

have to/must الفرق بين	
Have to	ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها. As I'm very ill, I have to wait until the doctor arrives.
Must	strong advice نصيحة قوية You must wash your hands before you eat.
	a warm invitation دعوة حارة You must come and see us at the weekend.
	a strong reminder to ourselves رسالة تذكير قوية We must remember that tourism is important.
Mustn't	Prohibition المنع والحظر والتحريم You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 km/h.
	Strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

ALADWAA Gem

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (to بدون)					
don't/ doesn't need to		didn't need to			

- It isn't necessary for her to buy many dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy many dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad. لم يكن واجبا فلم افعل.
- I needn't have travelled abroad. لم يكن واجبا ولكنى فعلت.

Unit (2)

Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

	Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
			adj. + er + than	the + adjective + est
One syllable	tall	طويل	taller than	the tallest
	young	صغير السن	younger than	the youngest
	soft	ناعم	softer than	the softest
			adj. + r + than	the + adjective + st
One syllable ending in e	large	واسع	larger than	the largest
	wide	عريض	wider than	the widest
One syllable		- تضعيف الحرف الساكن ونضيف er		
			adj. + er + than	the + adjective + est
ساكن + vowel + ساكن	big	كبير الحجم	bigger than	the biggest
	hot	ساخن	hotter than	the hottest
		- حذف حرف y ونضيف ier		
			adj. + ier + than	the + adjective + iest
Two syllables ending in y	heavy	ثقيل	heavier than	the heaviest
	happy	سعيد	happier than	the happiest

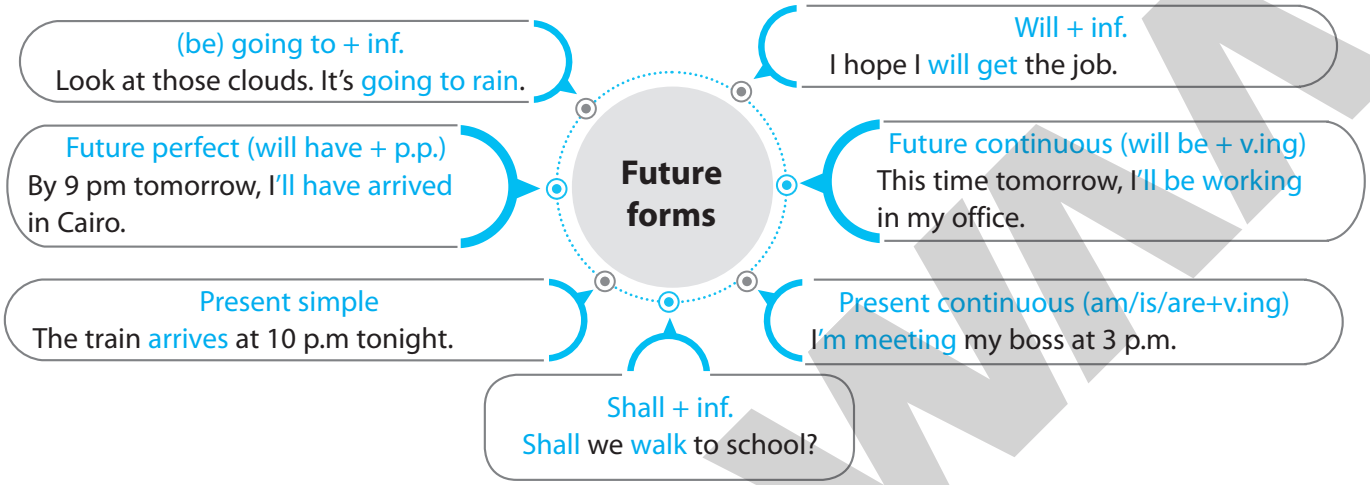
			more + adjective	the most + adj.
Two or more syllables	modern	عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
	expensive	غالى	more expensive than	the most expensive
	حالات خاصة تحفظ			
Irregular adjectives	good	جيد	better than	the best
	bad	سيئ	worse than	the worst
	little	قليل	less than	the least
	much/many	كثير	more than	the most
	far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/ furthest

as + adj.+ as /not as (so)+ adj.+ as	تساوى أوعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is as clever as Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين as ... as
Eman isn't so/as young as her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى isn't as/so ... as
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is the younger of two sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين the + er/more
Gold is much/a lot more expensive than wood.	قبل المقارنة مع الفارق الكبير much/a lot
Silver is a bit/a little cheaper than gold.	عند الفرق القليل a bit/a little
No boy in class is cleverer than Ahmed.	نستخدم no فى المقارنة.
I've never met a stronger person than Ali.	نستخدم never فى المقارنة.
Ali is the strongest person I've ever met.	نستخدم ever فى التفضيل.
Summer is less cold than winter.	less قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.	صفة مقارنة + the, صفة مقارنة +The كلما كلما

ALAWA Gem

Unit (3)

Future forms



1 Will + inf.



٦-يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية وأفعال معينة.

sure, hope, think, expect, predict, promise, perhaps, probably, etc.

- I'm sure Ali will win the race.
- I expect that she will visit us tomorrow.

2 (be) going to + inf.

(be) going to + inf.

- ١- التنبؤ بدليل
 Look! He is going to fall.
- ٢-القرارات المتخذة مسبقا
 He is going to join university.
- ٣-للنوايا والخطط
 We're going to buy a new car.
- ٤-للطموحات الشخصية
 I'm going to be a doctor.

Form
- I'm going to + inf.
- He/She/It is going to + inf.
- They/we/you are going to + inf.

Negative
- I'm not going to + inf.
- He/She/It is not going to + inf.
- They/we/you are not going to + inf.

3 Future continuous

Future continuous

- ١- حدث سوف يستمر لفترة فى المستقبل
 This time tomorrow, I'll be travelling.
- ٢-احداث ستكون فى استمرار نتيجة للروتين
 I'll be meeting Ahmed as usual.
- ٣-مع التعبيرات الزمنية الاتية:
 This time tomorrow/next
 At + time + tomorrow/next
 In two hours' time

Form
- Subj + will be + v.ing

Negative
- Subj + won't be + v.ing

4 Present simple

Present simple

- مع الجداول المحددة ليشير إلى المستقبل
 The plane arrives at 8:30 tomorrow.
- للجداول المحددة مسبقا مثل الطائرات والقطارات والبرامج والمباريات
 The train leaves at 5 p.m tomorrow.

Form
- He/ She/ It + v-s/es/y ies
- We/ You/ They + inf

Negative
- He/ She/ It + doesn't + inf.
- We/ You/ They + don't + inf.

5 Present continuous

Present continuous

- للأشياء التى تم ترتيبها مسبقا
 I'm having dinner with Ahmed next weekend.

Form
- I'm + v. ing
- He/ She/ It is + v. ing
- They/ We/ You are + v. ing

Negative
- I'm not + v. ing
- He/ She/ It isn't + v. ing
- They/ We/ You aren't + v. ing

Gem

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (1)

1 She take this medicine because she isn't ill.
a) must b) doesn't have to c) had to d) has to

2 The players check their hearts before they were allowed to play.
a) have to b) needn't c) had to d) don't have to

3 In the past, football clubs check players' hearts; they believed it wasn't necessary.
a) didn't have to b) had to c) must d) don't have to

4 You visit the White Desert when you're in Farafra. It's amazing!
a) needn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) must

5 The manager travel to London to attend an important conference last week.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) doesn't have to d) mustn't

6 I wash my father's car; my brother had already washed it.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

7 You whisper. Nobody can hear us.
a) must b) didn't have to c) have to d) don't have to

8 You drive so fast. It's very dangerous.
a) don't need b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't

9 Fahmy wear a tie at work. It's the rule of his company.
a) has to b) must c) have to d) mustn't

10 Yesterday, I stay at home with my brother as my parents were out.
a) has to b) must c) had to d) mustn't

11 Children play with matches or cleaning liquids.
a) have to b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

12 You take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
a) needn't to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) need to

13 You wash your hands before you eat.
a) must b) have c) need d) needn't

14 Yesterday, I meet my friend at the airport.
a) have to b) must c) had to d) need

15 We lock the car. It's safe here.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) shouldn't

16 You aren't permitted to stay here. You stay here.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) should

17 I'm going to the shops because I buy some tea.
a) must to b) don't need to c) need to d) has to

ALPHA Gem

18 In Egypt, most employees work 6 hours a day, 6 days a week.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) have to

19 You pass your exams or the university will not accept you.
a) needn't b) have to c) didn't have to d) don't have to

20 You forget to do your homework tonight. The teacher wants it tomorrow.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) must

Unit (2)

21 I'm not keen on football. For me, it is important sport.
a) the least b) the most c) the best d) the little

22 Mr Naser is the director that can solve your problems.
a) more intelligent b) intelligent c) most intelligent d) intelligence

23 He is of the two champions competing to win the race.
a) the best b) better than c) better d) the better

24 Some people think that the more money you have, the you become.
a) happy b) happier c) happiest d) more happy

25 The experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
a) frightening b) least frightening
c) most frightening d) more frightening

26 You should buy the green trousers. They are the in the shop.
a) more expensive b) less expensive
c) expensive d) least expensive

27 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

28 Mr. Hamdy is the teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.
a) inspiring b) most inspiring c) much inspiring d) more inspiring

29 Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams Omar was much Tamer.
a) more nervous than b) nervous than
c) more nervous as d) more nervous

30 The animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
a) most big b) biggest c) more big d) bigger

31 Video cassettes are not DVDs.
a) moderner than b) so modern so c) as modern like d) as modern as

32 This English exercise is the exercise in the book!
a) more challenging than b) more challenging
c) most challenging d) biggest challenging

33 No one in my family is my grandfather. He is the oldest person.
a) older than b) elder c) younger than d) the youngest

ALAWA Gem

34 All the other books in the library are than the book I am reading.
a) interesting b) most interesting
c) more interesting d) much interesting

35 The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) most taller d) most tallest

36 Omar can run than all the other boys in his class.
a) much quickly b) most quickly c) quickly d) more quickly

37 water flooded into the house than I expected.
a) Few b) Less c) Much d) Most

38 There are people here than promised to come.
a) fewer b) many c) less d) much

39 Tennis is a far game than football.
a) hardest b) hard c) harder d) hardly

40 The more you protest, the guilty you look!
a) many b) much c) most d) more

Unit (3)

41 Scientists say that the satellite to Earth sometime this afternoon.
a) is going to fall b) is falling
c) falls d) won't fall

42 I've got a job in Luxor, so I there for the next two years.
a) was working b) will have worked
c) work d) will be working

43 He will tell me the details after he the boss.
a) meets b) will meet c) is going to meet d) is meeting

44 The government road repairs over the next two days.
a) do b) will do c) will be doing d) have done

45 It's unbelievable to think that this time tomorrow we to Matrouh.
a) will be driving b) will drive c) are going to drive d) drive

46 What next, now that you've finished your course?
a) do you do b) did you do
c) will you have done d) are you going to do

47 **A:** Chicken or meat, madam? **B:** I meat, please.
a) am having b) will have c) am going to have d) have

48 I won't have time to meet you next weekend, I'm afraid. I the school timetable for the next year.
a) will organise b) will be organising
c) organise d) will have organised

ALAWAM Gem

49 Ramy and his brothers two of the shops in our street before long.
a) are owning
b) will be owning
c) are going to own
d) own

50 to the supermarket today? Yes. Do you want me to get you something?
a) Will you have gone
b) Will you have been going
c) Are you going
d) Will you be gone

51 Look out! A car you.
a) will hit
b) may hit
c) is hitting
d) is going to hit

52 This time next week, I for the airport.
a) have left
b) will leave
c) will be leaving
d) leave

53 I have already told you why I can't see you tomorrow. I guests.
a) can have
b) am having
c) have
d) will have

54 The museum at 10 tomorrow morning as usual.
a) opens
b) will open
c) is opening
d) opening

55 I'm buying flour and eggs because I a cake.
a) will make
b) make
c) making
d) am going to make

56 Reham can't see her friend at the weekend as she relatives.
a) has visited
b) visiting
c) is visiting
d) visits

57 The match at 7.30. Don't call me at that time.
a) starts
b) will start
c) is starting
d) is going to start

58 He a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.
a) will become
b) has become
c) is going to become
d) becomes

59 In the future, we new cells from patients to repair parts of their body.
a) use
b) may be used
c) will be used
d) 'll be using

60 He in an hour. He has arranged that with his boss.
a) is leaving
b) will leave
c) is going to leave
d) leaves

ALAWAA Gem

2 Choose the correct answer:

My brother has been living in a new city for about 3 months now. There is no public transport , so he(1)..... (has to / needn't) drive everywhere. He(2)..... (has / had) to sign up for driving lessons a week ago. In order to get a licence, he(3)..... (needn't / has to) pass a test. There are a lot of laws that must(4)..... (follow / be followed). It's the law there that everyone(5)..... (mustn't / must) wear a seat belt. Luckily, he can work from home, so he(6)..... (needn't / has to) go to work every day.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives:

My father has bought a new house lately. It's lovely. It's much(1)..... (large) in size and looks(2)..... (modern) than our last one. I finally have a room that I don't have to share with my(3)..... (young) brother who is still in primary school. The neighbours are also very kind. They are definitely the(4)..... (friendly) people I have ever met. My room overlooks a(5)..... (wide) street than the old street. It's also the(6)..... (clean) street in the area.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

The first day of the term will(1)..... (be / have been) horrible, for everybody(2)..... (must / will) be talking about their holidays and the photographs of marvellous foreign beaches, and as I haven't been anywhere I(3)..... (will / can) feel terribly out of it. Certainly, my friends will(4)..... (ask / be asked) me about my vacation. I have decided that I(5)..... (tell / am going to tell) them the truth. This year I haven't visited any place, but this time next year, I will(6)..... (be having / have) fun on one of the best beaches in the world.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

ALPHA Gem

King Lear
Act (1) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

anger	غضب
answer	رد/إجابة
attendants	الحاضرين
beauty	جمال
behave	يتصرف
cart	عربة
deceive	يخدع
deserve	يستحق
disguise	يتنكر
divide into	يقسم ... إلى
Duke	الدوق
duty	واجب
encourage	يشجع
exit	يخرج
foolish	أحمق
give away	يتخلى عن
guilty	مذنب
income	دخل
inheritance	ميراث
kingdom	مملكة
lie	يكذب
loyalty	انتماء/ولاء
riches	ثروة
rude	وقح
send away	ينفى/يبعد
servant	خادم
shout about	يتحدث بصوت عالى عن
sir	سيد
succeed	ينجح
sword	سيف
third	ثلث
title	لقب
trust	يثق فى/ثقة
truth	الحقيقة
wise	حكيم

Phrases & Expressions

give an answer	يقوم بالرد
have a plan	لديه خطة
have a taste of her own medicine	تتذوق نتيجة أفعالها
my heart is broken	قلبى محطم/حزين
say goodbye to	يودع
the cart is pulling the horse	العربة أمام الحصان

ALAWAIL Gem

Summary

Scene i

The play opens in King Lear's palace with a conversation between Kent, Gloucester, and Gloucester's son Edmund. We also learn that Gloucester has two sons. The older, Edgar, is his heir وريث , and the younger, Edmund. King Lear enters followed by his two sons-in-law — Albany and Cornwall — and his three daughters — Goneril, Regan, and Cordelia. Lear announces that he has divided his kingdom into three shares to be given to his daughters as determined by their declarations of love for him. Goneril, as the eldest, speaks first. She tells her father that her love for him is more than riches. Regan, as the middle child, speaks next. Her love, she says, is even greater than Goneril's. Finally, it is Cordelia's turn to express the depth of her love for her royal father. Cordelia replies that she loves him as a daughter should love a father, no more and no less. She reminds her father that she also will owe devotion ولاء to a husband when she marries, and therefore cannot honestly give all her love toward her father. Lear sees Cordelia's reply as rejection, saying that she will now be a stranger to him. King Lear then divides his kingdom between Goneril and Regan, giving each an equal share. Kent interferes يتدخل by asking Lear to reconsider his rash action. Lear, in anger, sends Kent away for defending Cordelia and for confronting تحدى/مواجهة the king. At Kent's departure, the King of France and Duke of Burgundy enter, both of whom are suitors خاطبين for Cordelia's hand in marriage. They are told that Cordelia will not receive a inheritance ميراث from her father. The King of France says that Cordelia is a prize, even without her share of Lear's kingdom, and announces his intent to marry Cordelia. Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters, and leaves with the King of France.

Scene ii

Edmund enters the scene — set in the Earl of Gloucester's house — talking out loud to himself. Edmund reveals يكشف his plan to undermine يقلل من his brother's position by tricking his father with a forged مزيف letter, which he presents to Gloucester in this scene. Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that he's looking out for his brother's safety when he suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection from their father's anger.

Scene iii

Set in the palace of Goneril and the Duke of Albany, this scene opens with Goneril asking her servant, Oswald, if Lear hit him. Oswald confirms the encounter. Goneril asked Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something, and if the king is unhappy with this treatment معاملة, he should be told to move to Regan's palace. Goneril then commands her servants to treat the king's company with coldness since the king's soldiers are behaving badly.

Scene iiii

The setting is a hall in Goneril's palace. Kent, earlier banished منفى by Lear, reappears in disguise. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity and his intent نية. Kent asserts his loyalty and willingness to serve the king. Kent's obvious admiration impresses Lear. When the king asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without responding to the request. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the members of Goneril's household are treating the king's entourage حاشية rudely. Goneril enters, complaining about the king's soldiers. Goneril demands that Lear reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the king declares that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer reception.

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the tourists admired the of the beaches in Hurghada.
 a) stability b) rudeness c) beauty d) surprise
2. The restaurant owners were by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted b) deceived c) honoured d) awarded
3. Parents have a to make sure that their children receive a good education.
 a) duty b) right c) plan d) research
4. I advise you to give your old clothes to a charity as they are still good to wear.
 a) into b) off c) out d) away
5. You must feel about not visiting your parents more often.
 a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
6. The new owner of the club is a rich man who had a large from his parents.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
7. A citizen's primary should be to his country.
 a) research b) right c) loyalty d) performance
8. The present duke inherited his and property from his father.
 a) rank b) address c) headline d) title
9. Working together is going to be difficult if you don't each other.
 a) agree b) trust c) trick d) deceive
10. As the actors the stage, the lights went on.
 a) decorated b) prevailed c) exited d) exempted
11. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land to? SB
 a) The King of France. b) The daughter who loves him best.
 c) The daughter who is the oldest. d) The daughter who is the wisest.
12. How much does Goneril say she loves her father? SB
 a) More than health, beauty and riches. b) More than anyone else.
 c) As much as a daughter should love her father. d) More than her husband.
13. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia? SB
 a) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom.
 b) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters.
 c) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom.
 d) Give his kingdom to the dukes.
14. What does Kent tell King Lear? SB
 a) That he has made a bad decision. b) That he has made a good decision.
 c) That he wants to marry Cordelia. d) That he deceived his daughters.

ALAWAM Gem

SB

15 Who will Cordelia leave with?

a) The Duke of Burgundy.
b) The King of France.
c) The Duke of Kent.
d) The King's soldiers.

16 Edmund intends to undermine his brother's position to

a) fight with him
b) help him fight the king
c) get his money back
d) get his father's title and inheritance

17 Goneril asked her servants to

a) respect the king and do what he asked for at once
b) obey the king all the time
c) keep the king waiting when he needs something
d) accept the king's wishes

18 When King Lear visited Goneril's palace, she treated him

a) coldly
b) warmly
c) heartily
d) nicely

19 Kent came back in disguise in order to

a) trick the king
b) help the king
c) revenge himself
d) get the title

20 King Lear decided to move to Regan's palace because

a) Cordelia left England
b) his soldiers advised him to go there
c) Regan's husband treated him very well
d) Goneril complained about his soldiers

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1 What do you think of King Lear's decision to divide his kingdom among his three daughters?

.....

.....

2 If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away for not saying much about her love for her father? Give reasons.

.....

.....

3 What do you think of the King of France's decision to marry Cordelia?

.....

.....

4 Although King Lear sent him away, Kent came back in disguise to help Lear. What does this show about him?

.....

.....

5 Do you think that King Lear will be treated better in Regan's palace? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

Test 1 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many Egyptian football fans Liverpool's winning of the Premier League because of Mohamed Salah.
 a) celebrated **b)** rejected **c)** recommended **d)** reminded
2. The Egyptian cuisine فن الطبخ has a lot of dishes which are liked by foreigners such as Mahshi and Koshari.
 a) traditional **b)** fashionable **c)** modernised **d)** recent
3. The head teacher angrily at our request to leave school early to watch the match.
 a) reacted **b)** represented **c)** introduced **d)** inspected
4. Our grandmother is a old woman, and we all value her advice.
 a) lazy **b)** distracted **c)** wise **d)** foolish
5. The police were able to arrest a terrorist before they could carry out any action.
 a) sign **b)** call **c)** tumour **d)** cell
6. Father always tells us to keep of his office.
 a) on **b)** out **c)** about **d)** up
7. You take things that don't belong to you.
 a) don't have to **b)** mustn't **c)** have to **d)** must
8. You buy a pen. I can lend you one.
 a) must **b)** need to **c)** don't need to **d)** have to
9. He visit his uncle as he was ill in hospital.
 a) has to **b)** is necessary to **c)** didn't have to **d)** had to
10. I work every day from 9 to 4. If I don't, I will be fired.
 a) don't have to **b)** must **c)** have to **d)** mustn't
11. That's by far dam I've ever seen.
 a) the large **b)** the larger **c)** the largest **d)** largest
12. My sister is probably person in my life.
 a) important **b)** the most important
 c) more important **d)** the more important
13. Out of the two of them, she was far and away singer.
 a) a better **b)** the good **c)** the best **d)** the better
14. According to the schedule, the bus at 8:00 tomorrow.
 a) will leave **b)** leaves
 c) is leaving **d)** is going to leave
15. Where do you think you when you're 50?
 a) shall work **b)** will be worked **c)** will be working **d)** work
16. In my opinion, the population of Egypt by 20% next year.
 a) is increasing **b)** has increased **c)** is going to increase **d)** will increase

© ALPWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You go to bed at night, close your eyes, and drift off to sleep. Have you ever wondered how exactly sleep works? Plus, where do dreams come from? When you fall asleep, you go through the four stages of the sleep cycle.

Stage 1. This is when you feel yourself becoming drowsy. Your muscles begin to relax and your brain activity slows down. Your eye movements are slow during Stage 1. It lasts several minutes and you can be woken up easily.

Stage 2. When your sleep becomes a bit deeper. You won't wake up as easily.

The slow eye movements continue and your brain waves slow down even more. Your body temperature goes down and your heart rate slows down.

Stage 3 is known as deep sleep. It's more difficult for you to be woken up. And although you are sleeping deeply, this is when sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs. So all those sleepwalkers out there may not actually remember doing anything strange in their sleep the next day.

Then finally, you move into REM. That stands for rapid eye movement. During the REM stage, your eyes move quickly beneath your closed eyelids. This is caused by certain brain activity. You may have vivid dreams during this stage. Your brain waves are more active than in Stages 2 and 3. They're similar to when you're awake. It's easier for someone to wake you up, but you may feel groggy or sleepy.

Once your REM phase is over, the cycle starts all over again with Stage 1.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 "You begin to feel drowsy. Your muscles relax." This happens in stage

a) one **b)** two

c) three **d)** four

18 What happens in stage two?

a) Sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs.

b) The person's body temperature goes down.

c) The person can be woken up easily.

d) The person may have vivid dreams.

19 The synonym of the word "drowsy " is

a) active **b)** vivid

c) sleepy **d)** awake

20 When you are asleep, the quick eye movement is caused by

a) the person's movement **b)** the person's thoughts

c) the light around the person **d)** certain brain activity

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What changes could you make to help yourself get enough sleep?

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) happening at a quick pace.

b) a course of events that is repeated over and over again.

.....

.....

.....

23 In your opinion, what are the benefits of getting enough sleep?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think is better: sleeping during the day or the night? Why?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into English:**

- مع استمرار انتشار فيروس كوفيد-١٩ لجأت وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى وضع خطة للمزج بين التعليم فى المدارس والتعليم عبر الإنترنت لكى يعود الطلاب إلى المدارس هذا العام.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans and it saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The importance of friendship.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

Test 2 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Schools in Egypt must have their plans to prevent COVID-19
 a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
2. Teachers should be regularly trained on modern teaching to cope with modern education styles.
 a) processes b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
3. Many young writers are used to getting in seminars of Cairo Book Fair.
 a) out b) away c) together d) up
4. Leaving my job was a decision to make as it was well-paid.
 a) foolish b) wise c) gentle d) complicated
5. The singer gave a/an performance that made all the fans excited.
 a) electronic b) electric c) election d) devastating
6. I can never the difference between these twins. They are much alike.
 a) do b) make c) design d) tell
7. When we are on holiday, we go to bed early.
 a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to
8. You smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) didn't have to
9. **A:** What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
 B: Well, it be big - that's not so important. But it have a nice garden - that's essential.
 A) mustn't/mustn't b) mustn't/must c) must/must d) needn't/must
10. The thing about being unemployed is having no money.
 a) worst b) better c) worse d) best
11. Tamer and Galal are easily students in my class.
 a) better b) good c) well d) the best
12. The slower you work, the the job will take you to finish.
 a) longest b) long c) longer d) more long
13. The computer seems to be more and in the future.
 a) more complex b) complex
 c) most complex d) the most complex
14. Get out of the building! It sounds like the generator
 a) explodes b) will explode
 c) is going to explode d) will be exploding
15. I think I home across the park. 'That's a good idea.'
 a) am walking b) am going to walk c) walk d) will walk
16. At this time tomorrow Sameh for his exam.
 a) will sit b) will be sitting c) has sat d) may sit

NAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

All of us know how important recycling is. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. But it's actually very scientific.

Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. So are cereal boxes. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. There are many things that can be recycled.

These things are usually stamped with the recycling loop. It has 3 arrows that go in a triangular circle. This shows that the cycle continues. Items are thrown away but continue their lives as something else. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant.

There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. They are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products. Old paper is torn into tiny pieces. Then special water with chemicals is poured onto it. The fibers start to stick together. In time, a brand new roll of paper is created! If there were things written or printed on the first paper, they disappear.

Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. You can do your part. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When old paper is transformed into new paper, what causes the fibers of the tiny pieces of paper to stick together?

a) A thick, sticky paste.
b) Special water with chemicals poured onto it.
c) A very strong glue.
d) A yellow powder.

18 Which one of the following isn't of the steps in the process of recycling?

a) The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
b) The materials get separated into different piles.
c) Special machines crush each pile into a square cube.
d) Companies buy the cubes of crushed materials and turn them into new products.

19 What does the word "plant" mean in "Everything goes to a recycling plant."?

a) Tree.
b) Vegetable.
c) Factory.
d) Flower.

20 Recycling is a/an process.

a) difficult
b) old
c) easy
d) scientific

ALPHA Gem

B) Answer the following questions:

21 According to the article, give four examples of household items that can be recycled.

22 What do the three arrows of the recycling loop show?

23 What are two ways that recycling keeps our planet healthy?

24 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to go out of view **b)** a box used to store things

25 Translate into English:

- يقال أن الأدب والفن هما مرآة المجتمع التى تعكس حضارته وقيمه التى تتطور على مر العصور لذا تهتم الدولة بهما وتحاول توفير الدعم اللازم لتطويرهما.

26 Translate into Arabic:

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and hinders our ambitions.

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Our duty towards our great heritage and ancient monuments.

ALAWA Gen

Test 3 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The paramedics couldn't CPR to the patient in the street, so they did that inside the ambulance.
 a) design **b)** assign **c)** make **d)** perform
2. The people who suffer illness due to COVID-19 are taken to intensive care units.
 a) severe **b)** gentle **c)** high **d)** simple
3. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of in all fields.
 a) invention **b)** consumption **c)** destruction **d)** production
4. The young man took on extra work to increase his
 a) outcome **b)** income **c)** tax **d)** cost
5. We must remain alert for any of danger as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.
 a) signs **b)** signatures **c)** landmarks **d)** notes
6. The students must finish the test within the of two hours, no more.
 a) location **b)** area **c)** space **d)** region
7. We paint the house. It hasn't been painted for many years.
 A) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** need to **d)** mustn't
8. You eat a lot of fresh fruits to keep healthy.
 a) must to **b)** must **c)** needn't **d)** didn't have to
9. There's a lift in the building, so we climb the stairs.
 a) must **b)** mustn't **c)** have to **d)** don't have to
10. This house is the other one we saw.
 a) as big as **b)** much big as **c)** as bigger as **d)** the biggest
11. Your father is than anyone I have ever seen.
 a) a friend **b)** friendlier **c)** friendly **d)** more friendlier
12. It's becoming and harder to secure a good job nowadays.
 a) hard **b)** hardest **c)** harder **d)** hardly
13. The train to Alexandria from platform 5 at 10 p.m. This is the timetable.
 a) is leaving **b)** will be leaving **c)** will leave **d)** leaves
14. If I were you, I wouldn't walk across that old bridge. It looks like it
 a) is going to collapse **b)** will be collapsing **c)** will have collapsed **d)** collapses
15. Dr Sameh isn't in his office at the moment. In that case, I him at home.
 a) phone **b)** am phoning
 c) will phone **d)** will have phoned
16. Don't call her after half an hour. She a nap.
 a) will have **b)** will be having **c)** has **d)** is having

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the UK, the diseases connected to smoking are a big problem. Doctors think that the annual medical cost for lung cancer, heart disease, and other illnesses connected to smoking is between 12 and 35 million pounds.

And smoking costs society money in other ways. Between 27 and 61 billion pounds are spent each year on sick days when people don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick.

This money counts the wages from people who die of cancer at young age and stop paying taxes. This does not count fire started by cigarettes, which kill fifteen hundred people yearly and injure another four thousand. Smoking costs every man, woman and child in the UK from one hundred and ten to two hundred and fifty pounds each year in the lost work and wages. When you add another fifty to one hundred and fifty pounds yearly in insurance cost, that comes to one hundred and sixty to four hundred and ten pounds. If everyone stopped smoking, a family of four could have up to one thousand six hundred and forty pounds a year more.

In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds. The good health of the people is the true value for us all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 If everyone stopped smoking, all the United Kingdom

a) would have more money **b)** would live longer

c) would have less money **d)** would have no more problems

18 Every year companies lose because of the disease.

a) money **b)** work

c) wages **d)** time

19 The true value for the UK of not smoking is

a) more working **b)** more taxes

c) good health **d)** more money

20 This text is about

a) taxes which are not paid by smokers

b) diseases that smokers get

c) how much smoking costs the UK

d) how much the UK gets if everyone stopped smoking

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How could families earn more money if they are non-smokers?

.....

.....

.....

22 Smoking cigarettes causes many problems other than the person's health. Show how.

.....

.....

.....

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) hurt **b)** importance

.....

.....

.....

24 In your opinion, what other problems does smoking cause?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into English:**

- يحذر كثير من الخبراء من الاستخدام المفرط للتليفون المحمول لأن ذلك قد يؤدى إلى مشكلات صحية ونفسية واجتماعية خطيرة وخاصة لدى الأطفال.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Besides being an important source of national income, tourism strengthens ties among the nations of the world. It also helps to spread peace, love and understanding.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words to your friend about:**

The house you dream to live in.

Your name is Rania and your e-mail address is: rania10@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hana and her e-mail address is: hana200@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

Revision (2) (Units 4-6)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار
banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)
beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل
follower (n)	متابع
formal (adj)	رسمى
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/لا يستحسن
innovator (n)	مبدع
linguist (n)	عالم لغوى
mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
misunderstand (v)	يسئ الفهم
necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
pile (n)	كومة
post (n) (v) (ed)	نشر/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث
sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة
subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
targeted advertising (n)	الإعلانات المستهدفة
tone (n)	نبرة صوت
update (v) (d)	يُحَدِث
upgrade (v) (d)	يرقى/ترقية
upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
up-to-date (adj)	حديث
views (n)	مشاهدات

Helpful Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
access (n)	مدخل/سبيل
acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات
actually (adv)	بالفعل
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
addicted (adj)	مدمن
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف
advantage (n)	ميزة

ALAWAA Gem

advertiser (n)	مُعلِن
aim (n)	هدف
apparently (adv)	بوضوح
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
apply (v) (~~y~~ied)	يتقدم بطلب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
author (n)	مؤلف
basic (adj)	أساسى
behaviour (n)	سلوك
blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
call (v) (ed)	يتصل
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لمقال أو صورة
care (v) (d)	يهتم
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
cite (v) (d)	يستدعى
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
confused (adj)	مرتبك
connect (v) (ed)	يصل
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
copy (n) (v) (~~y~~ied)	نسخة/ينسخ
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد

deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
debate (n)	مناظرة
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
disappointed (adj)	محبط
donation (n)	تبرع
employee (n)	موظف
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
everyday (adj)	يومى
excuse (n)	عذر
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب/يمر بتجربة
expression (n)	تعبير
extra (adj)	إضافى
face-to-face	وجها لوجه
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fake (adj)	مزيف
feelings (n)	مشاعر
findings (n)	اكتشافات
forum (n)	منتدى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
friendship (n)	صداقة
generous (adj)	كريم
gift (n)	هدية
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
guide (v) (d) (n)	يرشد/مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسى
health (n)	صحة
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية

ALAWAA Gem

ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
image (n)	صورة
immediate (adj)	فورى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
including	مشتملا على/بما فيه
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهاز/يثبت برنامج
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
interest (n)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمام
junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
knowledge (n)	معرفة
large (adj)	كبير
leader (n)	قائد
logical (adj)	منطقى
lovely (adj)	جميل
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
moral (n)	مغزى/درس اخلاق/خُلق
necklace (n)	قلادة
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
obvious (adj)	واضح
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
personal (adj)	شخصى
platform (n)	منصة/رصيف القطار
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
positive (adj)	إيجابى
powerful (adj)	قوي/ذو نفوذ
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
pretty (adj)	جميل
privacy (n)	خصوصية
procedure (n)	إجراء
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتب/مجلات)
purpose (n)	غرض
race (n)	سباق
rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
record (v) (ed) (n)	يسجل/سجل
register (v) (ed)	يسجل
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
relationship (n)	علاقة
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل
reply (v) (~~y~~ied)	يرد
represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن
request (n)	طلب
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
resource (n)	منبع/مورد

ALAWWAL Gem

response (n)	رد/استجابة
reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
section (n)	قسم
series (n)	سلسلة
site (n)	موقع
skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شئ محدد
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (n) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
suitable (adj)	مناسب
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
symbol (n)	رمز
task (n)	مهمة
teen (n)	مراهق
teenager (n)	مراهق
title (n)	عنوان
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
upset (v) (ed) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
victim (n)	ضحية
voice (n)	صوت آدمى
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمني/أمنية

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ
after all	على أية حال
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ
as usual	كالمعتاد
at that time	فى ذلك الوقت
at the beginning	فى البداية
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر
change his mind	يغير رأيه
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة
do a history essay	يعد مقال تاريخى
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات
do research	يقوم ببحث علمى
do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن

ALWAN Gem

feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع
for ages	لعصور(لفترة طويلة)
get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
get lost	يضل الطريق
get upset	يصبح منزعجا
get worse	يسوء
give advice	يعطى نصيحة
give opinion	يعطى رأيا
go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
have a cold	يصاب بالبرد
have a problem	لديه مشكلة
have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
have an effect on	له تأثير على
have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
have much fun	يتمتع بمرح كبير
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
in general	بشكل عام
in person	شخصيا
in short	باختصار
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارا جديدة

keep warm	يحافظ على الدفء
keep safe	يحافظ على آمنا
keep entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
keep attention on	يبقى اهتماما بـ
keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع
make different sounds	يصدر أصواتا مختلفة
make friends	يصادق/يكون صداقات
make rules	يضع القواعد
miss the train	يفوته القطار
on your own	بمفردك
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار
pay attention to	يهتم بـ
post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
take a selfie	يأخذ صورة شخصية (أمامية)
take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
take notes	يدون ملاحظات
that's why	لهذا السبب

© ALAWAM Gem

Prepositions

adapt to	يتأقلم مع
add to/into	يضيف إلى
advice about	نصيحة بشأن
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة
argue with	يجادل مع
ask for	يطلب
bad for	سيء لـ
breath out	زفير
bring back	يعيد ذكريات
careful about	حريص بشأن
chat with	يدردش مع
deal with	يتعامل مع
disagree with	لا يتفق مع
divided into	مقسم إلى
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
feel about	يشعر بشأن
find out	يكتشف
full of	ملىء بـ
get into	يبدأ (الاستمتاع/الاهتمام بـ)
get on with	ينسجم مع
go back	يرجع
go past	يمر بـ
hang out with	يقضى وقتا مع
information about	معلومات عن
interested in	مهتم بـ
loads of	كثير من
pay for	يدفع مقابل
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
run off	يجرى بعيدا
set of	مجموعة من
share with	يشارك مع
smile at	يبتسم بوجه
suitable for	مناسب لـ
take away	يأخذ بعيدا عن
talk about	يتحدث عن
talk to	يتحدث إلى
thank for	يشكر على
work for	يعمل لصالح
worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adapted	متأقلم
addict	يدمن	addict addiction	مدمن إدمان	addictive addicted	يؤدى إلى الإدمان مدمن
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	مُعلِن إعلان	----------	
aim	يهدف	aim	هدف	aimless	بلا هدف
appear	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر

Al-Wa7a Gem

apply	يطبق	application (app)	تطبيق	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه		
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	assisting	مساعد		
browse	يتصفح	browse browser	تصفح متصفح	----------			
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى		
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى		
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative compared	نسبى مقارن		
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل		
consult	يستشير	consultation	إستشارة	consultative	إستشارى		
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر		
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	critical criticised	نقدى منتقد		
donate	يتبرع	donor donation	متبرع تبرع	----------			
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب العمل	employed employable	موظف صالح للعمل		
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلى		
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر		
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل		
guess	يخمن/يظن	guessing	تخمين/ظن	----------			
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل		
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)		
improve	يحسن	improvement improving	تحسين/تحسن تحسين	improved	محسن		
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ		
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى		
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر		
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز/يمكن تمييزه		

ALADWA Gem

record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	----------	
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	----------	
----------		similarity	تشابه	similar	متشابه
subscribe	يشترك فى	subscription	اشتراك	----------	
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust	reject يرفض/ينبذ
adult	بالغ	grown-up	adolescent طفل
apparently	بوضوح	obviously	unlikely غير محتمل
appear	يظهر	come out	disappear يختفى
assistant	مساعد	helper	opponent خصم
basic	أساسى	main	minor فرعى/غير أساسى
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request	give يعطى
care	يهتم	pay attention	ignore يتجاهل
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard يستبعد
criticise	ينتقد	condemn	approve يستحسن
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse يرفض
debate	مناظرة	argument	agreement اتفاق
disappointed	محبط	depressed	cheerful مرح
donation	تبرع	charity	blockage غلق/منع
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse	annoy يضايق
fake	مزيف	forged	genuine أصلى/حقيقى

Al Awa Gen

fantastic	رائع	wonderful		boring	ممل
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss		employ	يوظف
frown	يعبس بوجهه/يقطب حواجبه	disapprove		approve	يستحسن
generous	كريم	hospitable		mean	بخيل
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose		question	يتساءل
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus		neglect	يهمل
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere		deceitful	مخادع
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate		delayed	مؤجل
interest	اهتمام	concern		indifference	لا مبالاة
memory	ذكرى	remembrance		forgetfulness	نسيان
misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misjudge		understand	يفهم
modern	حديث	contemporary		old/ancient	قديم
obvious	واضح	apparent		ambiguous	غامض
organise	ينظم	arrange		ruin	يدمر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy		publicity	دعاية/شهرة
procedure	إجراء	method		inaction	عدم إجراء
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint		discouraging hindrance	مثبط إعاقة
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient		improper	غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite		ambiguous	غامض
register	يسجل	enroll		erase	يمحو/يزيل
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent		praise	يمدح
relationship	علاقة	connection		separation	انفصال
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy		dishonest	غير أمين
represent	يمثل	serve		differ	يختلف
request	طلب	demand		reply	يرد
require	يتطلب	involve		offer	يعرض
response	رد/استجابة	reaction		request	طلب
similar	مشابه	alike		different	مختلف
subscribe	يشترك فى	contribute		refuse	يرفض
support	دعم	assistance		discouragement	عدم تشجيع
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis		negligence	إهمال
task	مهمة	duty		irresponsibility	انعدام المسئولية
treat	يعامل	deal with		abandon	يترك
upgrade	يرقى	promote		reduce	يقلل/يخفض
warn	يحذر	alert		mislead	يخدع
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust		maintain	يحافظ على

Notes on Vocabulary

1	everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	Stress has become one of the common qualities of everyday life.
	every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)	When I was young, I used to play football every day.
2	communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم	Many people all over the world use English to communicate with others.
	contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	Anyone with tickets will be contacted by phone. Have you kept in contact with any of your friends from school?
	connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	A ferry connects the island with the mainland.
3	meeting (اجتماع) لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد	The club's monthly meeting will be held next Monday evening.
	conference (مؤتمر) لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة	The 1991 Middle East peace conference was in Madrid.
	interview (مقابلة شخصية) لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة	The magazine has an exclusive interview with the couple.
	appointment (موعد) مع صديق/طبيب	Why don't you make an appointment with one of our doctors?
4	يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة 1. make + مفعول + (to المصدر بدون) 2. make + مفعول + adjective 3. make + it + adjective + (to + المصدر)	My parents always made us do our homework before going to bed. The writer's first novel made him famous. Modern means of communication make it easy to share ideas with all people.
5	debate مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون	The university is hosting a debate on gun control between the main candidates.
	discussion مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)	Discussions about the peace plan took place in Washington last week.
6	society المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)	We need to do more to help the poorer members of our society.
	community المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)	Small rural communities rely on agriculture.

ADWA Gem

7	title	١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية) ٢- لقب ٣- مسمى وظيفى
	address	١- عنوان (مكان) ٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى ٣- خطاب/يخاطب
8	load	يحمل (بضائع/برامج)
	unload	يفرغ حمولة
	overload	يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)
	download	يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت
	upload	يرفع إلى الإنترنت
9	effective	(مؤثر/فعّال) له تأثير
	impressive	مؤثر (يترك انطباعًا جيدًا)
	affecting	مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)
10	experience	١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)
	experiment	تجربة (علمية/معملية)
11	publish	(ينشر)ومن الممكن أن تبنى للمجهول
	spread	١- ينتشر/يمتد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)
12	each نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد فى مرة	
	every نستخدم (every)عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شئ) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل)	
13	platform رصيف القطار/منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	
	pavement	رصيف الشارع

- What's the title of her new book?
- The title "Mr." is used with a grown-up male.
- He has an impressive job title in the company.
- Write your name, address, and phone number in the spaces provided.
- Do you have the address of our website?
- She was asked to give a formal address at the ceremony.
- The port workers are loading the truck now.
- It was my job to unload the boxes from the van.
- The truck was overloaded with wood.
- Wait until the program has finished downloading.
- It might take 10 minutes to upload these files to the Internet.
- You need more effective communication within the organisation.
- The list of Mohamed Salah's achievements is pretty impressive.
- King Lear is really an affecting drama with the death of the hero.
- You don't need any experience to work here.
- I had a bad experience in the last place I worked in.
- Researchers now need to conduct further experiments.
- The newspaper is published daily.
- Cholera spread quickly through the refugee camp.
- Some websites help spread rumours about people.
- Grill the fish for five minutes on each side.
- Each of these people has some useful talent or experience.
- I can remember every detail of our conversation.
- The train to Paris will depart from platform 3.
- The two candidates shared a platform for the question and answer session.
- Facebook is the most famous social platform all over the world.
- The man suddenly stepped off the pavement into the road.

ALAWA Gem

14	represent	يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	Mr Michael was chosen to represent the company at the conference.
	act	١- يتصرف	He's been acting strangely ever since his mom died.
		٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى فيلم/مسرحية/مسلسل/اعلان	She is acting the role of Lady Macbeth six evenings a week.
15	treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	The clinic has treated several thousand patients free of charge.
	cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	The doctor managed to cure her of her illness.
	heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	This will help to heal your cuts and scratches.
16	work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	He joined a course to learn how to work with disabled children.
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My father works for a small factory which makes children's clothes.
			We all should work for making our country a better place to live in.
	work in	يعمل فى	My friend hopes to work in the field of computer software.
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The researchers are working on a new machine to save energy.
	work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My cousin has been working as a police officer for fifteen years.
17	let	يترك/يسمح المصدر بدون (to)	My teacher lets our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	My teacher makes our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	cause	يسبب المصدر (to)	The corona crisis caused a lot of factories to close down.
	allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	We refused to allow our children to stay up until midnight.
18	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى (شئ معنوى غير ملموس)	He suffered memory loss for weeks after the accident.
			Her poems are often based on childhood memories.
	souvenir	تذكار (شئ مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought the ring as a souvenir of Greece.
	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.
19	title	عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب/لقب لوظيفة	The title of the first chapter is "Getting Started."
	subtitle	١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب	The opera's subtitle is 'The School for Lovers'.
		٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة	The film is in Chinese with English subtitles.
	caption	تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة	The caption on the picture says "This year's contest winners."

ALPHA Gen

Prefix / Suffix

Prefix البادئة

- البادئة هى مجموعة من الحروف تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديد ومنها (mis- re – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
mis	تعطى معنى يسئ	misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misuse	يسئ الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread	يعيد قراءة	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo	يلغى العمل	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه

Suffix اللاحقة

هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة ومنها (able- er - less) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable	يمكن فهمه	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer	مهتم/مراعى	writer	كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless	غير حريص	useless	بلا فائدة

ALAWAA Gem

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 are used in text messages to save space and time.
a) Sentences b) Abbreviations c) Essays d) Forms

2 A advert is an advertisement that appears across the top of a page on the internet.
a) banner b) radio c) cookie d) hidden

3 You should not attempt these heavy exercises without first your doctor.
a) preventing b) applying c) advising d) consulting

4 Most websites use to arrange the content of the website in a way that matches your preferred interests.
a) antiviruses b) versions c) cookies d) updates

5 The new program makes videos and songs from the internet faster.
a) downloading b) loading c) uploading d) overloading

6 Sometimes I'm lazy and just send a heart in a message to show how I feel about something.
a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal

7 The factory owner had to several workers due to the economic crisis.
a) hire b) deploy c) fire d) apply

8 Father with annoyance when he read my younger brother's bad school reports.
a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned

9 Omar Khairat is known as a great in the field of modern Egyptian music.
a) user b) innovator c) consumer d) inviter

10 Don't me—I'm not criticizing your decision.
a) mismanage b) misuse c) misunderstand d) misbehave

11 I found the missing certificate in a of documents on my desk.
a) pile b) hole c) hill d) pool

12 More details about the new invention will be on the website tomorrow.
a) passed b) delivered c) spread d) posted

13 You must look for scientific information only from sources.
a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex

14 The clerk wearily بضجر as he looked at all the documents he had to do.
a) laughed b) sighed c) perplexed d) marked

15 To watch the full movie, you should to the official website.
a) subscribe b) ascribe c) describe d) unsubscribe

16 The criminal's sounded sincere but I knew he was lying.
a) sign b) tone c) mark d) stone

17 The computer company has just recently their server software.
a) doubled b) duplicated c) dated d) updated

18 Windows users can it to the new version if their own version is original.
a) upload b) enroll c) upgrade d) rule

ALAWAM Gem

19 The famous actor's posts and videos receive millions of from his fans.
a) sponsors b) views c) prizes d) awards

20 The homeless boy came to a free meal from the cafe owner.
a) beg b) order c) reply d) deliver

Helpful Vocabulary

21 The lazy student that he had made a mistake.
a) adapted b) advised c) admitted d) devised

22 All governments should provide people with their needs like food, shelter and security.
a) luxurious b) free c) basic d) costly

23 The organisation will be hosting a two-day on childcare.
a) procedure b) search c) interview d) forum

24 The report the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) lined b) highlighted c) dimmed d) signalled

25 You should be careful about the programs you on your mobile.
a) inhale b) export c) install d) report

26 You have to register to be able to post a/an in this website.
a) comment b) mark c) letter d) abbreviation

27 Mother stood looking at me with an angry when she saw the broken vase.
a) impression b) depression c) progression d) expression

28 The wedding of the famous actor and actress made news.
a) address b) headline c) subtitle d) tale

29 All the information you need for the report is now available from many websites.
a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline

30 We should all be about the future of our country.
a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective

31 The of joining the club will take two weeks at least.
a) timetable b) procedure c) program d) timing

32 The bird is easily because of its bright red feathers.
a) available b) acceptable c) recognisable d) affectionate

33 The new Facebook policy is designed to protect the of your personal information.
a) publicity b) property c) prosperity d) privacy

34 The use of computer technology has into all fields of work.
a) published b) printed c) spread d) copied

35 Mandela became a of searching for freedom and honesty.
a) flag b) symbol c) view d) sight

36 You can get only a free trial from the antivirus website.
a) version b) session c) perfection d) fiction

37 The charity thanked the businessman for the generous to help the poor.
a) request b) expense c) donation d) cost

38 My friend says he's unable to give up smoking; he's completely
a) affected b) addicted c) reflected d) infected

GLADWIN Gem

39 The password of the twitter account may be up to 12 long.
a) characters b) words c) expressions d) personalities

40 Everyone difficult problems at some time in their lives.
a) exhales b) experiments c) expires d) experiences

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 My friend believes that nothing will make him his mind about his work.
a) change b) make c) intense d) avoid

42 My younger brothers seem to argue each other all the time.
a) at b) with c) about d) over

43 My parents have been the most people in my life.
a) influence b) influencing c) influential d) influenced

44 The verb "maintain" can be the opposite to the verb
a) accept b) preserve c) keep d) waste

45 My father has lots of happy of his stay in Saudi Arabia which he will never forget.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) anniversaries d) occasions

46 Ahmed had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to..... his research.
a) make b) devise c) do d) discover

47 The minister will make a/an to the Parliament to explain the new plan.
a) title b) reform c) report d) headline

48 Samy spent most of the day out with his school friends.
a) improving b) removing c) hurting d) hanging

49 We decided not to tell mum about losing the mobile as she'll upset.
a) fall b) get c) make d) give

50 I was able to in touch with some of my friends after university.
a) lose b) miss c) guard d) keep

51 The museum has a big of ancient Egyptian statues.
a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

52 The young man had out with his parents before moving out.
a) got b) woken c) fallen d) flown

53 The young doctor is attending a three-day on new treatments of the virus.
a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment

54 The adjective "genuine" is an antonym to the adjective
a) original b) fake c) modern d) native

55 The new secretary seems to get with everybody in the company.
a) at b) off c) below d) on

56 The group of the manager will include representatives from all areas of the company.
a) consult b) consultant c) consultative d) consuming

57 The verb "condemn" is similar in meaning to the verb
a) criticise b) reward c) praise d) approve

58 The word "concern" is a synonym to the word
a) negligence b) apology c) interest d) ignorance

ALAWAM Gem

59 Antibiotics are still the most treatment for some diseases.

a) effective **b)** affecting **c)** impressive **d)** sorrowful

60 The athlete was given the VIP after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.

a) treat **b)** treatment **c)** treated **d)** treatable

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

linguists – rise – save – media – emojis - abbreviations

With the popularity and(1)..... in use of online text-based communications came a new texting language, tailored to the new communication(2)..... . Today, text and chat(3)..... are used in many online communications including Twitter, instant messaging, email, and in online games. In time, ...(4)..... which look like pictures were also introduced to messages and chats. Some(5)..... think that this can affect language badly. However, young people think that this is part of the development in all fields and this can(6)..... time and efforts.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

passwords – download – website – post – privacy – online

There are some simple rules which you must follow if you want to stay safe online. Don't(1)..... any personal information online – like your address, email address or mobile number. Think carefully before posting pictures or videos of yourself. Once you've put a picture of yourself(2)..... most people can see it and may be able to(3)..... it, it's not just yours anymore. Keep your(4)..... settings as high as possible. Never give your.....(5)..... to anyone. Don't meet up with people you've met online. Speak to your parents or teachers about people suggesting you do. If you see something online that makes you feel uncomfortable, unsafe or worried: leave the(6)....., turn off your computer if you want to and tell a trusted adult immediately.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Choose the correct answer:

The internet has made meeting new people who share your interests / conflicts so much easier! However, making friends online is still a topic for much agreement / debate. Like most other things, online friendships have their pros and savings / cons. You can be friends with people from different countries. The internet has no boundaries, it allows you to meet people from all over the world. You won't meet most of them in fictional / real life. Maybe some of your online friends live close / remote enough and you will arrange meetings with them, but you surely won't be able to meet all of your online friends. You will never be able to stay / hang out together, laugh at stupid jokes or go to the cinema with them.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

Language

Unit (4)

Could/couldn't have + past participle
Should/shouldn't have + past participle

1 Could + inf.

Could

- Affirmative: كل الضمائر + could + inf.
- Negative: كل الضمائر + couldn't + inf.
- ١- طلب مؤدب فى المضارع
 Could you help me carry this bag?
- ٢- للاقتراح فى المضارع
 You could study science at college.
- ٣- للتوصيات
 You could read Hamlet. It's fantastic.
- ٤-للمقدرة فى الماضى
 I could swim when I was 10.
- ٥-تستخدم couldn't لعدم المقدرة فى الماضى
 I couldn't answer all the questions.

2 Could have + P.P.

Could have + P.P.

- Affirmative: could have + P.P.
- Negative: couldn't have + P.P.
- ١- احتمال حدوث شىء فى الماضى
 Ali could have got the licence.
- ٢- شىء كان فى الاستطاعة ولكن لم يحدث
 I could have booked 2 tickets, but I booked only one.
- ٣- تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. عن استحالة حدوث شىء فى الماضى.
 My father couldn't have paid the pill. He didn't have the money.

3 Should/shouldn't have + P.P. for regrets للندم

Rule	Meaning
should have + P.P. ought to have + P.P.	to talk about regret in the past. للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء ولم نفعله)
e.g. He should have looked for another job. He is now penniless.	
shouldn't have + P.P. oughtn't to have + P.P.	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea. شىء حدث فى الماضى ولم يكن واجبًا فعله
e.g. I shouldn't have wasted much time. I'm sorry for this now.	

Gem

Reported speech (الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر
Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice
(الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة)

١- لتحويل الأوامر والطلبات والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر، نستخدم مجموعة من الأفعال التى يتبعها مفعول غير مباشر ثم فعل فى المصدر مع to
verb + object + to/not to + inf.

advise	يَنْصَح	help	يُسَاعِد	teach	يُعَلِّم
ask	يَسْأَل	instruct	يُوَجِّه/يُعَلِّم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يُشَجِّع	invite	يَدْعُو	want	يُرِيد
expect	يَتَوَقَّع	order	يَأْمُر	warn	يُحَذِّر

- "Bring your books tomorrow."
 - The teacher *told / asked /ordered* us *to bring* our books the next day.
- "If I were you, I'd do my homework daily."
 - My mother *advised* me *to do* my homework daily.
- "Don't come late again."
 - My teacher *advised* me *not to* come late again.
- "Join the local club to do sports."
 - Ali *encouraged* his friend *to join* the local club to do sports.

٢- لا نجد علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.

٣- إذا كان فعل القول ماضٍ فلا يوجد إلا المصدر الذى بعد to والحالات الخاصة.

٤- يتم تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوعين الخبرى والاستفهامى.

Unit (5)

1 seem

seem

١- seem to + inf. بمعنى يبدو وتفيد الشك
Ali seems to be nervous.

٢- seem + adj.
You seem happy today.

٣- It seems that + sentence
It seems that he is getting better.

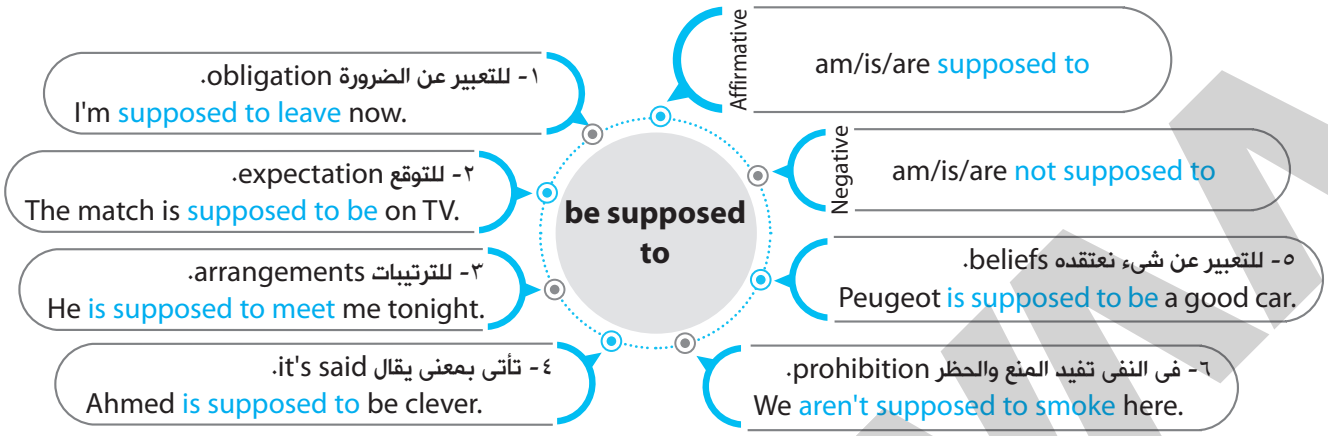
Affirmative
I/they/we/you seem
He/she/it seems

Negative
I/they/we/you don't seem
He/she/it doesn't seem

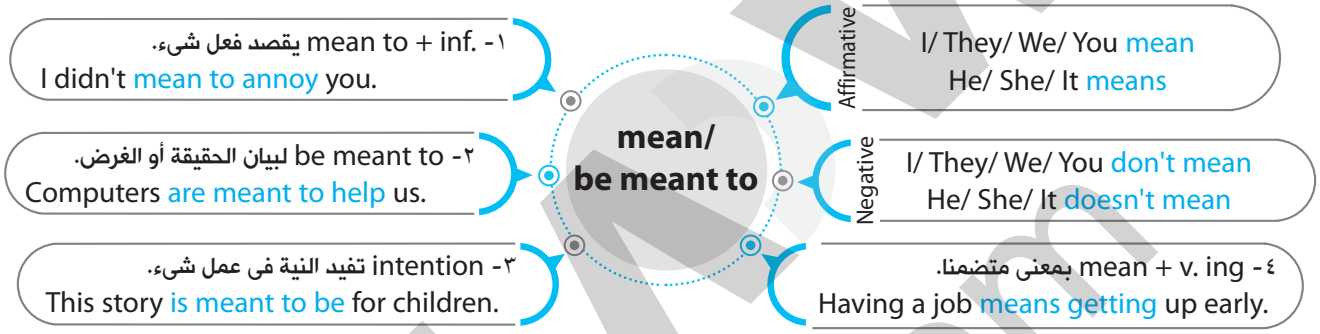
٤- seem like + noun
It seems like a good idea to live here.

ALADWAA Gem

2 be supposed to



3 mean/be meant to



Unit (6)

The conditionals

1 The zero conditional



تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).

If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.

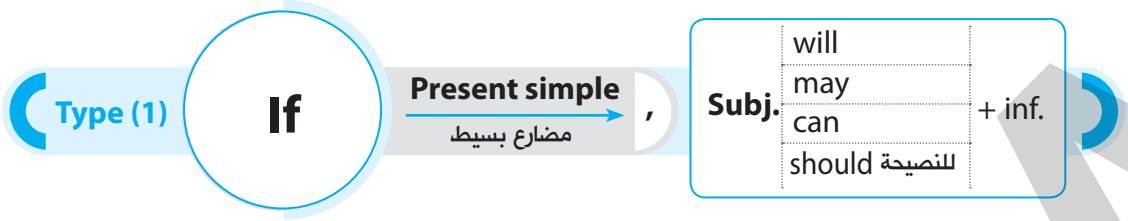
If/When we heat air, it rises.

وتستخدم الحالة الصفرية أيضا مع الأشياء التى أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.

If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

2 The first conditional



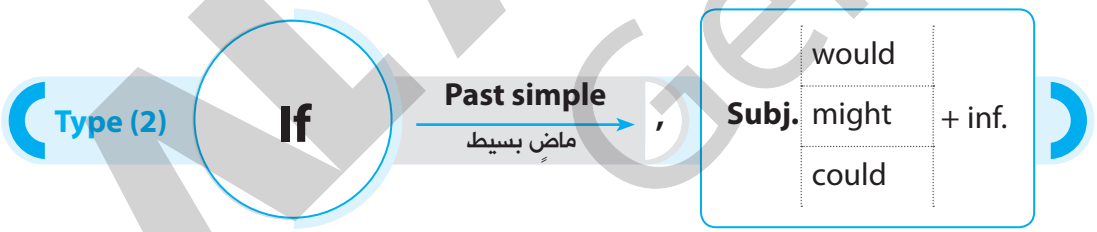
نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.
If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

استخدامات خاصة فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى

	جملة جواب الشرط	
If الحالة الأولى	should/'d better	If you want to succeed, you should study hard.
	must/have to	If you are robbed, you have to tell the police.
	may	If I know more than 2 languages, I may take the job.
	can/will be able to	If there is an airport here, we'll be able to travel easily.
	السؤال بـ *will* أو *may*	If you finish early, will you help me?
	فعل أمر	If you are not ill, go to school.

3 The second conditional



تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل وفى إعطاء النصيحة.

If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)
If I were you, I'd help him. (Giving advice)

4 The third conditional



نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If they had known I was ill, they would have visited me. (لم يعلموا بمرضى ولم يزورونى)

wish / If only

Wish & If only	+ past simple ⟶ refers to the present
	+ past perfect ⟶ refers to the past
	+ would / could ⟶ refers to the future

١- نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلف.

- I wish he were/was with us now.
- I wish I lived near my school.

بعد wish نستخدم were / was مع I / he / she / it و were فقط مع they/ we/ you

٢- نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة لفعل شىء.

- I wish he could know Spanish.
- I wish I could make my own clothes.

٣- نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم عن شىء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

- I wish he hadn't insulted his friend.

٤- نستخدم wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة فى تغيير مستقبلى غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة فى التعبير عن عدم الرضا أو الحزن .

- I wish they would build a new station near my home.

٥- نستخدم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا I/We.

- If only he would help me.
- I wish I could play Squash.

٦- عند استخدام wish وبعدها would لا بد أن يكون الفاعلين مختلفين مثل:

- He wishes he could play tennis.
- ~~He wishes he would play tennis~~.

٧- تعبر could بعد wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة

- I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to …)
- I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ….)

٨- نستخدم (could have + P.P.) بدلًا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

٩- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى to + inf.

- My brother wishes to have a better job.

ALADWA Gem

Alternatives to using if — بدائل if

Alternative		Example
provided that on condition that as long as	جملة (حالة 1 و 2)	He can go and play with his friends, provided / on condition (that) / as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose /Supposing / Imagine (that)	جملة	Suppose / Supposing / imagine (that) you met the president, what would you ask him to do?
Unless	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) + جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)	
	I can't buy the car unless I have enough money.	
Without	N/v.ing	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	But for doctors, we might die.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
Should حالة أولى أو ثانية	Subj. + inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + n/adj.	Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + to + inf.	Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had حالة ثالثة	Subj. + P.P.	Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
If it weren't for حالة 2	N/v.ing	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for حالة 3	N/v.ing	If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.

ALAWA Gem

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (4)

1. We had a lovely room in the hotel. We a fantastic view.
 a) couldn't have seen b) should have seen
 c) could see d) could have seen
2. Father didn't find any tickets, he have booked earlier.
 a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) must
3. I bread but I didn't know we needed it.
 a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
 c) could have bought d) might have bought
4. My father advised me a ticket in advance if I want to travel in August.
 a) to buying b) buying c) to be bought d) to buy
5. When I was a student, I study all night before an exam.
 a) could b) should c) can d) shouldn't
6. You have heard me right. I definitely said 74 not 47.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) could d) couldn't
7. You really have taken so much trouble over me.
 a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) can't
8. Father ordered his daughters the door for anyone while he is out.
 a) to open b) not to open c) opening d) to not open
9. Samir hasn't arrived yet. He have lost the way.
 a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) should d) could
10. As he was innocent, he wanted people what he had done.
 a) knowing b) not to know c) to know d) to be known
11. Ahmed's parents warned him university without getting a degree.
 a) not to leave b) to leave c) leaving d) not leaving
12. I don't know who rang, but it have been Kamal.
 a) must b) could c) can't d) shouldn't
13. When the new road was built, I to work in half an hour.
 a) should drive b) could have driven
 c) could drive d) should have driven
14. Khaled is expecting his friends very soon.
 a) arrive b) to arriving c) arriving d) to arrive
15. He have bought the same car. He was wrong to do it.
 a) shouldn't b) would c) should d) could
16. We have left the dog on its own. So we didn't.
 a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

ALAWAM Gem

17 Ali's father warned him too much money.
a) to spend b) not to spend c) to not spend d) to spending

18 After only six months, Suzan the violin quite well.
a) could have played b) couldn't play
c) could play d) couldn't have played

19 It's a pity you didn't ask because I you.
a) could have helped b) can't help
c) must help d) shouldn't have helped

20 The lifeguard instructed people near the rocks.
a) to not swim b) to swimming c) to swim d) not to swim

Unit (5)

21 I advise you to do whatever best to you.
a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) is supposed

22 You to buy a ticket. You will be fined if you take the train without one.
a) seem b) are meant c) means d) are supposed

23 Come on, Hala , you to be helping me.
a) are meant b) seem c) are seemed d) supposed

24 Although the exam easy, some students see it very difficult.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) is seemed

25 You to be here an hour ago!
a) meant b) seem c) are supposed d) were supposed

26 I thought we to be met at the airport.
a) supposed b) seem c) were supposed d) meant

27 These new rules to protect people not to frighten them.
a) are meant b) means c) supposed d) seem

28 He can't think properly. It clear that he has had some problems.
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) supposes d) seems

29 The diagram to show the different stages of the process.
a) meant b) is meant c) is seemed d) supposed

30 The candidate is liked by only few people. It likely that he will lose the election.
a) seemed b) is seemed c) doesn't seem d) seems

31 How to know you were waiting for me?
a) I was supposed b) do I seem c) was I supposed d) do I mean

32 The play to be really good.
a) is meant b) meant c) is seemed d) supposed

33 Strange as it may, exactly the same symptoms happened to me.
a) suppose b) mean c) seem d) be seemed

34 I haven't seen it myself, but it to be a great movie.
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) means d) supposed

35 Dieting being careful about which foods you buy.
a) seems b) is supposed c) is meant d) means

36 She to be a smart woman. She can find a solution to any problem.
a) is seemed b) seems c) supposed d) was meant

37 She to have had hundreds of lovers.
a) is supposed b) is seemed c) supposed d) seem

38 The high cost of housing that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) supposes c) is supposed d) means

39 Don't make decisions now. You to be nervous.
a) seem b) mean c) are meant d) supposed

40 You are not supposed to walk on the grass. This means that it is
a) allowed b) no allowed c) forbidden d) advisable

Unit (6)

41 If the trip to Egypt longer, I would have visited my friends in Assuit.
a) is b) was c) were d) had been

42 It's cold today. I wish it warmer.
a) is b) has been c) were d) had been

43 The star difficult to see unless the sky is very clear.
a) is b) would be c) was d) would have been

44 It is best to keep a medical kit عدة طبية ready emergency.
a) unless b) in case of c) if d) without

45 I wish I the answer, but I don't.
a) know b) would know c) had known d) knew

46 If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I too. I love birds!
a) will join b) would join c) would have joined d) joined

47 If I, I will become very fat.
a) don't exercise b) won't exercise c) wouldn't exercise d) hadn't exercised

48 If I a gun in the street, I would take it to the police.
a) find b) found c) had found d) will find

49 She wishes she blue eyes.
a) had b) has c) had had d) would have

50 Anyone can join the course, ... there is space available.
a) in case of b) provides c) unless d) provided that

51 If I drink too much coffee, I always awake all night long.
a) would stay b) will stay c) stay d) may stay

52 I have to work on Sunday. I wish I have to work on Sunday.
a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) didn't

53 He was offered the job he went on a month-long training course.
a) unless b) on condition that c) in case of d) without

54 We leave on Monday if it snows today.
a) will have to b) would c) would have to d) have to

55 If I with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.
a) were b) am c) had been d) will be

ALPWA Gem

56 I wish you borrow my things without permission.
a) don't **b)** won't **c)** wouldn't **d)** shouldn't

57 If you had worked harder, you your exams.
a) will pass **b)** would pass
c) would have passed **d)** wouldn't have passed

58 If I go to bed late, I drowsy in the morning.
a) felt **b)** won't feel **c)** might feel **d)** feel

59 What to your family if you were to immigrate?
a) would happen **b)** is happening
c) will happen **d)** would have happened

60 He wouldn't have visited me unless I him.
a) hadn't phoned **b)** had phoned **c)** phoned **d)** would phone

2 Choose the correct answer:

When Hesham was a student, he was very clever. He was(1)..... (seemed / supposed) to be a doctor, but he got 90% and(2)..... (joined / joins) the faculty of science. All his friends said that he(3)..... (could / couldn't) have got better marks, but he wasted much time. He wishes he(4)..... (has / had) joined the faculty of medicine. He said that he(5)..... (should / must) have done his best to achieve his ambition. His father has told him that he can achieve his goal by(6)..... (be / being) a doctor in the faculty of science.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

3 Choose the correct answer:

My friend is tired and upset. He(1)..... (seems / supposed) to have a lot of problems. He is(2)..... (supposed / seemed) to buy a large flat, but he doesn't(3)..... (has / have) the money needed. The flat he lives in(4)..... (supposed / seems) to be small and unhealthy. I've advised him(5)..... (look / to look) for one in the new areas built by the government. The flats, there, are(6)..... (meant / seemed) to be healthy and the streets are wide.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the verbs:

Jomana is a famous, well-paid actress and this was all due to luck. If she(1)..... (not be) famous, we(2)..... (not know) her. If she(3)..... (not be) surfing on the internet, she wouldn't have found an acting website. Unless she(4)..... (posted) a profile and picture, a talent agent wouldn't have called her. If a talent agent hadn't called her, she(5)..... (wouldn't do) such a great job in the film and(6)..... (become) famous!

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

Act (2) scenes (i - ii - iii)
Act (3) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

apologise	يعتذر
beggar	متسول
call out	ينادى بصوت عال
disagreement	عدم اتفاق
disbelief	عدم اعتقاد
double	ضعف
faithful	مخلص
follow	يتبع
forgive	يسامح/يصفح عن
guard	حارس/يحرس
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب
hut	كوخ
joke	مزحة/نكتة
lightning	البرق
lock ... out	يحبس ... خارجا
mice	فئران
patience	الصبر
persuade	يقنع
philosopher	فيلسوف
plot against	يتأمر ضد
port	ميناء
pretend	يتظاهر
profit	ربح/يربح
reward	مكافأة/يكافئ
rise	ينهض
room	فراغ
shelter	ملجأ/يلجأ إلى
spies	جواسيس
straw	قش
torch	مصباح

Phrases & Expressions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر
change his mind	يغير رأيه
go mad	يصاب بالجنون
set eyes on you	يلمح/يرى
try walking in a poor person's shoes	يجرب التصرف مثل الفقير
turn his back on	يدير ظهره لـ

ALPHA Gem

Summary

Act (2) Scene i

The setting is the Earl of Gloucester's castle. Edmund knows that the Duke of Cornwall will be arriving that evening. Edmund engages his brother in a fake battle معركة مزيفة, intentionally عمدا wounding himself to draw Gloucester's sympathy تعاطف. In response to Edmund's explanation of his brother's attack, Gloucester promises to find Edgar and bring him to justice العدالة. Gloucester also reveals his wish to make Edmund his heir. Regan and Cornwall enter. Without hesitation تردد, they fall for Edmund's story and join in condemning ادانة Edgar. Cornwall proclaims يزعم that Edmund shall join forces with him. Regan and Cornwall flatter ينافق Gloucester by asking his advice on an appropriate response رد مناسب to letters received from Lear and Goneril.

Act (2) Scene ii

The scene opens on Edgar, alone in the woods. Edgar makes a plan in which he will disguise himself as a beggar, changing his clothes and making his face and hair look dirty. In this costume زى, he will be known as Poor Tom. Lear and his followers arrive at Gloucester's castle. Kent hails يحيى the King, who asks who has placed his messenger in stocks أداة تعذيب. Lear refuses to believe that Regan and Cornwall would imprison and humiliate يهين someone in the King's service. Regan greets her father with seeming affection, and Lear expresses the sorrow that Goneril has caused him. Regan advises Lear to seek Goneril's forgiveness, which provokes يثير the King to anger and cursing لعنة.

Act (2) Scene iii

Regan refuses to host يستضيف her father and his soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتأمر with her sister, proposes that Lear dismiss his soldiers. The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear states that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company صحبة of those who disrespect his proper place as father and King. Regan and Goneril instruct Gloucester not to stop their father from wondering into the night. Regan and Goneril remain unmoved and unconcerned that the old King is going out in a severe storm.

Act (3) Scene i

The setting is a field in the countryside in a storm. Talking with a soldier, Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent relates that the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall are in disagreement. Kent also knows that the King of France is moving with an invasion غزو force to offer assistance to Lear. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered. Kent gives the messenger a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.

ALAWA Gem

Act (3) Scene ii

The storm continues in the fields. Lear's mood matches the nature as he rages يثور against his daughters' treatment. The Fool attempts to reason يجادل with his King, noting that the shelter of a dry house is better to a stay in the storm's fury. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut, which promises some protection, while he returns to Goneril and Regan's house to ask that they admit the King.

Act (3) Scene iii

The setting is Gloucester's castle, where Gloucester and Edmund are talking. Gloucester tells his son that he isn't satisfied راضي at Regan and Goneril's treatment of King Lear. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter which he is hiding in his bedroom about the French soldiers who have already arrived in England. Gloucester exits to look for the King and help him. Alone, Edmund plans to win Cornwall's trust by revealing the plan to aid the King and the letter.

Act (3) Scene iv

Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the King refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, exclaiming that a mad man has taken possession of the hut. The mad man is Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. The King has a conversation with Edgar not knowing him. Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear declines, claiming that he needs to talk more with the beggar. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter. Gloucester persuades the King to go with him with Kent and the Fool. Kent asks Gloucester to take the mad man with them.

ALADWAA Gem

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should to your customers for making them wait for a long time.
 a) punish b) apologise c) afford d) stand
2. We stood watching in as the car rolled into the water.
 a) disbelief b) pleasure c) satisfaction d) planning
3. Despite his problems, his friends have remained to him and helped him a lot.
 a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced
4. I'll never my friend for losing my expensive camera which I had lent him.
 a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
5. A flash of lit up the sky during yesterday's violent storm.
 a) thunder b) lightning c) rain d) earthquake
6. I don't have the to wait in line for hours just to buy a ticket.
 a) patience b) planning c) organisation d) acceptance
7. They were accused of against their country and helping the enemy.
 a) innovating b) suspecting c) playing d) plotting
8. I not to see Lamia, and carried on walking down the street.
 a) protected b) prevented c) pretended d) ignored
9. We sat in the shade, ... from the burning heat of the sun.
 a) sheltering b) subjecting c) improving d) assigning
10. Farmers usually use to feed their animals and make beds for them to sleep on.
 a) cream b) wood c) straw d) wool
11. Why does Edmund wound himself intentionally?
 a) To defend his country. b) To donate blood.
 c) To help his father. d) To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. To escape from his father's soldiers, Edgar disguised as a
 a) beggar b) soldier c) philosopher d) fool
13. King Lear was angry when he saw Kent in the stocks because
 a) he didn't want to reward him
 b) he was in his service
 c) he hurt Oswald
 d) he didn't want to please his daughters
14. Goneril wanted King Lear to keep of his soldiers.
 a) all b) none c) half d) quarter

ALADVA Gem

15 To whom does Kent ask the soldier to give the ring?

a) Regan. **b)** Goneril.

c) The King of France. **d)** Cordelia.

16 Why would Edmund tell the Duke about the letter which his father keeps?

a) To win his trust. **b)** To defend his country.

c) To be rewarded with money. **d)** To be given more land.

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1 What do you think of Edmund?

.....

.....

2 What is your opinion of Regan and Goneril's treatment of their father?

.....

.....

3 If you were King Lear, would you prefer to wonder in the storm rather than accept Regan and Goneril's conditions to host him? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

4 Why do you think King Lear called the beggar a "philosopher"?

.....

.....

5 Do you think Cordelia will help her father? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

Test 1 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The YouTube website enables customers to only trailers of new movies legally.
 a) download b) loading c) uploading d) overloading
2. A/An an icon, similar to an emoticon, used in electronic messages and on websites.
 a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal
3. The head teacher's was sharp with anger because of the student's bad behaviour.
 a) sign b) mark c) tone d) stone
4. I didn't want to go to the party, but my friends me into it.
 a) protected b) prevented c) discouraged d) persuaded
5. Everyone admire the Baron palace's beautifully restored gardens which were reopened lately.
 a) normal b) formal c) disorganised d) disgusted
6. The government made it easier to have many official service as a precaution against COVID-19.
 a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline
7. It's your own fault, you have gone to bed so late.
 a) should b) must c) can't d) shouldn't
8. You to pay the rent before the third day of the month.
 a) are supposed b) mean c) seem d) are seemed
9. As it was the time to close, all the customers were politely asked the shop.
 a) leaving b) to leaving c) to leave d) to have left
10. He didn't find the keys anywhere. You have left them on the bus.
 a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) could
11. When she went out this morning, she left her briefcase here. She to leave it behind.
 a) couldn't mean b) could mean
 c) could have meant d) couldn't have meant
12. It like a good idea to postpone the meeting until next Monday.
 a) seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) is seemed
13. Doctors said they could not treat the boy unless his parents their permission.
 a) had given b) gave c) give d) were given
14. I'm sure he didn't any harm.
 a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) supposed
15. He wishes he buy a new car.
 a) might b) could c) should d) would
16. If I hear any news, I you.
 a) would phone b) phoned c) phone d) will phone

© NAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The winter months in North America are December, January, February, and March. Winter is the best season of the year. During the winter months, temperatures are usually colder and there are fewer hours of daylight. Cold winter temperatures are caused by the tilting of the Earth. When Earth's Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the sun, there are fewer hours of daylight and the temperature is colder. When the Northern Hemisphere tilts towards the sun, there is more daylight time and the temperatures are warmer. The tilting of the Earth as it spins causes the seasons to change.

Animals have special ways of preparing themselves for winter. Some animals, like birds and butterflies travel long distances, or migrate, to warmer temperatures during the winter months. Other animals go to sleep, or hibernate, during the winter. Bears, gophers, snakes, and bats hibernate. Squirrels and raccoons don't migrate or hibernate. Instead, they gather extra food during the fall months and store it away so they have plenty to eat during the winter.

In some areas, winter is a time when snow falls and gathers on the ground. People who live in these places can enjoy special winter activities like skiing, sledding, or snowboarding. They can also build snowmen and snow castles. When the water in lakes and ponds freeze, people can ice skate or play ice hockey. Some people even cut a hole in the ice and go ice fishing!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Which sentence is an opinion?

a) The winter months are December, January, February and March.

b) Winter is the best season of the year.

c) There is more daylight during the summer months.

d) The tilting of the Earth causes the seasons to change.

18 During the winter months, the Northern Hemisphere is

a) tilted away from the sun **b)** tilted towards the sun

c) tilted away from the moon **d)** tilted towards the earth

19 The synonym of the word "tilting" is

a) leaning **b)** straightening

c) flattening **d)** destroying

20 All the following animals hibernate during the winter months except

a) bats **b)** gophers

c) bears **d)** butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do squirrels and raccoons do to prepare for the winter?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) travel long distances.

b) to sleep through the winter.

23 Name three activities mentioned in the article that require a frozen pond or lake.

24 Write two sentences describing some things you like to do in the winter.

25 **Translate into English:**

- تعمل الحكومة على إنشاء العديد من مراكز الشباب وتزويدها بالإمكانيات الحديثة لتسهل عليهم ممارسة الرياضة وقضاء أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Television with its varied programmes has its great influence on the minds of people everywhere. It has become an important means of shaping the public opinion.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How has the development of medical sciences made our life better?

ALAWA Gem

Test 2 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled **b)** smelled **c)** signed **d)** frowned
2. Experts warn us not to our personal and financial data on unknown websites.
 a) pass **b)** deliver **c)** publish **d)** post
3. All the fans gave a of relief when the referee gave the final whistle.
 a) cry **b)** sigh **c)** site **d)** view
4. I couldn't my antivirus software because it cost much money.
 a) upload **b)** enroll **c)** upgrade **d)** rule
5. My suitcase was so full that I didn't have for anything else.
 a) room **b)** line **c)** rooms **d)** rule
6. Parents always put their own needs to the bottom of the They care for their children first.
 a) hill **b)** mountain **c)** land **d)** pile
7. The words to be a good name for the shop , but no one liked them.
 a) meant **b)** means **c)** were meant **d)** meaning
8. I strongly encourage everyone or see King Lear. It's an important play.
 a) read **b)** to read **c)** reading **d)** to reading
9. You have refused the cake. It was rude.
 a) mustn't **b)** should **c)** shouldn't **d)** can't
10. The traffic policeman didn't give him a ticket. He have noticed that he was using the mobile phone while driving.
 a) might **b)** shouldn't **c)** must **d)** couldn't
11. It to me that students have to work hard to get high marks.
 a) is supposed **b)** seems **c)** is meant **d)** is seemed
12. Students to bring electronic devices into the exam room.
 a) are not supposed **b)** are seemed **c)** supposed **d)** are supposed
13. Ali the news if he wanted to know what was happening in the world.
 a) will watch **b)** would have watched **c)** can watch **d)** would watch
14. It to be some kind of joke, but it turned to be something silly.
 a) means **b)** was meant **c)** is supposed **d)** seems
15. If scientists' predictions are correct, average global temperatures by 6 degrees.
 a) may rise **b)** are risen **c)** rose **d)** should rise
16. Visitors are welcome, ... they don't make troubles.
 a) without **b)** unless **c)** as long as **d)** provides

ALPHA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My tooth hurt through the night. I had to take a painkiller to lessen the pain. Worst of all I did not get a wink of sleep the whole night through.

The next morning. I told my mother about my toothache. It was obvious I could not go to school. So, instead she took me to the dentist. I was horrified, but I had no choice.

At nine o'clock we waited outside the dentist's office. The nurse came and opened the door. I was the first patient. She wrote down my particulars and told me to wait a moment. The dentist had not arrived yet. Meanwhile the tooth still ached like mad.

The burly dentist arrived and I was ushered to the dentist's chair. Normally I would run away from the frightening surgery with all its horrible drills and pliers, but I did not. I had to get the offending tooth out.

So, I sat down on the reclining chair while the dentist kept saying some reassuring words. I relaxed somewhat. He asked me to open my mouth. I did so. He said that the tooth had to come out. I nodded dumbly in reply.

I felt a slight prick of pain when he gave me an injection, but that was nothing compared to the toothache. Soon, miraculously, all pain disappeared. The anaesthetic definitely worked very quickly. Then before I knew it, the dentist told me that I could go. I looked at him quizzically and he told me he had already pulled the tooth out. What wonder, I did not even feel it.

The dentist put a wad of cotton over the wound and he told me to keep my mouth shut for a while. I nodded, smiled and went out into the waiting room where my mother was waiting for me. The visit to the dentist was not too bad after all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer's tooth made him all night.

a) angry **b)** awake **c)** horrified **d)** happy

18 In the writer's opinion, the surgery was

a) fantastic **b)** frightened **c)** terrifying **d)** untidy

19 On leaving the dentist's office, the writer was completely

a) happy **b)** terrified **c)** sad **d)** angry

20 The synonym of the word "obvious" is

a) easy **b)** difficult **c)** obscure **d)** clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to show someone where they should go.

b) amazingly

.....

.....

.....

22 In two sentences describe the dentist.

23 How do you think people felt during operations before inventing anaesthetic?

24 Modern technology has helped medicine a lot. Explain.

25 **Translate into English:**

- يقول خبراء الاقتصاد أن جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية أحد أهم الحلول للمشكلات الاقتصادية التى نعانى منها مما يدفع الحكومة لتقديم المزيد من التسهيلات للمستثمرين.

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Individuals differ in their ability to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. So, they must be taught in different ways.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How can we make schools an exciting place for education?

ALAWAM Gem

Test 3 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should your lawyer before exchanging contracts.
 a) prevent b) apply c) advise d) consult
2. Firefighters took more than an hour to bring the under control.
 a) quarrel b) battle c) fire d) fight
3. Eating sensibly and taking regular exercise is a fairly method of losing weight.
 a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex
4. It isn't acceptable to see children food from strangers.
 a) begging b) ordering c) replying d) delivering
5. The film is basically a story of a who gave important information to the enemy.
 a) leader b) spy c) king d) duke
6. I have never to the view that schooldays are the happiest days of your life.
 a) ascribed b) approved c) subscribed d) frowned
7. The president has instructed the government more houses for youth.
 a) to have built b) building c) build d) to build
8. It wasn't necessary to tell the police. You have solved the problem personally.
 a) could b) might c) must d) shouldn't
9. We have taken a taxi when it rained. I'm sorry we didn't.
 a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) can't
10. I think you have listened to him. He told us very useful things about technology.
 a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) couldn't
11. This area to be safe, but there are fierce dogs that can harm anyone.
 a) is seemed b) supposed c) seems d) means
12. He is a comic person. He to make people laugh.
 a) seems b) is supposed c) means d) is seemed
13. Do you know what "luxurious"?
 a) means b) mean c) supposes d) seems
14. She misses him. She wishes he her a letter.
 a) would send b) has sent
 c) will send d) would have sent
15. Your letter won't be delivered unless it the correct postage.
 a) had b) will have c) has d) had had
16. If I hadn't stayed up late last night, I up early.
 a) will get b) wouldn't have got
 c) would have got d) would get

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Think about all the history and stories of our culture. We preserve them by writing them down in books. Today, we also have technology to use. In the early days, though, people did not have a language that could be written. They had only their own voices. They used their voices to pass down their history.

They told special stories and spoke about their customs. These stories are called folklore. Primitive people did not have a written language. Many of their stories were in the form of myths that explained mysteries of nature. Some were legends about past heroes of their culture. Many of the stories included elements of religion and magic. Modern methods of storytelling are available today. However, many tribes choose to continue the custom of oral storytelling and folklore. It is part of their cultural experience.

Many tribes have a history of believing in spirits. They believe that the spirits often take the form of animals found in nature. The animal spirits watch over them.

However, they also see the ancient gods as animal tricksters. A trickster is a character who plays tricks and jokes on others. A trickster often causes trouble or inconvenience. It really doesn't mean any terrible harm, though.

Many traditional ceremonies use animal costumes. The ceremonies honour the animals in the hopes that they will save their tricks for someone else. Other ceremonies are held to help the tribe prepare for a special event. They celebrate things like marriages, births, battles, harvests or hunts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 People in the past used to pass down their history.
- **a)** one language
- **b)** technology
- **c)** different languages
- **d)** voices

18 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
- **a)** history
- **b)** history and stories
- **c)** culture
- **d)** stories

19 People in the past believed that their gods could be in the form of
- **a)** religious men
- **b)** hunters
- **c)** animal tricksters
- **d)** magicians

20 The antonym of the adjective "primitive" is
- **a)** advanced
- **b)** original
- **c)** simple
- **d)** ancient

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why do you think many people continue storytelling even though other methods are available today?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

22 What is a trickster?

23 Why do the ceremonies include animal costumes?

24 What kind of stories do you like? Why?

25 Translate into English:

- يجب على المدرسين فى الوقت الحاضر مواكبة الطرق الحديثة فى التربية واستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة التى أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة اليومية.

26 Translate into Arabic:

The government is carrying out a lot of industrial and agricultural projects in Upper Egypt. This leads to providing job opportunities for the citizens there.

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

- Living in new cities has a lot of advantages and disadvantages.

ALAWA Gem

Part 2



Final Tests

Part 2

Final Tests

Practice Test 1 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother has a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
 a) prepared **b)** celebrated **c)** done **d)** cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or food such as fish and nuts?
 a) salt **b)** salty **c)** spicy **d)** small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR?
 a) prepare **b)** make **c)** perform **d)** act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your
 a) muscle **b)** cell **c)** surface **d)** lungs
5. All family members sang many while we decorated the Christmas tree.
 a) concerts **b)** carols **c)** albums **d)** gifts
6. The verb "neglect" can be the opposite to the verb "....." .
 a) highlight **b)** frown **c)** enjoy **d)** persuade
7. There will be food at the family party, so you to eat before you come.
 a) must **b)** have **c)** mustn't **d)** don't have
8. In next week's radio programme, we to a famous scientist.
 a) talk **b)** will be talking **c)** talking **d)** have talked
9. There was food at my friend's party, so I eat before I went there.
 a) mustn't **b)** didn't have to **c)** had to **d)** don't have to
10. Did you know that Indian food is one of the foods in the UK?
 a) most popular **b)** poor **c)** best popular **d)** popular
11. You to take more than three books a week. It's the rule.
 a) are not supposed **b)** don't seem **c)** mean **d)** don't suppose
12. You can't share my apartment you pay the rent.
 a) in case **b)** provided **c)** if **d)** unless
13. Fatma said she was hungry, but she didn't eat very much after all. She
 a) couldn't like the food **b)** couldn't have liked the food
 c) can't like the food **d)** couldn't have been hungry
14. My parents have invited one of my friends with us for the weekend.
 a) to stay **b)** not to stay **c)** to staying **d)** to be stayed
15. I you with the barbeque if you like.
 a) help **b)** am helping **c)** will help **d)** will be helped
16. Things are better organised now – we have problems than before.
 a) fewer **b)** less **c)** more less **d)** least

ELT Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What do you have to give to a plant in your home? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Latimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light from a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food.

The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.

Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What does David Latimer give to his plant every day?

a) Some water. **b)** Food and water. **c)** Old leaves. **d)** Nothing.

18 When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle?

a) 1960. **b)** 50 years ago. **c)** 1972. **d)** Last year.

19 What does the plant need from outside the bottle?

a) Light. **b)** Water. **c)** Oxygen. **d)** Leaves.

20 In the future, this plant will

a) go into space **b)** stop growing

c) be a sustainable food **d)** take pollution from the air

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why are scientists interested in this plant?

.....

.....

.....

23 How might plants like this help people in space?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

24 Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types.

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف أن يستفيد من أخطائه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعا اكتسابها، فمن لا يتعلم من أخطائه لا ينجح أبدًا.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of about (180) words on:

- Describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

Practice Test 2 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. CPR is a famous
 a) abbreviation b) acronym c) word d) punctuation
2. Ali what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
 a) misunderstood b) deceived c) ruined d) fell out with
3. They have just the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.
 a) deleted b) got into c) solved d) updated
4. It is not to share a box of chocolates.
 a) mean b) nasty c) careless d) wise
5. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of of diseases.
 a) affection b) infection c) defection d) perfection
6. Mohamed Salah is considered the cream of the in the Egyptian football team.
 a) product b) wheat c) crop d) manufacture
7. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me!
 a) could phone b) should have phoned
 c) should phone d) would have phoned
8. The teacher told the students their books at page 150.
 a) to open b) open c) you open d) opening
9. I send the report to the General Manager; he needed it urgently.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) didn't have to
10. My brother would have been a doctor if he his exams.
 a) passed b) would pass c) had passed d) pass
11. I have friends in the world.
 a) the best b) good c) best d) the better
12. What do you mean about the leaky pipes?
 a) to do b) doing c) to doing d) to have done
13. I wish I, I wouldn't have felt guilty.
 a) will apologise b) apologised c) hadn't apologised d) had apologised
14. I don't have enough money to buy lunch. you lend me a couple of dollars?
 a) Might b) Could c) May d) Shall
15. I read in the paper that they the price of gas again.
 a) increase b) are going to increase c) are increased d) will be increasing
16. The better the party the night before, the it is to get up in the morning.
 a) most difficult b) difficult c) more difficult d) least difficult

ALAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last year, my friend Hamid and I decided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessaloniki in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hamid agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps.

At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more than fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known that his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it! It told us to avoid a lot of hazardous places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves.

When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why didn't Hamid and the writer keep in touch with Adam?

a) They fell out with him. **b)** He lived in a different country.
c) He went to a different school. **d)** He spoke a different language.

18 What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?

a) It seemed to be good. **b)** It was very old.
c) He did not trust it. **d)** It was new and reliable.

19 Why did the writer and Hamid not visit some parts of Athens?

a) Adam ordered them not to go there.
b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
c) The Olympic Games were happening.
d) They did not have time.

20 How did they get information to travel around the islands?

a) From an online guide. **b)** From a guide that Adam wrote.
c) From a book. **d)** From a man who knew the islands.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What had changed in Athens since 2003?

.....

.....

.....

ALARWA Gem

22 What do you think the word "hazardous" in the text means?

23 What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece?

24 What problems do you think online guides might have?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

You can benefit from using the internet if you are careful. You mustn't share your password with anyone. If you do, they will be able to see your private information.

26 **Translate into English:**

- لقـد تأثـر سـوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمى كثيراً فى كل أنحـاء العالم بجائحة كورونا حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية، كمـا ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تـؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

27 **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:**

Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets?

ALAWA Gem

Practice Test 3 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Firefighters have to quickly when there is an emergency.
 a) sigh b) divide c) persuade d) react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a?
 a) sword b) post c) torch d) frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should
 a) apologise b) perform c) shelter d) deceive
4. In their game, some of the children to be animals.
 a) rewarded b) did c) pretended d) looked
5. I love reading my favourite writer's blog because I learn so much.
 a) passes b) posts c) pasts d) views
6. The film review was moderate in as it didn't attack the actors much.
 a) sound b) detail c) tone d) a hurry
7. You sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to
8. The students all feel now that the exams have finished.
 a) the happiest b) happier c) more happy d) happiest
9. In the future, I think we electric cars.
 a) drive b) be driving c) will be driving d) are driving
10. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he eaten so many sweets.
 a) hasn't b) didn't c) won't d) hadn't
11. He happy to be chosen as the best player in the match.
 a) seems b) seems to c) is supposed d) means
12. Look! Our car isn't in the driveway! Somebody it.
 a) could have stolen b) must be stealing c) must have stolen d) might have stolen
13. Don't sit on that bench, I it.
 a) will paint b) am going to paint c) will be painting d) will have painted
14. The more spices a meal has, the expensive it becomes.
 a) most b) more c) little d) much
15. If dad here, he would know what to do.
 a) had been b) were c) will be d) is
16. Hesham doesn't speak very clearly.
 a) It is difficult to understand b) He is difficult to understand
 c) He is difficult to understand him d) It is difficult to understand it

ALPHA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency, and it means keeping away from other people.

The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean 'very successful', adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 It is important to changes to the English language.

a) be aware of **b)** take control of

c) be tempted by **d)** bring back

18 You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop friends on social media.

a) losing touch with **b)** keeping in touch with

c) subscribing **d)** uploading

19 The German word uber is an example of

a) an informal use of an old word

b) a foreign word used by successful people

c) a new informal word in English

d) a very common word in English

20 They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be

a) like English **b)** more traditional

c) the same as the American spelling **d)** easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why were phrases such as fake news and social distancing added to dictionaries recently?

.....

.....

.....

ALARMA Gem

22 What has not changed about the English language, according to the article?

.....

.....

.....

23 Why do you think English uses words from other languages?

.....

.....

.....

24 Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn? Why/Why not?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. So, we should all follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being infected with serious diseases.

26 Translate into English:

- يُـعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتسـاب المعرفة بمسـاعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. ومع ذلك، فإن هذا يفتقر إلى العمل الجماعى ولا يطور المهارات.

27 Write an essay of about (180) words on the topic:

- Persuade a friend of yours of how it is important to stay safe and healthy.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new supermarket has a giant a flashing neon at the entrance.
 a) signal **b)** mark **c)** sign **d)** landmark
2. The of calories a person needs each day depend on the type of work they do.
 a) account **b)** quality **c)** weight **d)** amount
3. The Corona Virus pandemic increased the importance of to provide food for our own country.
 a) economy **b)** agriculture **c)** literature **d)** culture
4. A/An is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
 a) linguist **b)** botanist **c)** astrologist **d)** biologist
5. My new car is a better and more car than my last one.
 a) doubtful **b)** distant **c)** reliable **d)** disorganised
6. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their and religions.
 a) heights **b)** wealth **c)** competitions **d)** races
7. You leave your bags with someone you don't know.
 a) have to **b)** mustn't **c)** had to **d)** don't have to
8. I must finish this essay today. It be handed in by tomorrow.
 a) has to **b)** mustn't **c)** had to **d)** needn't
9. They are confident. It that they know what they're doing.
 a) is meant **b)** supposed **c)** supposes **d)** seems
10. We find that we have far time to relax now that we have children.
 a) less **b)** much **c)** many **d)** a lot of
11. There aren't as many people at this meeting at the last one.
 a) so **b)** than **c)** as **d)** like
12. This time next week, I at the Hilton if you need to contact me.
 a) will wait **b)** will be staying **c)** am going to wait **d)** wait
13. Although he is a liar, he expects people him.
 a) to believe **b)** to be believed **c)** believing **d)** believe
14. I wish I help you.
 a) can **b)** will **c)** would **d)** could
15. I don't like stories have unhappy endings.
 a) which **b)** they **c)** who **d)** whose
16. Everything is going well. We any problems so far.
 a) didn't have **b)** don't have **c)** haven't had **d)** hadn't had

ELAWM Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists study the world and learn about how it works. As they study the world, the scientists use a process called the scientific method. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries! There are times when a scientist is unable to answer his own question.

If he has taken good notes, another scientist may come along later and use his notes to find the answer. Every year there is new knowledge.

The scientific method is a step-by-step process. You can use it to conduct an experiment. You start by making observations about something that interests you. Based on your observations, you make a hypothesis. A hypothesis is a smart guess you make by using what you know. You guess what you think could happen. Now you are ready to begin your experiment.

During your experiment you should take notes. These notes are your experiment data. You constantly make observations during this time. You may discover things that make you to revise your experiment. Eventually, you conclude your experiment.

Next, you begin to look over your notes. You decide what you found out in your experiment. You make a final statement about whether or not your hypothesis was correct. You use reasons and evidence to support your statement.

Using the scientific method can be challenging. However, it can also be rewarding. All the steps are organised in a process. When you provide observations and data as evidence to support your conclusion, your ideas are more likely to be accepted.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is the scientific method?

a) Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
b) Asking important questions.
c) Searching for the answers.
d) Conducting an experiment.

18 What is the last step in the scientific method?

a) Taking notes. **b)** Making a hypothesis.
c) Making a final statement. **d)** Making observations.

19 When you find something that interests you, how do you make a hypothesis?

a) By making observations. **b)** By taking notes.
c) By making a hypothesis. **d)** By making a final statement.

20 The antonym of the word "conclude" is

a) close **b)** start **c)** finish **d)** end

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do scientists do to study the world and learn about how it works?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why is it important to take good notes when you are conducting an experiment?

23 How do you think scientists should be honoured?

24 Name two things you might like to investigate this year for a science project.

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The attack of the Coronavirus known as COVID-19 forced governments to impose strict precautionary measures. They closed schools, universities and entertainment places and imposed curfew.

26 **Translate into English:**

- بسبب المشروعات الزراعية الكبيرة فى مصر فى السنوات القليلة الماضية زادت صادرات مصر من المنتجات الزراعية إلى كل دول العالم بشكل كبير مما ساهم فى زيادة الدخل القومى.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- What are the ways in which technology is changing our lives and what can we expect in future?

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
 a) ordered **b)** begged **c)** attacked **d)** delayed
2. My grandmother always keep a sewing in her handbag.
 a) kit **b)** tool **c)** device **d)** machine
3. Egypt its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
 a) accept **b)** reward **c)** celebrate **d)** report
4. The Nile is our most important water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
5. We intend to make a/an written complaint against the car agency.
 a) normal **b)** formal **c)** occasional **d)** feast
6. The applicant no time in introducing himself to the interviewer.
 a) wasted **b)** missed **c)** profited **d)** benefited
7. I see the head teacher yesterday as she had called me to her office.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** had to **d)** mustn't
8. When did you give the books back?
 a) had to **b)** must **c)** needn't **d)** have to
9. Vegetable curry is usually than the other meals on the menu.
 a) spicier **b)** spicy **c)** spiciest **d)** most spicy
10. Yesterday it was 39°C, the day of the year so far.
 a) most hottest **b)** hottest **c)** hot **d)** hotter
11. If you get late again tonight, I for you. So, we're clear.
 a) wait **b)** will be waiting **c)** won't be waiting **d)** am waiting
12. Khalid didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister have been playing with it.
 a) could **b)** must **c)** can't **d)** mustn't
13. I'm going to buy this book. It to be very good.
 a) seemed **b)** is seemed **c)** is supposed **d)** supposed
14. Do you think I'd be here if I a choice?
 a) had had **b)** have **c)** were **d)** had
15. "Do you think it will rain?"
 a) I hope not **b)** I don't hope **c)** I don't hope so **d)** I hope no
16. "You don't know where Hany is, ...?" "Sorry, I have no idea".
 a) don't you **b)** do you **c)** are you **d)** is he

© ALAWAM Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Every day many people are involved in road accidents. Some are killed. Many more are injured or maimed. So it is important for us to learn to use the roads properly and safely. No sane person would like to be involved in an accident.

As the roads are very busy nowadays, we should be very careful when crossing one. It is safer to use a pedestrian crossing or an overhead bridge whenever one is available. Never cross a road by dashing across it. That is inviting trouble. If there are no crossings, then we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.

Some of us take the bus to school. It is important that we do not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. I tried to get on a moving bus once. It dragged me a short distance and nearly ran over me. I was lucky to escape with only some scratches on my legs. Also we must not fool around while on the bus. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.

Using a bicycle can be dangerous too. We must pay attention on the road and never cycle too far out to the middle of the road. We must obey all traffic rules. Also we must make sure our bicycles are in good conditions with working brakes, light, etc.

These are some things we can do to avoid accidents. However there is no guarantee that we will never be involved in one. The important thing is to stay alert at all times while using the roads.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 In order to prevent accidents, how should people use the roads?
- **a)** All the time.
- **b)** Properly and safely.
- **c)** Two or three days a week.
- **d)** Only on holidays.

18 Bicycles are in good conditions if they
- **a)** have working brakes and lights
- **b)** cycle in the middle of the road
- **c)** are in many bright colours
- **d)** equal wheels

19 The synonym of the word "available" is
- **a)** unavailable
- **b)** restricted
- **c)** accessible
- **d)** closed

20 What is the alternative to crossing busy roads?
- **a)** Using a pedestrian crossing.
- **b)** An overhead bridge.
- **c)** Waiting for holidays to cross them.
- **d)** Both a and b.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What should we do if we decide to catch the bus? Mention two things.

.....

.....

.....

22 What should a person do if there are no crossings?

.....

.....

.....

ALARMA Gem

23 Accidents might occur while we are on the bus. Explain.

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think will happen if we use the roads carefully or carelessly?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Cheating is a dishonest way of gaining success. That's why; strict measures are taken by the Ministry of Education to prevent cheating.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- أظهرت أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد أهمية تعاون الدول لحل المشكلات المختلفة التى تواجه العالم التى أصبح البحث عن لقاح لهذا الفيروس من أهمها.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Fighting pollution and its bad effects are the responsibility of governments and individuals.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was able to only a trial version of the games from the Internet for free.
 a) load **b)** overload **c)** upload **d)** download
2. The airline some of its stuff to decrease their losses.
 a) breathed **b)** designed **c)** fired **d)** warmed
3. The artist painted the of a boat against the setting sun.
 a) direction **b)** profile **c)** character **d)** site
4. All laws have very penalties for people who sell drugs.
 a) simple **b)** severe **c)** fragile **d)** merciful
5. The young writer began his career writing for the local magazine.
 a) leaflets **b)** brochures **c)** articles **d)** captions
6. Many Egyptian farmers keep such as cows and buffaloes to help them in their fields.
 a) livestock **b)** dairy **c)** household **d)** poultry
7. I go to the post office to receive the parcel. The postman delivered it.
 a) didn't have to **b)** don't have to **c)** have to **d)** had to
8. She come with us if she doesn't want to.
 a) has to **b)** needn't **c)** mustn't **d)** must
9. This exercise is too difficult. I think you should make it
 a) as simple **b)** most simple **c)** more simpler **d)** simpler
10. When she comes, they dinner.
 a) have **b)** will be having **c)** are going to having **d)** have
11. I'm not feeling well. In fact, I think I sick!
 a) am **b)** will be being **c)** am going to be **d)** will have been
12. He said that he never wanted to see you, but I'm sure he didn't it.
 a) meant **b)** seem **c)** suppose **d)** mean
13. The plastic melts if it too hot.
 a) gets **b)** got **c)** is getting **d)** had got
14. My friends have invited me the pyramids with them.
 a) visiting **b)** to visiting **c)** to visit **d)** to have visited
15. You can't stop me what I want.
 a) that I do **b)** do **c)** doing **d)** to do
16. a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
 a) Having found **b)** Finding **c)** After founding **d)** We found

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mount Everest is the tallest mountain on Earth. Mount Everest is still growing a few millimeters every year! Its peak is located on the border between Nepal and Tibet in China. It is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.

For many years, climbers tried and failed to reach the summit of Mount Everest. In 1953, the British put everything they had into giving it one more try. They hoped that their climbers would reach the top in time for the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.

Ten different climbers from all over the world were chosen to make the trek. In April and May, supplies were relayed up the mountain, and camps were set up every 1,000 to 2,000 feet.

On May 29, 1953, two of the climbers set out for the summit from their camp at 27,900 feet. On that morning, Edmund P. Hillary (from New Zealand) and Tenzing Norgay (from Nepal) accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever. They were the first to reach the summit of Mount Everest. When they returned home, journalists kept asking the two men who reached the summit first. Each time they were asked, the response was the same: "We reached it together, as a team."

Between 1921 and 2007, over two thousand people have climbed Mount Everest, some more than once. Since the first ascent in 1953, more than 600 climbers from 20 different countries have reached the summit. However, over two hundred climbers have died attempting to climb Mount Everest, most commonly from avalanches, but also from falls in crevasses, cold, or high-altitude sicknesses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is this passage mostly about?

a) The first people who climbed on Mount Everest.
b) The location of Mount Everest.
c) The first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest.
d) The first time Queen Elizabeth climbed Mount Everest.

18 Read the following sentence from the article and choose the meaning for the underlined word.
They hoped that their climbers would reach the top before the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.

a) Birth.
b) Special feast held by a king or queen.
c) Birthday celebration.
d) Ceremony for crowning a king or queen.

19 Where is Mount Everest located?

a) In Asia.
b) In Western Europe.
c) In North America.
d) In South America.

20 Which sentence is an opinion?

a) On May 29, 1953, two climbers reached the summit of Mount Everest.
b) For many years, climbers had tried to reach the summit of Mount Everest.
c) Mount Everest is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.
d) Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzing Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Do we know the name of the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest? Explain.

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) descent **b)** succeeded

.....

.....

.....

23 What do you think of all those people who climbed Everest?

.....

.....

.....

24 Why do you think people want to do this dangerous things like climbing Everest? Give two reasons.

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Music eases our nerves and renews our energies. It inspires us with courage and fills us with hope. It cures sick minds and heals troubled souls.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- للسياحة دور هام فى الاقتصاد فى مصر فهى توفر الكثير من فرص العمل كما أنها ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الأجنبية التى تحتاجها مصر.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

"An exciting journey that you will never forget"

- Your name is Yasser and your e-mail address is: yasser_19@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Medhat and his e-mail address is: medhat200@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALARWA Gem

Final Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Being able to adapt to different situations is one of the life skills.
 a) fictional **b)** extra **c)** additional **d)** basic
2. Within less than an hour, the fire had to the fuel stores.
 a) published **b)** spread **c)** printed **d)** sprayed
3. Nowadays, all should spend money on training their staff.
 a) customers **b)** buyers **c)** employers **d)** clients
4. All airports have special machines to passengers' bags.
 a) scan **b)** skim **c)** expect **d)** state
5. Modern freezing enable the chickens to be stored for weeks.
 a) diseases **b)** routes **c)** techniques **d)** causers
6. A is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
 a) licence **b)** degree **c)** permission **d)** questionnaire
7. If I hadn't broken my leg. I the race.
 a) would win **b)** might have won **c)** will win **d)** win
8. You keep medicines where children can get them.
 a) have to **b)** must **c)** mustn't **d)** needn't
9. Was the film funny as his last one?
 a) much **b)** as **c)** more **d)** less
10. Do you like my new solar watch? Here, I you how it works.
 a) show **b)** will be showing **c)** am showing **d)** will show
11. I have taken the job if they had offered it to me earlier.
 a) could **b)** shouldn't **c)** must **d)** couldn't
12. I to have left my book at home.
 a) supposed **b)** am meant **c)** mean **d)** seem
13. late, we will have to start without him.
 a) Were he to be **b)** Should he be **c)** Had he been **d)** Unless he is
14. The planet in the solar system is Jupiter.
 a) large **b)** larger **c)** largest **d)** most large
15. I'm tired. I'd rather out this evening, if you don't mind.
 a) not going **b)** not to go **c)** don't go **d)** not go
16. Have you been to?
 a) Canada or United States **b)** the Canada or the United States
 c) the Canada or United States **d)** Canada or the United States

ALARMA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Let me out," the explorer said, "or I'll make the sun go away. Right here in the middle of the day I'll make something eat up your sun." The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage. "All right," he said, "You'll see. My magic is strong. Now I'll make the sun go away in the middle of the day."

And the sun did go away! At least it seemed to. Something seemed to eat up the sun a little at a time until it was all gone and the day was as dark as midnight. The jungle people moaned and cried. They were very afraid of this explorer whose magic was strong enough to take their sun away. "Make the sun come back," they cried, and we'll do anything you say. We'll set you free and give you food and great treasures." "All right," the explorer said. "I'll make the sun come back." And the sun did come back after a while.

What the jungle people did not know was that day, the sun was eclipsed by the moon. Eclipse means to hide something by coming in front of it. When this happens, it can turn as dark as night right in the middle of the day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea in the passage is

a) the explorer's trick to be set free
b) magic and the sun
c) the jungle people's kindness
d) the explorer's power to hide the sun

18 The thing that was really eating up the sun was

a) magic
b) a dragon
c) an eclipse
d) the explorer

19 The explorer seemed to have much knowledge with

a) primitive people
b) astronomy
c) medicine
d) magic

20 The synonym of the word "moaned" is

a) slept
b) ran
c) frightened
d) groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What did the jungle people do when the explorer threatened to take the sun?

.....

.....

.....

22 How was the explorer more knowledgeable than the jungle people?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

23 Why do you think the jungle people imprison the explorer?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think of what the explorer did?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Many of our old cities don't suit modern life. They consist of a variety of buildings and narrow streets full of petrol fumes and noise which affect people's health.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- إن مصر هبة النيل وبدونه ستصبح مصر صحراء جرداء لذلك يجب علينا الحفاظ عليه وترشيد استهلاكنا من المياه مما يساعدنا فى مواجهة أزمة سد النهضة.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The pros and cons of modern means of transport.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor encouraged the child to increase the of food that he eats.
 a) mixture **b)** variety **c)** combination **d)** collocation
2. To do this job done, you need a computer to the Internet.
 a) connected **b)** contacted **c)** communicated **d)** chattered
3. It's important to a virus checker on your mobile or tablet.
 a) break **b)** smash **c)** attach **d)** install
4. If you change your about the wall colour, it's easy to just paint over it.
 a) head **b)** mind **c)** brain **d)** matter
5. The shoe factory has come under for using child labour.
 a) rocket **b)** fire **c)** pocket **d)** shot
6. The famous actress complained that the magazine had invaded her by printing the photos with her children.
 a) privacy **b)** priority **c)** protect **d)** coverage
7. You see a doctor. It's not so serious.
 a) had to **b)** didn't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** needn't
8. For some students mathematics is the subject they take.
 a) difficult **b)** more difficult **c)** most difficult **d)** much difficult
9. If the weather stays good, we a game of tennis tomorrow.
 a) would play **b)** will play **c)** would have played **d)** will be playing
10. My elder brother taught me how a bike.
 a) to ride **b)** riding **c)** to be riding **d)** ride
11. Why hasn't the teacher come to school today? She to be ill.
 a) means **b)**is meant **c)** was seemed **d)** is supposed
12. If you much money last year, you wouldn't have suffered a lot.
 a) had wasted **b)** hadn't wasted **c)** wasted **d)** didn't waste
13. At the same time tomorrow, we through the streets of downtown.
 a) will walk **b)** are going to walk **c)** will be walking **d)** walk
14. If you had this house, a husband, and three children to look after, you tired like me.
 a) looked **b)** would have looked **c)** will look **d)** would look
15. Are you looking forward on holiday?
 a) to going **b)** that you go **c)** to go **d)** going
16. I haven't seen her for, I've forgotten what she looks like.
 a) so along **b)** a such long time
 c) such a long time **d)** so long time

©ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I live in a housing estate like all my neighbours. The one thing about living in a housing estate is that we have many neighbours.

Next to my house on the right lives a family whose parents seem to be always scolding the children. I do not know them very well because they always appear angry. Never a day passes without hearing the children crying and the parents shouting at the top of their voices.

On the other side of my house, however, lives a very quiet and polite family. Mr. Saber is a quiet man who seems to manage his family very well. Though he has four children, which is one more than the other family, I never hear him scold his children. So his children never cry.

Further down the road is a family whose radio is switched on most of the time, except late at night. His immediate neighbours must have a tough time putting up with the noise of the radio.

Then there is a family whose members seem to live in a world of their own. Many times we have met along the road and not once has any of them even nod his or her head in acknowledgement. They are not blind or deaf. Yet they can walk straight past as if I am not there at all. I would not say that they are unfriendly. I guess they are simply not interested in knowing their neighbours.

These are some of the neighbours living near me. There are others that I have yet to meet. However I am careful not to intrude on their privacy. The friendly ones smile or raise their hands. The not-so-friendly ones look away. I have to live among them, friendly or not.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 How many children does the first family have?

a) Four. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** Five.

18 Which one of the following isn't true about the writer and his neighbours?

a) All the writer's neighbours are bad.

b) All the writer's neighbours live in housing estates.

c) The writer doesn't intrude on his neighbours' privacy.

d) The writer has to live among his good and bad neighbours.

19 The antonym of the word "scolding" is

a) making angry **b)** praising

c) surprising **d)** punishing

20 The children's behaviour is affected by

a) the number of the family **b)** the name of the family

c) the neighbours' behaviour **d)** the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) interfere **b)** greeting

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

22 What do the members of the family who seem to live in a world of their own do?

23 How would you like your neighbours to be?

24 What would you do if your neighbours are not good?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Online learning is becoming more popular today as more people have access to computers and the Internet. It was the only solutions for students to complete their study during the crisis of COVID-19.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تحقق أفلام الخيال العلمى وأفلام الحركة أرباحًـا كبيرة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بسبب إعجاب الشباب بها بينما أصبحت الأفلام الرومانسية فى ذيل قائمة الإيرادات فى كثير من بلاد العالم.

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

"A goal you hope to achieve in the future"

- Your name is Wafaa and your e-mail address is: wafaa1000@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hanan and her e-mail address is: hanan200@yahoo.com.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that the small blood vessels in the nose easily, so some fighting sports player wear a face mask.
 a) breed **b)** heal **c)** treat **d)** bleed
2. It was real fun to together with his old school friends.
 a) go **b)** make **c)** get **d)** intend
3. There is clear that smoking causes heart disease.
 a) law **b)** case **c)** invention **d)** evidence
4. What was the of that book you were reading last week?
 a) address **b)** title **c)** rank **d)** award
5. If your memory problems do not improve, you should a specialist.
 a) consult **b)** detect **c)** predict **d)** hire
6. The two villages are similar in size but very different in
 a) feeling **b)** character **c)** letter **d)** assumption
7. You stand on the plane. There are seats for everyone.
 a) had to **b)** have to **c)** must **d)** don't have to
8. There were lots of buses, so we drive to the airport.
 a) didn't have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** had to
9. *The Lord of the Rings* was the film I have ever seen.
 a) much exciting **b)** most exciting **c)** exciting **d)** more exciting
10. The plane from Saudi Arabia Cairo Airport at 4:30.
 a) will have reached **b)** is reaching **c)** is going to reach **d)** reaches
11. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone. They have been stolen.
 a) should **b)** must **c)** could **d)** can't
12. He is a liar, which that we'll never believe him.
 a) seem **b)** means **c)** suppose **d)** mean
13. I you twenty pounds if you fix my computer for me.
 a) would have given **b)** would give **c)** will give **d)** give
14. they seen us, we would have been in trouble.
 a) Should **b)** If **c)** Had **d)** Were
15. When Marwa came to Britain, she had to get used on the left.
 a) for driving **b)** to drive **c)** to driving **d)** driving
16. We don't have on holiday right now.
 a) enough money to go **b)** money enough to go
 c) enough money for go **d)** money enough for going

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is most important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (think: surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers, and it is, therefore, important you provide an answer that proves you're perfectly capable of keeping your cool in difficult and stressful situations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the writer our choice of jobs is influenced by
a) our education **b)** work values **c)** personality **d)** salaries

18 According to the passage working under pressure means
a) meeting a deadline **b)** finishing at any time
c) making mistakes **d)** enjoying our job

19 The synonym of "conflict" is
a) balance **b)** agreement **c)** harmony **d)** struggle

20 In most time, pressure leads to
a) relaxation **b)** satisfaction **c)** freedom **d)** sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What happens to people who don't like their jobs?

.....

.....

.....

22 Explain in two points how working under pressure is something bad.

.....

.....

.....

23 What skills should a person have to work under pressure? Mention two skills.

24 Do you like working under pressure or not? Why?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

One of our environmental problems is the rise in the temperature of the earth. The heavy rains that we have witnessed lately is a warning to man to stop polluting the atmosphere.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تضرب مصر مثالًا كبيرًا للتسامح بين الأديان من خلال التعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذى يرجع لمئات السنين والذى حماها من الفتنة الطائفية على مر العصور.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- A famous person and the services he/she did to humanity.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People complained that the rubbish lay in on the street and this was collected at once.
 a) piles **b)** hays **c)** holes **d)** wreckages
2. The famous tennis player Venus Williams won several important singles before retiring.
 a) titles **b)** names **c)** headings **d)** tours
3. To healthy, you should follow the rules of personal and public cleanliness.
 a) leave **b)** move **c)** stay **d)** remove
4. The Japanese bride insisted on wearing a/an Japanese kimono on her wedding.
 a) styled **b)** technological **c)** inventive **d)** traditional
5. My uncle made a fortune by in used cars and new flats.
 a) inspiring **b)** investing **c)** moving **d)** respecting
6. Mona's teaching experience gives her a/an when working with children.
 a) disadvantage **b)** danger **c)** advantage **d)** experiment
7. We to school tomorrow as it is a holiday.
 a) needn't go **b)** needn't have gone **c)** have to **d)** must
8. As you get older, you get
 a) tolerant **b)** more tolerant **c)** most tolerant **d)** the most tolerant
9. What at the party tonight?
 a) you wearing **b)** do you wear **c)** are you worn **d)** are you wearing
10. They were warned the mountain in such bad weather.
 a) to climb **b)** climbing **c)** not to climb **d)** to not climb
11. She has been on the phone for an hour. She to have an interesting conversation!
 a) is meant **b)** supposed **c)** seems **d)** is seemed
12. his phone number, I would call him.
 a) Were I to know **b)** If I know **c)** Unless I knew **d)** Had I known
13. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has range of products?
 a) widest **b)** the widest **c)** wider **d)** the most wide
14. Hisham at the club tonight. We should go and see him. He's a great player.
 a) will be playing **b)** will play **c)** is going to play **d)** plays
15. I phoned the restaurant a table.
 a) for reserve **b)** to reserve **c)** for reserving **d)** for to reserve
16. It's two years Joe.
 a) that I don't see **b)** since I last saw
 c) that I haven't seen **d)** since I didn't see

ALAWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I walk a kilometre or so to school every morning. Sometimes I come across a mad woman dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness. I always keep my distance from her for my own safety for I cannot be sure what she will do next. Also she smells terrible up close.

She is by no means violent but she has the nasty habit of following people who pass by. Normally when I see her I cross over to the other side of the road just to avoid her. Usually that works. Sometimes she crosses the road too. So I run. Fortunately she cannot run very fast and gives up after a while.

One morning, as I crossed the road to avoid her, she tried to cross too. I started to run. She started to run too but tripped on her sari. She fell down hard on the road and lay there in a heap. I wanted to keep running but I saw that she was in great danger of being run over by a car. So I ran over to her to pull her to the roadside.

As much as I disliked it, I had to help her. The other passers-by did not seem to bother. So I held my breath and pull her by her arms towards the roadside. By now people and cars had stopped to watch. No one helped but at last I managed to drag her to safety.

She opened her eyes and gave me a smile. I could only stare at her dumbly. Then I turned and hurried to school to wash my hands.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 One of the following isn't true about the old woman.

a) Her clothes were dirty and her air was untidy.

b) She was violent.

c) She follows and runs after people who pass her.

d) She liked the writer's help.

18 The expression "I held my breath" means

a) I stopped breathing **b)** I didn't have oxygen

c) I was sad **d)** I hated it

19 When people saw the woman in danger, they

a) came to help **b)** did nothing

c) ran away **d)** thanked the writer

20 The writer proved to be

a) violent **b)** fool

c) coward **d)** kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How does the mad woman look?

.....

.....

.....

22 Give two reasons that make the writer walk away from the woman.

.....

.....

.....

23 What do you think would have happened if the writer hadn't helped the woman?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think we should do to the street people?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

مهما كان طموحك للمستقبل عليك أن تعمل بجد وصبر لكى تستطيع تحقيقه ولكن تذكر أيضًا أن التخطيط الجيد يساعدك فى ذلك.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Many people think that money is the main cause of happiness. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. advertising are those advertisements who appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
 a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging with some friends.
 a) on **b)** in **c)** out **d)** at
3. British Airways has a very good safety Accidents are rare on their flights.
 a) prize **b)** record **c)** revision **d)** medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product.
 a) pulling **b)** depriving **c)** boosting **d)** discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much for his successful football career.
 a) disrespect **b)** rudeness **c)** affection **d)** respect
6. At the end of the 17th century England was still, depending mainly on agriculture.
 a) rural **b)** urban **c)** space **d)** spicy
7. The bigger the flat is, the time she takes to clean it.
 a) longer **b)** longest **c)** long **d)** more long
8. I often work at the weekend to get everything done.
 a) mustn't **b)** have to **c)** don't have to **d)** didn't have to
9. I for my results all the next month.
 a) wait **b)** will wait **c)** will be waiting **d)** will be waited
10. Why did you leave the exam room? You have checked your answers more thoroughly.
 a) shouldn't **b)** should **c)** must **d)** oughtn't
11. I'm to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow but I think I'm going down with flu.
 a) seemed **b)** suppose **c)** seem **d)** supposed
12. I would have been in bad trouble, if she me.
 a) hadn't helped **b)** were **c)** is **d)** will be
13. The mobile phone must be one of the inventions of all time.
 a) useful **b)** most useful **c)** less useful **d)** more useful
14. We have to hurry. The train in five minutes.
 a) is leaving **b)** leaves **c)** will have left **d)** won't leave
15. I didn't hear you You must have been very quiet.
 a) came **b)** to come **c)** come **d)** to coming
16. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was journey.
 a) three hours **b)** three hour **c)** a three-hours **d)** a three-hour

© ALADWAA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting.

This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way.

So I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer has liked reading since

a) his graduation **b)** his childhood **c)** his marriage **d)** his youth

18 Through reading, the person becomes

a) knowledgeable **b)** available **c)** famous **d)** honourable

19 The word "bygone" means

a) the things that will happen in the future **b)** the things that happen daily

c) the things that will never happen **d)** the things that happening in a past time

20 In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a

a) disaster **b)** responsibility **c)** hobby **d)** danger

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What books does the writer like reading?

.....

.....

.....

22 Reading can save you from danger. Give two examples.

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

1. to deal successfully with a difficult situation
2. having a lot of knowledge

24 Do you like reading? Why? Why not?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

In the past, trade was on a small scale. Today, trade has greatly developed and increased. Goods are now transported quickly and safely.

26 **Translate into English:**

- تعانـى العديد من دول العالم من مشـكلة اللاجئين الذين تجبرهم الحروب والصراعات والمشـكلات الاقتصادية الكبيـرة على ترك أوطانهم والبحث عن حياه أفضل.

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Your favourite social networking site.

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper around the world.
 a) addresses b) headquarters c) headlines d) backlines
2. I couldn't in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't
 a) proved b) approved c) disapproved d) improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo b) location c) site d) image
5. A specialist did a full heart for the patient before the operation.
 a) examination b) process c) intention d) surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are to many people.
 a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted
7. We have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
 a) have to b) had to c) must d) needn't
8. Employees accept the new conditions or be dismissed.
 a) will have to b) don't have to c) needn't d) can't
9. The higher the temperature, the the demand for ice cream.
 a) great b) greatest c) greatly d) greater
10. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find b) am going to find c) will find d) am finding
11. The presenter asked the writer about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk b) to talking c) talking d) talk
12. A company's logo to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant b) means c) meaning d) is meant
13. If you like it, ... it?
 a) you will buy b) would you have bought
 c) would you buy d) will you buy
14. If we had a map, we able to get out of here.
 a) shall be b) would be c) should have been d) would have been
15. This isn't my book. It's
 a) my sister b) from my sister c) of my sister's d) my sister's
16. They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.
 a) as if I were b) as if I would be c) as if I had d) as I am

ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can

a) run factories **b)** end your life **c)** make you happy **d)** darken your room

18 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician. **b)** The children. **c)** The parents. **d)** The neighbours.

19 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as

a) there is much electricity in it **b)** hot water can scald your skin

c) you may slip easily and become bedridden **d)** fire can break out at any time

20 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are

a) milk **b)** medicine **c)** fruit **d)** sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded? Mention two dangers.

.....

.....

.....

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) to kill someone by causing electricity to flow through their body.

b) to burn the skin with boiling liquid or steam.

.....

.....

.....

23 Why is the kitchen considered a dangerous place to cause accidents?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think is the most dangerous place at home? Why?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values. It helps people become useful members of the society. Parents and teachers have the chief responsibility for education.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This furniture is still in its condition, so it is valuable.
 a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting
2. The government must now deal the problem of high unemployment.
 a) in b) at c) with d) of
3. Social media have attracted because of their increasing popularity.
 a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals
4. In this programme, old soldiers talk about their of the war.
 a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries
5. The two little sisters arms happily as they walked to school.
 a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called
6. My brother is doing a in economics to have a promotion.
 a) journey b) course c) search d) trip
7. To get a cheap ticket, he book in advance.
 a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to
8. She earns at least as much Maher, and probably more.
 a) as b) than c) more d) of
9. This is my last day here. I to England tomorrow.
 a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't
10. The results were completely wrong. As a scientist she have planned the experiment more carefully.
 a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should
11. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult.
 a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed
12. If I had another 5000 pounds, I a car.
 a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy
13. That chocolate ice cream tastes
 a) deliciously b) more deliciously c) delicious d) the most deliciously
14. Samy has told us that he when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
 a) is working b) works c) will work d) will be working
15. I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.
 a) A friend of mine b) A friend of me c) One my friends d) A friend's
16. They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic.
 a) It must have b) There must be c) It must be d) There must have

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also *more compact*. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Humans fear that one day computers and robots
- **a)** are busier than humans
- **b)** are cleverer than humans
- **c)** will make humans jobless
- **d)** will make humans listen to certain noise

18 The BEST title for this passage would be
- **a)** Computers and Robots
- **b)** Old and New Computers.
- **c)** Robots are Security Guards
- **d)** The Electronic Invention

19 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as *more compact*.
- **a)** Huge.
- **b)** Cheaper.
- **c)** Smaller.
- **d)** Costly.

20 Which of the following statements in NOT TRUE?
- **a)** Robots are controlled by a computer.
- **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
- **c)** Robots do not get tired of working.
- **d)** Robots are used in factories in Japan.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did the first computers fill up almost the whole floor?

.....

.....

.....

ALADDIN Gem

22 Why do humans have to feed the computers with information and tell them what to do?

.....

.....

.....

23 Find words from the passage that give the meaning of:

a) expensive **b)** collect

.....

.....

.....

24 In your opinion, how would computers will be like in the future?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

26 **Translate into English:**

- عـلاوة علـى المناظر الطبيعية الخلابة والطقـس المعتدل تمتلك مصر العديد من الأعمال الهندسـية المذهلة القديمة والحديثـة لذلك تجذب الزائرين والسائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

"A country or city you would like very much to visit."

- Your name is Magdy and your e-mail address is: magdy4@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ayman and her e-mail address is: ayman_2020@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAYMAN Gem

Revision Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' during his health problems.
 a) support **b)** seduction **c)** neglect **d)** struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting
 a) accident **b)** event **c)** incidents **d)** process
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the space.
 a) readable **b)** acceptable **c)** available **d)** proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's is to provide food for homeless people.
 a) report **b)** procedure **c)** article **d)** aim
5. A spy is someone who against his country and give secrets to its enemy.
 a) innovates **b)** suspects **c)** plays **d)** plot
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started up and turning into a quarrel.
 a) warning **b)** cooling **c)** decreasing **d)** heating
7. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30.
 a) mustn't **b)** don't have to **c)** had to **d)** needn't
8. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the I have ever had.
 a) most enjoyable **b)** more enjoyable **c)** enjoyable **d)** less enjoyable
9. Hurry up! The conference in 20 minutes.
 a) will be beginning **b)** begins **c)** won't begin **d)** has begun
10. Ali's mother taught him and encouraged him to become a doctor.
 a) read **b)** to reading **c)** reading **d)** to read
11. She to speak Italian in an English class.
 a) is supposed **b)** is meant **c)** is not supposed **d)** is seemed
12. If we there, we would never have found what was happening.
 a) didn't go **b)** hadn't gone **c)** haven't gone **d)** weren't
13. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a) am not failing **b)** am not going to fail **c)** don't fail **d)** won't be failing
14. It's not beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
 a) much **b)** more **c)** the **d)** as
15. We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.
 a) all **b)** nothing **c)** no-one **d)** none
16. We watched TV all evening we didn't have anything better to do.
 a) because of **b)** while **c)** since **d)** when

ALADWA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years.

The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day.

The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 There are types of elephants in the world.

a) one **b)** two

c) three **d)** many

18 The Asian elephant can be found in

a) Indonesia **b)** America

c) Australia **d)** Holland

19 The synonym of the word "poaching" is

a) slaughtering **b)** immigrating

c) killing **d)** stealing

20 What happens to an orphan elephant?

a) It is looked after by another female elephant.

b) It is abandoned.

c) It is looked after by the whole herd.

d) It is killed.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How is the elephant similar to humans in terms of giving birth?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 There are similarities between the African and Asian elephants. Mention two.

.....

.....

.....

23 Give two reasons why elephants are captured alive.

.....

.....

.....

24 Why do you think the elephant is found only in Asia and Africa?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. That's why all governments try to develop it all the time.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- للرياضة أثر كبير فى محاربة مشـكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسـية لشـخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

- You bought a new TV, but it had a lot of problems after a week. Write to the company which sold it to you complaining and asking them to replace it for you. Your name is Ehab Ahmed Ibrahim. The company's e-mail address is: service@ted.eg.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWAM Gem

Revision Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling is Microsoft Office.
 a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help the wound.
 a) heal b) cure c) treat d) spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any before allowing upload and download.
 a) virus b) germ c) bacterium d) tumour
4. People living in town are not happy the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
 a) at b) with c) over d) in
5. I'll never Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
 a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
 a) contain b) involve c) enclose d) include
7. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) need to b) had to c) didn't have to d) mustn't
8. It's getting to find a good job.
 a) so more difficult b) more and more difficult
 c) more harder d) the most difficult
9. He on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
 a) will work b) works c) will have worked d) will be working
10. The information you sent have included details of courses taken at university.
 a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) may not
11. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He it.
 a) doesn't seem b) doesn't suppose c) wasn't meaning d) didn't mean
12. I would get up earlier, if there a good reason to.
 a) was b) have been c) is d) had been
13. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the cause of death among sea birds.
 a) more common b) common c) commonest d) commoner
14. Osama will be working in the garden while Hala
 a) will cook b) is cooking c) was cooking d) cooks
15. I asked two people the way to the station, but help me.
 a) either b) none c) neither d) both
16. I couldn't sleep very tired.
 a) although being b) in spite of being c) despite of being d) despite I was

ALADWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals *were the opposite of hers*. So Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how sally got her wish at last!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?

a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

18 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means

a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

19 The word "....." is the antonym of "curled up".

a) twisted **b)** bowed
c) straight **d)** bent

20 What was Sally's wish?

a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did Sally love to watch programs about animals?

.....

.....

.....

22 Why did Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 What do you think Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think happened to the cat?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this serious problem.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبة التطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood great problems for the local farmers.
 a) reasoned **b)** applied **c)** caused **d)** shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest of computer technology.
 a) poets **b)** editors **c)** explorers **d)** innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
 a) entertained **b)** delayed **c)** inspected **d)** trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and on with other classmates.
 a) went **b)** got **c)** came **d)** received
5. My mother has always remained to the values she learned as a child.
 a) useless **b)** unaffected **c)** faithful **d)** influenced
6. My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
 a) immune **b)** respiratory **c)** prohibited **d)** allowed
7. I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
 a) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** must
8. A Mercedes is one of the cars you can buy.
 a) more expensive **b)** expensive **c)** most expensive **d)** little expensive
9. My horoscope برج الحظ says that I an old friend this week.
 a) am going to meet **b)** am meeting **c)** meet **d)** will meet
10. The teacher wanted her students their homework before the new lesson.
 a) do **b)** to do **c)** doing **d)** to doing
11. Don't speak to the boss now. He to be angry about something.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** is meant **d)** supposed
12. they had much time, they would have studied better.
 a) If **b)** Were **c)** Had **d)** Have
13. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh next Saturday.
 a) ends **b)** are ending **c)** end **d)** will end
14. I chose this car as my favourite because it's all the ones I have driven.
 a) the fastest from **b)** the fastest of **c)** more faster than **d)** the fastest as
15. These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
 a) take off **b)** take them off **c)** take off them **d)** take it off
16. I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true.
 a) what was said **b)** what they said **c)** that they said **d)** they say

ALADWA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt. Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use *auditory* clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places.

People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The clocks are used to measure the

a) smaller units of time **b)** day

c) month **d)** year

18 What is the main idea of the third paragraph?

a) Why clocks are used.

b) How sundials work.

c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.

d) What types of clocks have been invented.

19 The synonym of "melt" is

a) dissolve **b)** harden

c) solidify **d)** freeze

20 The word "*auditory*" most closely means

a) related to machines **b)** related to numbers

c) related to hearing **d)** related to the sun

B) Answer the following questions:

21 If it weren't for clocks, what would the world be like?

.....

.....

.....

ALPHA Gem

22 How can airplanes depend on the clock?

.....

.....

.....

23 How are mechanical clocks different from those before?

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think we will use to measure time in the future?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة التى أكدت على دور المرأة وحقوقها مثل نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
 a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There was and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
 a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based figures from six different cities.
 a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by from the queen to the eldest son.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically by a team of top surgeons.
 a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. Asmaa have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
 a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
8. Hossam has been working and harder since he graduated.
 a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
9. Look at these big black clouds! It
 a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
10. This medicine went bad. you have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
11. Why are you late? You to be here at 9 o'clock.
 a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
12. If he should be late, we to go without him.
 a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
13. There are more accidents on this road because it's than the others.
 a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest
14. Next year, no doubt, more people the competition as the prize money increases.
 a) will enter b) are going to enter c) are entering d) will be entering
15. Robert away two or three times a year.
 a) is going usually b) goes usually c) is usually going d) usually goes
16. We by a loud noise during the night.
 a) woke up b) are woken c) were woken up d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the

a) light **b)** reflection **c)** eye **d)** brain

18 How does light travel?

a) In black waves. **b)** In strange waves. **c)** In straight waves. **d)** In reflected waves.

19 We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.

a) the mirror **b)** ourselves **c)** the light wave **d)** our eyes

20 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to

a) magnify, or make things larger

b) see ourselves through glasses

c) to see mountains in water

d) see things in the dark

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why can we see objects?

.....

.....

.....

22 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Why doesn't a lake filled with people boating and swimming act like a mirror?

.....

.....

.....

24 Which science specialises in studying light and reflection?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يختلف الناس فى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته لكنهم جميعًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- Write a blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
 a) perplexes **b)** denies **c)** lightens **d)** highlights
2. The new owners have changed the of the whole building.
 a) appear **b)** appearance **c)** appeared **d)** apparent
3. The child must be from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
 a) united **b)** separated **c)** kept **d)** stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to his toys with any other child.
 a) share **b)** divide **c)** spill **d)** unite
5. I feel really about forgetting my wife's birthday again.
 a) shy **b)** guilty **c)** innocent **d)** proud
6. The old woman her husband by only a few years.
 a) kept **b)** dissolved **c)** called **d)** survived
7. I'd like to know who up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
 a) cleans **b)** does clean **c)** will be cleaning **d)** will have cleaned
8. This is a dangerous tour. Children accompanied by an adult.
 a) mustn't be **b)** needn't have been **c)** must **d)** must be
9. We wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 a) must **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** have to
10. The expensive holidays are often the best.
 a) less **b)** lesser **c)** little **d)** least
11. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow dry and sunny.
 a) is being **b)** will be being **c)** will be **d)** will have been
12. You may be older than me, but that doesn't you're cleverer.
 a) mean **b)** seem **c)** supposed **d)** meaning
13. Had I realised what you intended, I my permission.
 a) wouldn't give **b)** will give **c)** would not have given **d)** won't give
14. We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an
 a) ability **b)** request **c)** permission **d)** suggestion
15. Galal in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
 a) lived **b)** has lived **c)** has been living **d)** is living
16. She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help
 a) laughing **b)** to laugh **c)** that she laughed **d)** laugh

ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seemed so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher. The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?

a) She wrote books. **b)** She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. **d)** She wrote novels.

18 Sara was called 'bookworm' because

a) she kept worms in her books
b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms
d) she loved to read

19 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?

a) One. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** None.

20 The phrase 'sold like hotcakes' means

a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did the publisher want to publish Sara's work?

.....
.....
.....

22 Why was Sara reluctant to write the novel at first?

.....
.....
.....

23 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) ashamed **b)** earlier

.....

.....

.....

24 What do you think the role of the family and friends in the person's success?

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- مع تناقص مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man a lot of weight when she was ill.
 a) missed **b)** lost **c)** won **d)** earned
2. The frozen-foods is in the back area of the shop.
 a) college **b)** centre **c)** section **d)** sale
3. The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home **b)** view **c)** seminar **d)** forum
4. Egypt has always had a good with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate **b)** relationship **c)** argument **d)** quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into **b)** off **c)** on **d)** away
6. It is known that iron with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers **b)** rejects **c)** reacts **d)** reforms
7. She drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** mustn't
8. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the
 a) more pretty **b)** most pretty **c)** prettiest **d)** pretty
9. They dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having **b)** will have **c)** are going to have **d)** have
10. Most teachers encourage their students harder.
 a) to work **b)** work **c)** working **d)** to working
11. When to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you **b)** you supposed **c)** you are supposed **d)** are you supposed
12. If she well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
 a) did **b)** does **c)** had done **d)** will do
13. Mr. Kareem early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring **b)** will retire **c)** is going to retire **d)** will have retired
14. His results are not his colleague's.
 a) so good like **b)** to good like **c)** as good as **d)** so good than
15. I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.
 a) go **b)** went **c)** had gone **d)** am going
16. The police officer stopped us and asked us where
 a) were we going **b)** are we going **c)** we are going **d)** we were going

ALAWWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.

There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs. They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall.

Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Dogs helped people go to America by

a) pulling sleds in the snow **b)** helping with farming

c) helping find things **d)** none of the previous answers

18 The best antonym for pet is

a) wild animal **b)** domestic animal

c) large animal **d)** friendly animal

19 A dog's fur is the dog's

a) nose **b)** eyes

c) hair **d)** ears

20 Straight hair is

a) curly **b)** long

c) brown **d)** not curly

B) Answer the following questions:

21 In what can all dogs do well?

.....

.....

.....

22 How old was the oldest dog?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 Dogs are useful animals. Give evidence.

.....

.....

.....

24 There are differences between dogs. Mention two.

.....

.....

.....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Although the internet has become the most important means for information and knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It also helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

.....

.....

.....

26 **Translate into English:**

- يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة كما يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

.....

.....

.....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWA Gem

Final Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by than by using force.
 a) persuade **b)** persuasion **c)** persuasive **d)** persuaded
2. The young architect is noises about starting his own business.
 a) making **b)** doing **c)** replying **d)** applying
3. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Dermatitis **b)** Hydroponics **c)** Astronomy **d)** Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
 a) photos **b)** images **c)** accounts **d)** decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of the customer about the condition of the car.
 a) accepting **b)** awarding **c)** honouring **d)** deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main during the storm.
 a) road **b)** technique **c)** course **d)** coarse
7. Your flat has been robbed! This that you have to report to the police.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** meant **d)** is meant
8. You come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** mustn't
9. My dog is than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
 a) bigger **b)** the biggest **c)** big **d)** biggest
10. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She!
 a) is slipping **b)** will slip **c)** is going to slip **d)** slips
11. He by the time he was four.
 a) won't swim **b)** could swim **c)** should swim **d)** mustn't have swum
12. We at home if it hadn't rained.
 a) would stay **b)** would have stayed **c)** wouldn't have stayed **d)** won't stay
13. In the last few months, competition has become
 a) much tougher **b)** more tough **c)** more tougher **d)** much more tougher
14. **A:** Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? **B:** Okay. I you there.
 a) will be seeing **b)** see **c)** will have seen **d)** will see
15. There's somebody walking behind us. I think
 a) we are being followed **b)** we are following
 c) we are being following **d)** we are followed
16. I had no a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.
 a) trouble to find **b)** difficulty finding
 c) difficulty to find **d)** trouble find

ALPHA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A material is what something is made of. There are 5 basic materials. Most things are made metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic. There are some other materials. But they are not used as much as these 5 materials.

Metal is very heavy. And it is very hard and strong. It usually feels cool when touched. We use metal to make forks, knives, keys and cars. We use it for these things because it is very strong.

Glass is very smooth. It feels cool to touch. It is not as heavy as metal. It is hard. But it is not strong. It breaks very easily! Then why do we use it? We use it because it is clear! You can see through glass! That's why we use it for windows and glasses.

Wood is lighter than metal and glass. It is not as strong as metal. But it is much stronger than glass. We use wood to make lots of things. Things made from wood are usually light and hard and strong. Chairs, pencils and tables are made from wood.

Cloth is very light. It is much lighter than wood. And it is very soft. We use cloth to make lots of things. For example, it is used to make clothing and blankets.

Plastic is also very light. But it is different from cloth. Sometimes it is soft. And sometimes it is hard. Plastic can be used to make thin plastic bags. These are light, soft, and strong. But plastic can also be used to make bicycle helmets. These are light, hard, and strong. A helmet and a bag seem different. But they are both made from plastic.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Which sentence from the passage best describes the main idea?

a) We use cloth to make lots of things. **b)** Metal is very heavy.
c) There are 5 basic materials. **d)** A helmet and a bag seem different.

18 According to the passage, which of these things is a material?

a) Chairs. **b)** Clothing. **c)** Windows. **d)** Wood.

19 According to the passage, how does glass feel?

a) Smooth and cool. **b)** Warm and soft.
c) Light and hard. **d)** Sharp and heavy.

20 In paragraph 4, the passage says, "Wood is lighter than metal and glass." What is the main purpose of this sentence?

a) To explain something. **b)** To recommend something.
c) To compare something. **d)** To demonstrate something.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What are the five materials mentioned in the passage?

.....

.....

.....

22 Which material would you use if you wanted to make something that was strong and very light?

.....

.....

.....

ALADWA Gem

23 In this passage, we learn about 5 different materials. Which of these materials do you think is best? Why?

.....

.....

.....

24 What materials are used if we want to make a wardrobe with a mirror in the middle?

.....

.....

.....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

.....

.....

.....

26 Translate into English:

- يمثل العام الدراسى الجديد تحديًا كبيرًا فى ظل استمرار جائحة فيروس كورونا حيث تفتح المدارس والجامعات أبوابها للطلاب مع اتخاذ كل الإجراءات اللازمة للوقاية من هذا المرض الخطير.

.....

.....

.....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

Your friend has been using social media and neglecting social relationship with his friends and relatives. He regrets this and asks you to help him make up for it.
Your name is Wael and your e-mail address is: wael30@gmail.com.Your friend's name is Sameh and his e-mail address is: sameh100@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALADWAA Gem

Answers to

Final Revision & Tests

Booklet

Final Revision (1)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sustainable
2. a) celebrated
3. d) prepared
4. b) crops
5. c) infection
6. b) variety
7. a) traditional
8. d) perform
9. b) agriculture
10. c) out
11. d) innovations
12. a) react
13. a) severe
14. b) techniques
15. c) Livestock
16. d) occasion
17. d) production
18. c) together
19. b) served
20. a) amount
21. c) argument
22. d) available
23. a) bleeding
24. b) boosted
25. c) chemical
26. c) collaboration
27. d) efficiently
28. b) examination
29. c) extracts
30. a) Hydroponics
31. b) immune
32. d) injury
33. c) link
34. a) muscles
35. b) native
36. c) option
37. b) performance
38. d) persuasive
39. d) responsibilities
40. c) solution
41. a) do
42. c) down
43. c) effective
44. d) infection
45. b) tasty
46. a) around
47. b) gets
48. c) severe
49. b) reaction
50. d) take
51. b) place
52. c) productive
53. b) press
54. a) list
55. c) announcement
56. d) kit
57. a) sustainable
58. d) else
59. a) sign
60. c) make

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. Agriculture
2. Nations
3. hunger
4. food
5. member
6. countries

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. types
2. tasty
3. dishes
4. spicy
5. serve
6. menu

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. health
2. situation
3. infection
4. effective
5. hygiene
6. rules

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. bleeding
2. protective
3. injured
4. area
5. remove
6. bandage

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) doesn't have to
2. c) had to
3. a) didn't have to
4. d) must
5. a) had to
6. b) didn't have to
7. d) don't have to
8. d) mustn't
9. a) has to
10. c) had to
11. d) mustn't
12. b) don't need to
13. a) must
14. c) had to
15. b) needn't
16. a) mustn't
17. c) need to
18. d) have to
19. b) have to
20. A) mustn't
21. a) the least
22. c) most intelligent
23. d) the better
24. b) happier
25. c) most frightening
26. d) least expensive
27. a) as tall as
28. b) most inspiring
29. a) more nervous than
30. b) biggest
31. d) as modern as
32. c) most challenging
33. a) older than
34. c) more interesting
35. a) as tall as
36. d) more quickly
37. b) Less
38. a) fewer
39. c) harder
40. d) more
41. a) is going to fall
42. d) will be working
43. a) meets
44. c) will be doing
45. a) will be driving
46. d) are you going to do
47. b) will have
48. b) will be organising
49. c) are going to own
50. c) Will you be going
51. d) is going to hit
52. c) will be leaving
53. b) am having
54. a) opens
55. d) am going to make
56. c) is visiting
57. a) starts
58. c) is going to become
59. d) 'll be using
60. a) is leaving

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. has to
2. had
3. has to
4. be followed
5. must
6. needn't

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. larger
2. more modern
3. younger
4. friendliest
5. wide
6. cleanest

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. be
2. will
3. will
4. ask
5. am going to tell
6. be having

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** beauty
2. **b)** deceived
3. **a)** duty
4. **d)** away
5. **b)** guilty
6. **a)** inheritance
7. **c)** loyalty
8. **d)** title
9. **b)** trust
10. **c)** exited
11. **b)** The daughter who loves him best
12. **a)** More than health, beauty and riches
13. **b)** Give his kingdom to his two other daughters
14. **a)** That he has made a bad decision
15. **b)** The King of France
16. **d)** get his father's title and inheritance.
17. **c)** keep the king waiting when he needs something.
18. **a)** coldly
19. **b)** help the king
20. **d)** Goneril complained about his soldiers

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** celebrated
2. **a)** traditional
3. **a)** reacted
4. **c)** wise
5. **d)** cell
6. **b)** out
7. **b)** mustn't
8. **c)** don't need to
9. **d)** had to
10. **c)** have to
11. **c)** the largest
12. **b)** the most important
13. **d)** the better
14. **b)** leaves
15. **c)** will be working
16. **d)** will increase

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** one
18. **b)** The person's body temperature goes down
19. **c)** sleepy
20. **d)** certain brain activity.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. We shouldn't consume caffeine late in the day and we should reduce irregular or long daytime naps.
22. 1- Rapid 2- cycle
23. sleep helps you to function properly; sleep helps you to learn; sleep helps you to create new memories; sleep helps you concentrate; and sleep helps you respond quickly.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- With the continuous spread of COVID-19, the Ministry of Education resorted to drawing up/designing a plan to combine school education with online learning so that students can go back to schools this year.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- إن السلام بين الأمم حيوى، فهو يعطى كل بلد الفرصة لتنفيذ خطط التنمية الخاصة بها، كما يوفر المال الذى ينفق على الحروب والأسلحة المدمرة/أسلحة الدمار.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** infection
2. **b)** techniques
3. **c)** together
4. **a)** foolish
5. **b)** electric
6. **d)** tell
7. **c)** don't have to
8. **a)** mustn't
9. **d)** needn't\ must
10. **a)** worst
11. **d)** the best
12. **c)** longer
13. **a)** more complex
14. **c)** is going to explode
15. **d)** will walk
16. **b)** will be sitting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** A special water with chemicals poured onto it
18. **a)** The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
19. **c)** factory
20. **d)** scientific

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Soda cans, magazines, cereal boxes, bottles of juice
22. Recycling allows items to continue their lives as something else.
23. Recycling reduces waste. Recycling saves energy.
24. 1- disappear 2- bin

25. **Translate into English:**

- It is said that literature and art are the mirror of society which reflects its civilization and values which develop over the ages. Therefore, the state pays attention to them and tries to provide the necessary support to develop them.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يجب أن نكون متفائلين ونفكر دائمًا فى الجوانب الجيدة فى حياتنا، فالتشاؤم هو عدو قاتل يهزم آمالنا ويعوق طموحاتنا.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** perform
2. **a)** severe
3. **d)** production
4. **b)** income
5. **a)** signs
6. **c)** space
7. **c)** need to
8. **b)** must
9. **d)** don't have to
10. **a)** as big as
11. **b)** friendlier
12. **c)** harder
13. **d)** leaves
14. **a)** is going to collapse
15. **c)** will phone
16. **b)** will be having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** would have more money
18. **a)** money
19. **c)** good health
20. **c)** how much smoking costs the UK

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Smokers cost it money when they don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick. When they die, they stop paying taxes.
22. Fire started by cigarettes kills fifteen hundred people yearly and injures another four thousand.
23. 1- injure 2- value
24. The student's own answer.

25. **Translate into English:**

- Many experts warn of the overuse of mobile phones because this will lead to serious social, psychological and health problems especially for children.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- بالإضافة إلى كونها مصدرًا للدخل القومى تقوى السياحة العلاقات بين أمم العالم، كما تساعد على نشر السلام والحب والتفاهم.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Final Revision (2)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Abbreviations
2. a) banner
3. d) consulting
4. c) cookies
5. a) downloading
6. b) emoji
7. c) fire
8. d) frowned
9. b) innovator
10. c) misunderstand
11. a) pile
12. d) posted
13. c) reliable
14. b) sighed
15. a) subscribe
16. b) tone
17. d) updated
18. c) upgrade
19. b) views
20. a) beg
21. c) admitted
22. c) basic
23. d) forum
24. b) highlighted
25. c) install
26. a) comment
27. d) expression
28. b) headline
29. c) online
30. a) positive
31. b) procedure
32. c) recognizable
33. d) privacy
34. c) spread
35. b) symbol
36. a) version
37. c) donation
38. b) addicted
39. a) characters
40. d) experiences
41. a) change
42. b) with
43. c) influential
44. d) waste
45. a) memories
46. c) do
47. c) report
48. d) hanging
49. b) get
50. d) keep
51. b) collection
52. c) fallen
53. a) conference
54. b) fake
55. d) on
56. c) consultative
57. a) criticize
58. c) interest
59. a) effective
60. b) treatment

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. rise
2. media
3. abbreviations
4. emojis
5. linguists
6) save

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. post
2. online
3. download
4. privacy
5. passwords
6. website

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. interests
2. debate
3. cons
4. real
5. close
6) hang

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) could see
2. b) should
3. c) could have bought
4. d) to buy
5. a) could
6. d) couldn't
7. a) shouldn't
8. b) not to open
9. d) could
10. c) to know
11. a) not to leave
12. b) could
13. c) could drive
14. d) to arrive
15. a) shouldn't
16. d) couldn't
17. b) not to spend
18. c) could play
19. a) could have helped
20. d) not to swim
21. b) seems
22. d) are supposed
23. a) are meant
24. c) seems
25. d) were supposed
26. c) were supposed
27. a) are meant
28. d) seems
29. b) is meant
30. d) seems
31. c) was I supposed
32. a) is meant
33. c) seem
34. b) is supposed
35. d) means
36. b) seems
37. a) is supposed
38. d) means
39. a) seem
40. c) forbidden
41. d) had been
42. c) were
43. a) is
44. b) in case of
45. d) Knew
46. c) would have joined
47. a) don't exercise
48. b) found
49. a) had
50. d) provided that
51. c) stay
52. d) didn't
53. b) on condition that
54. a) will have to
55. a) were
56. c) wouldn't
57. c) would have passed
58. d) feel
59. a) would happen
60. b) had phoned

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. supposed
2. joined
3. could
4. had
5. should
6. being

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. seems
2. supposed
3. have
4. seems
5. to look
6. meant

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. weren't
2. wouldn't know
3. hadn't been
4. had posted
5. wouldn't have done
6. become

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** apologize
2. **a)** disbelief
3. **c)** faithful
4. **d)** forgive
5. **b)** lightning
6. **a)** patience
7. **d)** plotting
8. **c)** pretended
9. **a)** sheltering
10. **c)** straw
11. **d)** To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. **a)** beggar
13. **b)** he was in his service.
14. **c)** half
15. **d)** Cordelia
16. **a)** To win his trust.

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** download
2. **b)** emoji
3. **c)** tone
4. **d)** persuaded
5. **b)** formal
6. **c)** online
7. **d)** shouldn›t
8. **a)** are supposed
9. **c)** to leave
10. **d)** could
11. **c)** could have meant
12. **a)** seemed
13. **b)** gave
14. **c)** mean
15. **b)** could
16. **d)** will phone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** winter is the best season of the year.
18. **a)** tilted away from the sun.
19. **a)** leaning
20. **d)** butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Squirrels and raccoons gather extra food in the fall so they have enough to eat during the

22. 1- Migrate 2- hibernate

23. You can ice skate, place ice hockey, or go fishing on a frozen pond or lake.

24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- The government is working on setting up/ building many youth centres and providing them with modern facilities to make it easier for them to practise sport and spend their free time usefully.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- للتليفزيون ببرامجه المتنوعة أثر كبير على عقول الناس فى كل مكان؛ لذا أصبح وسيلة هامة لتشكيل الرأى العام.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** frowned
2. **d)** post
3. **b)** sigh
4. **c)** upgrade
5. **a)** room
6. **d)** pile
7. **c)** were meant
8. **b)** to read
9. **c)** shouldn't
10. **d)** couldn't
11. **b)** seems
12. **a)** are not supposed
13. **d)** would watch
14. **b)** was meant
15. **a)** may rise
16. **c)** as long as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** awake
18. **c)** terrifying
19. **a)** happy
20. **d)** clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- usher 2- miraculously

22. He was burly, kind and clever. He seems to have a lot of experience.

23. I think they felt a lot of pain.

24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Economists say that attracting foreign investments is one of the most important solutions of the economic problems which we suffer from. This urges the government to offer more facilities for investors.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتأقلم بفاعلية للبيئة؛ ولذلك يجب أن يتم تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** consult
2. **c)** fire
3. **c)** reliable
4. **a)** begging
5. **b)** spy
6. **c)** subscribed
7. **d)** to build
8. **a)** could
9. **a)** ought to
10. **c)** should
11. **c)** seems
12. **b)** is supposed
13. **a)** means
14. **a)** would send
15. **c)** has
16. **c)** would have got

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** voices
18. **b)** history and stories
19. **c)** animal tricksters
20. **a)** advanced

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It's part of their tradition.
22. A character who plays tricks and jokes on others.
23. If they honour the trickster, maybe it won't play tricks on them.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Nowadays, teachers should keep up with the new methods of education and using modern technology which has become an important part of everyday life.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات الصناعية والزراعية فى صعيد مصر مما يؤدى إلى توفير فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Practice Test

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** prepared
2. **b)** salty
3. **c)** perform
4. **d)** lungs
5. **b)** carols
6. **a)** highlight
7. **d)** don't have
8. **b)** will be talking
9. **b)** didn't have to
10. **a)** most popular
11. **a)** are not supposed
12. **d)** unless
13. **b)** couldn't have liked the food
14. **a)** to stay
15. **c)** will help
16. **a)** fewer

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** Nothing.
18. **c)** 1972.
19. **a)** Light.
20. **c)** be a sustainable food

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air.
22. Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- يتكون الجهاز المناعى من خلايا وأعضاء فى جسمنا تعمل معًا لتحمينا من العدوى والأمراض والجهاز المناعى يحافظ على صحتنا؛ لأن الناس الذين لديهم جهاز مناعى قوى يمرضون بدرجة أقل غالبًا.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Everybody makes mistakes, but most of us don't learn from their different mistakes. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all should acquire as the person who doesn't learn from his mistakes never succeeds.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) abbreviation
2. a) misunderstood
3. d) updated
4. a) mean
5. b) infection
6. c) crop
7. b) should have phoned
8. a) to open
9. c) had to
10. c) had passed
11. a) the best
12. a) to do
13. d) had apologised
14. b) Could
15. b) are going to increase
16. c) more difficult

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) He lived in a different country.
18. a) It seemed to be good.
19. b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
20. a) From an online guide.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved.
22. The word "hazardous" in the text means dangerous or risky.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمكن أن تستفيد من استخدام الإنترنت إذا كنت حريصًا، ولكن لا يجب أن تشارك كلمة السر الخاصة بك مع أى حد، فلو فعلت فسيكون قادرًا على الاطلاع على معلوماتك الخاصة.

26. Translate into English:

- The labour market and the international economy all over the world have been greatly affected by the Corona Pandemic. The daily labour was harmed and many jobs which can be done at home have emerged and online shopping has spread much.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** react
2. **c)** torch
3. **a)** apologise
4. **c)** pretended
5. **b)** posts
6. **c)** tone
7. **a)** mustn't
8. **b)** happier
9. **c)** will be driving
10. **d)** hadn't
11. **a)** seems
12. **c)** must have stolen
13. **b)** am going to paint
14. **b)** more
15. **b)** were
16. **b)** He is difficult to understand

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** be aware of
18. **b)** keeping in touch with
19. **c)** a new informal word in English
20. **d)** easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because people have used them in their daily lives.
22. It hasn't changed to make spelling easier.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمر العالم بالكثير من الجائحات مثل كوفيد-١٩، لذلك يجب أن نتبع قواعد النظافة لتجنب الإصابة/العدوى بهذه الأمراض الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Home education is one of the ways with which students can learn and acquire knowledge with the help of teachers online. However, this lacks teamwork and don't develop skills.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Final Test

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** sign
2. **d)** amount
3. **b)** agriculture
4. **a)** linguist
5. **c)** reliable
6. **d)** races
7. **b)** mustn't
8. **a)** has to
9. **d)** seems
10. **a)** less
11. **c)** as
12. **b)** will be staying
13. **a)** to believe
14. **d)** Could
15. **a)** which
16. **c)** haven't had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
18. **c)** making a final statement.
19. **a)** by making observations.
20. **b)** start

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries!
22. they are the experiment data
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أجبـر هجـوم فيروس كورونـا المعروف بـكوفيد-١٩ الحكومات على فرض إجـراءات احترازيـة صارمة؛ حيث قاموا بإغـلاق المدارس والجامعات وأماكن الترفيه، كما قاموا بفرض حظر التجول.

26. Translate into English:

- Because of the big agricultural projects in Egypt in the last few years, Egypt's agricultural products exports to all world countries have greatly increased. This has contributed to the increase in the national income.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** begged
2. **a)** kit
3. **c)** celebrate
4. **d)** sustainable
5. **b)** formal
6. **a)** wasted
7. **c)** had to
8. **d)** have to
9. **a)** spicier
10. **b)** hottest
11. **c)** won't be waiting
12. **a)** could
13. **c)** is supposed
14. **d)** had
15. **a)** I hope not.
16. **b)** do you

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** properly and safely
18. **a)** have working brakes and lights.
19. **c)** accessible
20. **d)** Both A and B.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. we should not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. we must not fool around while in the bus.
22. we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.
23. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.
24. I think if we use them carefully, we will be able to use them for a long time. If we use them carelessly, we will never be able to use them again.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن الغش وسيلة غير أمينة للحصول على النجاح؛ لذلك يتم اتخاذ إجراءات صارمة/ حازمة عن طريق وزارة التربية والتعليم لمنع الغش.

26. Translate into English:

- The crisis of the Novel Corona virus has shown the importance of cooperation between countries to solve the different problems that the world faces. Searching for a vaccine for this virus has become one of its important problems.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** download
2. **c)** fired
3. **b)** profile
4. **b)** severe
5. **c)** articles
6. **a)** livestock
7. **a)** didn't have to
8. **b)** needn't
9. **d)** simpler
10. **b)** will be having
11. **c)** am going to be
12. **d)** mean
13. **a)** gets
14. **c)** to visit
15. **c)** doing
16. **a)** Having found

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** the first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest
18. **d)** ceremony for crowning a king or queen
19. **a)** in Asia
20. **d)** Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzig Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing

B) Answer the following questions:

21. No, we do not know the name of the first person to reach the top. They told reporters they reached the summit together as a team.
22. 1- ascent 2- failed
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- تريح الموسيقى أعصابنا وتجدد طاقاتنا، كما تلهمنا بالشجاعة التى تملؤنا بالأمل وتعالج العقول وتريح الأرواح المضطربة.

26. Translate into English:

- Tourism has an important role in the economy of Egypt. It provides many job opportunities and it is the second earner of foreign currency which Egypt needs.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** basic
2. **b)** spread
3. **c)** employers
4. **a)** scan
5. **c)** techniques
6. **d)** questionnaire
7. **b)** might have won
8. **c)** mustn't
9. **b)** as
10. **d)** will show
11. **a)** could
12. **d)** seem
13. **b)** Should he be
14. **c)** largest
15. **d)** not go
16. **d)** Canada or the United States

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** The explorer's trick to be set free
18. **c)** an eclipse
19. **b)** astronomy
20. **d)** groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage.
22. He knew that there was an eclipse and used it as a trick to be set free.
23. I think they were cruel people or they thought he was going to harm them. Or The student's answer
24. I think he was very clever to make the people give him what he wanted

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- كثيـر مـن مدننا القديمة لا تناسـب الحياة الحديثة، فهى تتكون من مجموعة متنوعة من المبانى والشـوارع الضيقة، وتمتلئ بعوادم البنزين والضوضاء التى تؤثر على حياة الناس.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Egypt is the gift of the Nile. Without it, Egypt would be a barren desert. Therefore/So, we should keep it and rationalize our consumption of water and this will help us face the crisis of the Renaissance Dam.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** variety
2. **a)** connected
3. **d)** install
4. **b)** mind
5. **b)** fire
6. **a)** privacy
7. **d)** needn't
8. **c)** most difficult
9. **b)** will play
10. **a)** to ride
11. **d)** is supposed
12. **b)** hadn't wasted
13. **c)** will be walking
14. **d)** would look
15. **a)** to going
16. **c)** such a long time

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** Three
18. **a)** All the writer's neighbours are bad.
19. **b)** Praising
20. **d)** the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- intrude 2- acknowledgement
22. They walk straight past without noticing others. No one of them nod their head . They are not interested in knowing their neighbours.
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر شهرة؛ حيث يزيد عدد الناس الذين يستطيعون الدخول على الكمبيوتر والإنترنت، وكان الحل الوحيد للطلاب ليستكملوا دراستهم أثناء أزمة كوفيد١٩.

26. Translate into English:

- Science fiction and action movies achieve great profits all over the world because young people admire them whereas romantic movies has become at the bottom of the office box in many countries of the world.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** bleed
2. **c)** get
3. **d)** evidence
4. **b)** title
5. **a)** consult
6. **b)** character
7. **d)** don't have to
8. **a)** didn't have to
9. **b)** most exciting
10. **d)** reaches
11. **c)** could
12. **b)** means
13. **c)** will give
14. **c)** Had
15. **c)** to driving
16. **a)** enough money to go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** work values
18. **a)** meeting a deadline
19. **d)** struggle
20. **d)** sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They might accept jobs that don't fit their work values
22. people get nervous and make mistakes.
23. Skillful and cool
24. The student's opinion and giving reasons

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إحدى مشكلاتنا البيئية هى ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض، فالأمطار الغزيرة التى شاهدناها مؤخرًا هى تحذير للإنسان لكى يوقف تلويث الغلاف الجوى.

26. Translate into English:

- Egypt gives a great example of religious tolerance through the peaceful co-existence of Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years. It protected it from sectarian strife over the ages.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** piles
2. **a)** titles
3. **c)** stay
4. **d)** traditional
5. **b)** investing
6. **c)** advantage
7. **a)** needn't go
8. **b)** more tolerant
9. **d)** are you wearing
10. **c)** not to climb
11. **c)** seems
12. **a)** were I to know
13. **b)** the widest
14. **a)** will be playing
15. **b)** to reserve
16. **b)** since I last saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** she was violent.
18. **a)** I stopped breathing
19. **b)** did nothing
20. **d)** kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21. She is dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness.
22. He isn't sure what she will do. Also she smells terrible up close.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يجب على كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعى مع التسامح ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

26. Translate into English:

- Whatever your future ambition is, you must/should work hard and patiently in order to achieve it. But remember that good planning also helps you with that.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Targeted
2. **c)** out
3. **b)** record
4. **c)** boosting
5. **d)** respect
6. **a)** rural
7. **a)** longer
8. **b)** have to
9. **c)** will be waiting
10. **b)** should
11. **d)** supposed
12. **a)** hadn't helped
13. **b)** most useful
14. **b)** leaves
15. **c)** come
16. **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** his childhood
18. **a)** Knowledgeable
19. **d)** the things that happened in a past time
20. **c)** hobby

B) Answer the following questions:

21. story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that he finds interesting.
22. Through reading, the person can avoid diseases. Also the person does not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the dangerous animals. He/ She can read all about them in a book.
23. 1- cope with 2- informed
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- فى الماضى كانت التجارة على نطاق صغير، لكن اليوم تطورت وزادت التجارة بشكل كبير حيث تنقل البضائع بسرعة وبأمان.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Many world countries suffer from the problem of refugees whom wars, fights and economic problems force to leave their countries looking for a better life.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** headlines
2. **a)** keep
3. **d)** improved
4. **d)** image
5. **a)** examination
6. **c)** attractive
7. **b)** had to
8. **a)** will have to
9. **d)** greater
10. **c)** will find
11. **a)** to talk
12. **d)** is meant
13. **d)** will you buy
14. **b)** would be
15. **d)** my sister's
16. **a)** as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** end your life
18. **a)** the electrician
19. **c)** You may slip easily and become bedridden.
20. **d)** sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.
22. 1- electrocute 2- scald
23. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas-cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns.
24. Student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن التربية/التعليم عملية يكتسب بها الناس المعرفة والمهارات والقيم، كما تساعد الناس أن يصبحوا أفرادًا نافعين فى المجتمع، وللآباء والمعلمين المسئولية الرئيسية للتعليم.

26. Translate into English:

- Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes causes the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** original
2. **c)** with
3. **c)** advertisers
4. **a)** memories
5. **c)** linked
6. **b)** course
7. **d)** had to
8. **a)** as
9. **a)** am going back
10. **d)** should
11. **b)** seems
12. **c)** could buy
13. **c)** delicious
14. **d)** will be working
15. **a)** A friend of mine
16. **b)** There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** will make humans jobless.
18. **a)** Computers and Robots
19. **c)** Smaller
20. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because they were huge.
22. Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
23. 1- Costly 2- assemble
24. The student's answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى، إلا أن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها، ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموًا فى السنوات القادمة.

26. **Translate into English:**

- In addition to the marvelous scenery and moderate climate, Egypt has a lot of fascinating ancient and modern architectural works which attract visitors and tourists from all over the world.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** support
2. **b)** event
3. **c)** available
4. **d)** aim
5. **d)** plot
6. **d)** heating
7. **c)** had to
8. **a)** most enjoyable
9. **b)** begins
10. **d)** to read
11. **c)** is not supposed
12. **b)** hadn't gone
13. **b)** am not going to fail
14. **d)** as
15. **d)** none
16. **c)** since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** two
18. **a)** Indonesia
19. **d)** stealing
20. **a)** It is looked after by another female elephant

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
22. They live in herds and have the same diet.
23. 1- Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market.
 2- For domestic use, such as tourist attractions.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال؛ لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت.

26. Translate into English:

- Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** application
2. **a)** heal
3. **a)** virus
4. **b)** with
5. **d)** forgive
6. **a)** contain
7. **a)** need to
8. **b)** more and more difficult
9. **d)** will be working
10. **b)** should
11. **d)** didn't mean
12. **a)** was
13. **c)** commonest
14. **b)** is cooking
15. **c)** neither
16. **b)** in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** Animals
18. **a)** She was against owning a cat at home.
19. **c)** Straight
20. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It was because Sally loved animals.
22. Her mother didn't have a love for animals.
23. She heard a mewing sound
24. It was knocked down by a car.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم، وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/ So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** caused
2. **d)** innovators
3. **a)** entertained
4. **b)** got
5. **c)** faithful
6. **a)** immune
7. **d)** must
8. **c)** most expensive
9. **d)** will meet
10. **b)** to do
11. **a)** seems
12. **c)** Had
13. **a)** ends
14. **b)** the fastest of
15. **b)** take them off
16. **c)** that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** smaller units of time
18. **d)** What types of clocks have been invented
19. **a)** dissolve
20. **c)** related to hearing

B) Answer the following questions:

21. I think it would be a mess.
22. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock
23. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا، كما كانت أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

26. Translate into English:

- The history of the feminist movement in Egypt is full of/ abundant with many great successful models who confirmed women's role and rights such as Nabwiya Musa and Aisha Abdel Rahman.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** two-week
2. **b)** arrival
3. **a)** algae
4. **c)** on
5. **a)** inheritance
6. **c)** extracted
7. **c)** has got to
8. **d)** harder
9. **b)** is going to rain
10. **c)** should
11. **b)** were supposed
12. **a)** will have
13. **c)** narrower
14. **a)** will enter
15. **d)** usually goes
16. **c)** were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** brain
18. **c)** in straight waves
19. **b)** ourselves
20. **a)** magnify, or make things larger

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
22. They bounce directly back to our eyes.
23. because the surface must be smooth and still to create a reflection.
24. Physics

25. Translate into Arabic:

- لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعى بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعى بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

26. Translate into English:

- People differ in the kind/type of food they prefer and the way it is cooked and even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for the delicious food and the high nutritional value.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** highlights
2. **b)** appearance
3. **b)** separated
4. **a)** share
5. **b)** guilty
6. **d)** survived
7. **c)** will be cleaning
8. **d)** must be
9. **b)** don't have to
10. **d)** least
11. **c)** will be
12. **a)** mean
13. **c)** would not have given
14. **d)** suggestion
15. **a)** lived
16. **a)** laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** She read books
18. **d)** she loved to read
19. **d)** none
20. **a)** the books were selling very well

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because the publisher felt that Sara had the talent to write a novel.

22. Because she wasn't confident she could do it.

23. 1- proud 2- later

24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- للجميع فى المجتمع الحق بأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.

26. Translate into English:

- With the decrease of the area of agricultural land to be used for other purposes all over the world, it has become necessary for scientists to search for new ways to provide food for the increasing population.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** lost
2. **c)** section
3. **d)** forum
4. **b)** relationship
5. **d)** away
6. **c)** reacts
7. **b)** had to
8. **c)** prettiest
9. **a)** will be having
10. **a)** to work
11. **d)** are you supposed
12. **b)** does
13. **c)** is going to retire
14. **c)** as good as
15. **b)** went
16. **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **A)** pulling sleds in the snow.
18. **a)** wild animal
19. **C)** hair
20. **D)** not curly.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Hear and smell
22. 24 years old
23. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend." They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.
24. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs.
 Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة إلا أن الإرهابيون يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة، كما يساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Learning foreign languages help us understand the modern cultural and scientific trends.
 It also helps us keep up with the great progress in different scientific and technological ways.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** persuasion
2. **a)** making
3. **b)** Hydroponics
4. **b)** images
5. **d)** deceiving
6. **c)** course
7. **b)** means
8. **c)** must
9. **a)** bigger
10. **c)** is going to slip
11. **b)** could swim
12. **c)** wouldn't have stayed
13. **a)** much tougher
14. **d)** will see
15. **a)** we are being followed
16. **b)** difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **C)** They are wood, cloth, plastic, glass, and metal.
18. **D)** wood
19. **A)** smooth and cool
20. **C)** to compare something

B) Answer the following questions:

21. metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic
22. wood
23. The student's answer
24. Wood and glass

25. Translate into Arabic:

- التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير وبعقلانية عما نفعل وما نعتقد، كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

26. Translate into English:

- The new school year represents/is a great challenge with the continuous spread of Corona Virus. Schools and universities open with all the precautionary measures to prevent this serious disease.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

ALADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 20

1. advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
 a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging with some friends.
 a) on **b)** in **c)** out **d)** at
3. British Airways has a very good safety Accidents are rare on their flights.
 a) prize **b)** record **c)** revision **d)** medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product.
 a) pulling **b)** depriving **c)** boosting **d)** discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much for his successful football career.
 a) disrespect **b)** rudeness **c)** affection **d)** respect
6. At the end of the 17th century, England was still, depending mainly on agriculture.
 a) rural **b)** urban **c)** space **d)** spicy
7. Thanks to the efforts of the police, the terrorist was arrested.
 a) call **b)** ceiling **c)** calling **d)** cell
8. You can use this website in songs for free.
 a) downloading **b)** loading **c)** uploading **d)** overloading
9. It is really impolite to argue your parents. You shouldn't do this.
 a) at **b)** with **c)** about **d)** over
10. I like out with my old friend Samy. He has a great sense of humor.
 a) improving **b)** removing **c)** hurting **d)** hanging
11. The bigger the flat is, the time she takes to clean it.
 a) longer **b)** longest **c)** long **d)** more long
12. I often work at the weekend to get everything done.
 a) mustn't **b)** have to **c)** don't have to **d)** didn't have to
13. I for my results all the next month.
 a) wait **b)** will wait **c)** will be waiting **d)** will be waited
14. Why did you leave the exam room? You have checked your answers more thoroughly.
 a) shouldn't **b)** should **c)** must **d)** oughtn't
15. I'm to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow, but I think I'm going down with flu.
 a) seemed **b)** suppose **c)** seem **d)** supposed
16. I would have been in bad trouble, if she me.
 a) hadn't helped **b)** weren't **c)** is **d)** will be

17 The mobile phone must be one of the inventions of all time.
a) useful **b)** most useful **c)** less useful **d)** more useful

18 We have to hurry. The train in five minutes.
a) has left **b)** leaves **c)** will have left **d)** won't leave

19 I didn't hear you You must have been very quiet.
a) came **b)** to come **c)** come **d)** to coming

20 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was journey.
a) three hours **b)** three hour **c)** a three-hours **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting. This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way. So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

21 The writer has liked reading since
a) his graduation **b)** his childhood
c) his marriage **d)** his youth

22 Through reading, the person becomes
a) knowledgeable **b)** available
c) famous **d)** honourable

23 The word "bygone" means
a) the things that will happen in the future
b) the things that happen daily
c) the things that will never happen
d) the things that happened in a past time

24 In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a
a) disaster **b)** responsibility
c) hobby **d)** danger

25 The writer likes to read

a) stories
b) magazines
c) newspapers
d) all of the previous

26 Reading can help people medically because

a) readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
b) readers can avoid diseases by learning things the hard way
c) readers can avoid diseases through going to jungle
d) readers can catch diseases to know that they can kill

27 According to the passage, people can cope with living through

a) buying books
b) working abroad
c) reading about life facts
d) none of the previous

28 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a) Time.
b) Reading.
c) Books.
d) World.

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

The immune system is made up of special organs, cells and chemicals in our bodies. They work together to protect us from infections and diseases.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدى بالضرورة إلى نتائج سيئة فالتعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- Your favourite social networking site.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 2

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper around the world.
 a) addresses **b)** headquarters **c)** headlines **d)** backlines
2. I couldn't in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep **b)** leave **c)** depart **d)** pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't
 a) proved **b)** approved **c)** disapproved **d)** improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo **b)** location **c)** site **d)** image
5. A specialist did a full heart for the patient before the operation.
 a) examination **b)** process **c)** intention **d)** surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are to many people.
 a) attract **b)** attraction **c)** attractive **d)** attracted
7. All the tourists admired the of the beaches in Hurghada.
 a) stability **b)** rudeness **c)** beauty **d)** surprise
8. The restaurant owners were by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted **b)** deceived **c)** honoured **d)** awarded
9. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR?
 a) prepare **b)** make **c)** perform **d)** act
10. Smoking is very bad for the respiratory system as it affects man's badly.
 a) muscle **b)** cell **c)** surface **d)** lungs
11. We have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
 a) have to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** needn't
12. Employees accept the new conditions or they will be dismissed.
 a) will have to **b)** don't have to **c)** needn't **d)** can't
13. The higher the temperature, the the demand for ice cream.
 a) great **b)** greatest **c)** greatly **d)** greater
14. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find **b)** am going to find **c)** will find **d)** am finding
15. The presenter asked the writer about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk **b)** to talking **c)** talking **d)** talk
16. A company's logo to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant **b)** means **c)** meaning **d)** is meant
17. If you find the shoes that I have told you about, ... them?
 a) you will buy **b)** would you have bought
 c) would you buy **d)** will you buy

18 If we had a map, we able to get out of here.

a) shall be **b)** would be

c) should have been **d)** would have been

19 This isn't my book. It's

a) my sister **b)** from my sister **c)** of my sister's **d)** my sister's

20 They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.

a) as if I were **b)** as if I would be **c)** as if I had **d)** as I am

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches them.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

21 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can

a) run factories **b)** end your life

c) make you happy **d)** darken your room

22 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician. **b)** The children.

c) The parents. **d)** The neighbours.

23 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as

a) there is much electricity in it **b)** hot water can scald your skin

c) you may slip easily and become bedridden **d)** fire can break out at any time

24 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are

a) milk **b)** medicine

c) fruit **d)** sweets

25 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded?

a) They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
b) They may put out a fire somewhere or save somebody.
c) They are likely to get electrocuted somewhere or start a fire.
d) They can't start a fire somewhere or kill anybody.

26 What is the best title of the passage?

a) Car accidents
b) Home accidents
c) Kitchen accidents
d) Electricity accidents

27 The kitchen is considered a dangerous place as

a) it contains knifes
b) there is hot water
c) there are gas-cylinders
d) all of the previous

28 The synonym of the underlined word "contaminate" is

a) ripen
b) cook
c) pollute
d) eat

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع. لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

NLP WWA Gem

Final Test 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1 This furniture is still in its condition, so it is valuable.
a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting

2 The government must now deal the problem of high unemployment.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

3 Social media have attracted because of their increasing popularity.
a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals

4 In this programme, old soldiers talk about their of the war.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries

5 The two little sisters arms happily as they walked to school.
a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called

6 My brother is doing a in economics to have a promotion.
a) journey b) course c) search d) grade

7 A is someone who teaches or studies languages.
a) botanist b) chemist c) linguist d) psychiatrist

8 Owning a luxurious house does not mean that they were born into a wealthy family.
a) necessarily b) uselessly c) dangerously d) properly

9 The students must finish the test within the of two hours, no more.
a) location b) area c) space d) region

10 We should all be about the future of our country.
a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective

11 To get a cheap ticket, he book in advance.
a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to

12 She earns at least as much her brother, and probably more.
a) as b) than c) more d) of

13 This is my last day here. I to England tomorrow.
a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't

14 The results were completely wrong. She have planned the experiment more carefully.
a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should

15 A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult.
a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed

16 If I had another 5000 pounds, I a car.
a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy

17 That chocolate ice cream tastes
a) deliciously b) more deliciously
c) delicious d) the most deliciously

18 Samy has told us that he when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
a) is working **b)** works **c)** will work **d)** will be working

19 I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.
a) A friend of mine **b)** A friend of me **c)** One my friends **d)** A friend's

20 They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic.
a) It must have had **b)** There must be
c) It must be **d)** There must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also more compact. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

21 Humans fear that one day computers and robots
a) are busier than humans
b) are cleverer than humans
c) will make humans jobless
d) will make humans listen to certain noise

22 The best title for this passage would be
a) Computers and Robots **b)** Old and New Computers
c) Robots are Security Guards **d)** The Electronic Invention

23 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as more compact.
a) Huge. **b)** Cheaper.
c) Smaller. **d)** Costly.

24 Which of the following statements in NOT true?
a) Robots are controlled by a computer. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
c) Robots do not get tired of working. **d)** Robots are used in factories in Japan.

25 The first computers filled up a room because
- **a)** they could store a lot of information.
- **b)** they were huge.
- **c)** they were very expensive.
- **d)** they were useful and demanded in business.

26 Humans have to feed the computers with information
- **a)** so, computers cannot move or do things on their own.
- **b)** because computers are able to think or do things on their own.
- **c)** because computers can save much time and work.
- **d)** because computers cannot think or do things on their own.

27 The underlined word "They" refers to
- **a)** people
- **b)** robots
- **c)** computers
- **d)** places

28 The computer was made smaller
- **a)** because it became more expensive
- **b)** because of the demand for it in business
- **c)** because of globalization
- **d)** because robots are small

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A country or city you would like very much to visit.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 4

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' during his health problems.
 a) support **b)** seduction **c)** neglect **d)** struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting
 a) accidents **b)** events **c)** incidents **d)** processes
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the space.
 a) readable **b)** acceptable **c)** available **d)** proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's is to provide food for homeless people.
 a) report **b)** procedure **c)** article **d)** aim
5. A spy is someone who against his country and gives secrets to its enemy.
 a) innovates **b)** suspects **c)** plays **d)** plots
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started up and turning into a quarrel.
 a) warning **b)** cooling **c)** decreasing **d)** heating
7. Egypt its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
 a) accepts **b)** rewards **c)** celebrates **d)** reports
8. The Nile is our most important water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
9. My new car is a better and more than my last one.
 a) doubtful **b)** distant **c)** reliable **d)** disorganised
10. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their and religions.
 a) heights **b)** wealth **c)** competitions **d)** races
11. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30.
 a) mustn't **b)** don't have to **c)** had to **d)** needn't
12. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the I have ever had.
 a) most enjoyable **b)** more enjoyable **c)** enjoyable **d)** less enjoyable
13. Hurry up! The conference in 20 minutes.
 a) will be beginning **b)** begins **c)** won't begin **d)** has begun
14. Ali's mother taught him and encouraged him to become a doctor.
 a) read **b)** to reading **c)** reads **d)** to read
15. She to speak Italian in an English class.
 a) is supposed **b)** is meant **c)** is not supposed **d)** is not seemed
16. If we there, we would never have found what was happening.
 a) didn't go **b)** hadn't gone **c)** haven't gone **d)** weren't
17. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a) am not failing **b)** am not going to fail **c)** don't fail **d)** won't be failing

18 It's not beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
a) much **b)** more **c)** the **d)** as

19 We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.
a) all **b)** nothing **c)** no-one **d)** none

20 We watched TV all evening we didn't have anything better to do.
a) because of **b)** while **c)** since **d)** when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years. The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day. The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

21 There are types of elephants in the world.
a) one **b)** two
c) three **d)** many

22 The Asian elephant can be found in
a) Indonesia **b)** America
c) Australia **d)** Holland

23 The synonym of the word "poaching" is
a) slaughtering **b)** immigrating
c) killing **d)** stealing

24 What happens to an orphan elephant?
a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
b) It is abandoned.
c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
d) It is killed.

25 Elephant are similar to humans in terms of giving birth because
a) the elephant stays little longer in the mother's womb
b) the elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
c) the elephant gives birth at the same weight.
d) the elephant gives birth to one young at a life.

26 African and Asian elephants are similar because

a) they live in herds and have the same diet
b) they are captured alive for domestic use
c) they live in big families and have the same diet
d) their tusks are worth a lot of money

27 Elephants are captured alive because

a) their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market
b) their tusks are sold in supermarkets
c) for domestic use, such as tourist attractions
d) both a and c

28 What is the best title for the passage?

a) Elephants benefits
b) Elephants lives
c) Elephants importance
d) Elephants description

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. So, the current government encourages continuous development attempts by the Ministry of Education.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

للألعاب الرياضية أثر كبير فى محاربة مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة. كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسية لشخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role of charitable organisations in helping society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 5

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling is Microsoft Office.
 a) apply **b)** applications **c)** applied **d)** applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help the wound.
 a) heal **b)** care **c)** treat **d)** spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any before allowing upload and download.
 a) virus **b)** germ **c)** bacterium **d)** tumour
4. People living in town are not happy the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
 a) at **b)** with **c)** over **d)** in
5. I'll never Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
 a) comply **b)** forge **c)** forget **d)** forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
 a) contain **b)** involve **c)** enclose **d)** include
7. We all father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
 a) ordered **b)** begged **c)** attacked **d)** delayed
8. My grandmother always keeps a sewing in her handbag.
 a) kit **b)** tool **c)** device **d)** machine
9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to a certain task.
 a) form **b)** reform **c)** perform **d)** inform
10. We are going to today because my father was promoted!
 a) compete **b)** complete **c)** celebrate **d)** construct
11. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) need to **b)** had to **c)** didn't have to **d)** mustn't
12. It's getting to find a good job.
 a) so more difficult **b)** more and more difficult
 c) more harder **d)** the most difficult
13. He on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
 a) will work **b)** works **c)** will have worked **d)** will be working
14. The information you sent have included details of courses taken at university.
 a) mustn't **b)** should **c)** shouldn't **d)** may not
15. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He to embarrass you.
 a) doesn't seem **b)** doesn't suppose **c)** wasn't meaning **d)** didn't mean
16. I would get up earlier, if there a good reason to.
 a) was **b)** have been **c)** is **d)** had been
17. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the cause of death among sea birds.
 a) more common **b)** common **c)** commonest **d)** commoner

18 Osama will be working in the garden while Hala
a) will cook **b)** is cooking **c)** was cooking **d)** cooks

19 I asked two people the way to the station, but of them helped me.
a) either **b)** none **c)** neither **d)** both

20 I couldn't sleep very tired. I was working all day yesterday.
a) although being **b)** in spite of being **c)** despite of being **d)** despite I was

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals were the opposite of hers. So, Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how Sally got her wish at last!

21 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?
a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

22 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means
a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

23 The word "....." is the antonym of "curled up".
a) twisted **b)** bowed
c) straight **d)** bent

24 What was Sally's wish?
a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

25 Sally enjoyed watching programs about animals because
a) she was forbidden to own a cat
b) she loved T.V
c) she had wanted to own a cat
d) she loved animals

26 Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat because

a) she didn't love wild animals **b)** she loved wild animals

c) she didn't love pets **d)** she feared from cats

27 Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

a) dog's sound **b)** mewing sound

c) child's sound **d)** baby's sound

28 What do you think happened to the cat according to the passage?

a) It was knocked down by a car.

b) It was knocked down by another animal.

c) It was left alone and looked very frightened.

d) It was sick.

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this problem.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبا للتطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ONLINEWA Gen

Final Test 6

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood great problems for the local farmers.
 a) reasoned **b)** applied **c)** caused **d)** shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest of computer technology.
 a) poets **b)** editors **c)** explorers **d)** innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
 a) entertained **b)** delayed **c)** inspected **d)** trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and on with other classmates.
 a) went **b)** got **c)** came **d)** received
5. My mother has always remained to the values she learned as a child.
 a) useless **b)** unaffected **c)** faithful **d)** influenced
6. My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
 a) immune **b)** respiratory **c)** prohibited **d)** allowed
7. The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a that he was worried.
 a) sign **b)** signal **c)** landmark **d)** note
8. We aren't used to eating a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
 a) inside **b)** down **c)** out **d)** across
9. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a of sizes; single, double or suites.
 a) property **b)** variety **c)** difference **d)** site
10. The bird is easily because of its bright red feathers.
 a) available **b)** acceptable **c)** recognisable **d)** affectionate
11. I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
 a) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** must
12. A Mercedes is one of the cars you can buy.
 a) more expensive **b)** expensive **c)** most expensive **d)** little expensive
13. I think I him at entrance B. I can't remember.
 a) will be meeting **b)** am meeting **c)** meet **d)** will meet
14. The teacher wanted her students their homework before the new lesson.
 a) do **b)** to do **c)** doing **d)** to doing
15. Don't speak to the boss now. He to be angry about something.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** is meant **d)** supposed
16. they had much time, they would have studied better.
 a) If **b)** Were **c)** Had **d)** Have
17. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh next Saturday.
 a) ends **b)** are ending **c)** end **d)** will end

ONLINE MAN Gem

18 I chose this car as my favourite because it's all the ones I have driven.
a) the fastest from **b)** the fastest of **c)** more faster than **d)** the fastest as

19 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
a) take off **b)** take them off **c)** take off them **d)** take it off

20 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true.
a) what was said **b)** what they said **c)** that they said **d)** they say

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use auditory clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places. People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

21 The clocks are used to measure the
a) smaller units of time **b)** day
c) month **d)** year

22 What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
a) Why clocks are used.
b) How sundials work.
c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.
d) What types of clocks have been invented.

23 The synonym of "melt" is
a) dissolve **b)** harden **c)** solidify **d)** freeze

24 The word "auditory" most closely means
a) related to machines **b)** related to numbers
c) related to hearing **d)** related to the sun

25 The writer believes that it would be a mess if
a) there are a lot of clocks **b)** there are many kinds of clocks
c) there weren't clocks **d)** clocks were bigger in size

26 Airplanes depend on the clock because
- **a)** they take off according to the clock.
- **b)** they land according to the clock.
- **c)** they use clocks to book tickets
- **d)** both a and b

27 Sundials are different from Candle clocks because they
- **a)** work with a system of moving gears.
- **b)** use the daylight.
- **c)** use sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.
- **d)** measure units of time that are shorter than natural

28 What is the main idea of the passage?
- **a)** How different industries and jobs use clocks
- **b)** The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance
- **c)** The history of different kinds of clocks
- **d)** The importance of specific kinds of clocks

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة. من هذه النماذج نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن اللتان أكدتا على دور المرأة وحقوقها.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 7

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
 a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There were and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
 a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based figures from six different cities.
 a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by from the queen to the eldest son.
 a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically by a team of top surgeons.
 a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. If our son's illness any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
 a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises
8. The young doctor is attending a three-day on new treatments of the virus.
 a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment
9. The book is the product of a/an between two writers.
 a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection
10. The storm caused damage to the farmer's house and garden which was destroyed.
 a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
11. Asmaa have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
 a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
12. Hossam has been working and harder since he graduated.
 a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
13. Look at these big black clouds! It
 a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
14. This medicine went bad. You have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
15. Why are you late? You to be here at 9 o'clock.
 a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
16. If he is late, we to go without him.
 a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
17. There are more accidents on this road because it's than the others.
 a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest

18 Next year, no doubt, more people the competition as the prize money increases.
a) will enter
b) are going to be entered
c) are entering
d) will be entering

19 Robert away two or three times a year.
a) is going usually
b) goes usually
c) is usually going
d) usually goes

20 We by a loud noise during the night.
a) woke up
b) are woken
c) were woken up
d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

21 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the
a) light
b) reflection
c) eye
d) brain

22 How does light travel?
a) In black waves.
b) In strange waves.
c) In straight waves.
d) In reflected waves.

23 We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.
a) the mirror
b) ourselves
c) the light wave
d) our eyes

24 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to
a) magnify, or make things larger
b) see ourselves through glasses
c) to see mountains in water
d) see things in the dark

25 We see objects because
a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surface
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves

26 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

a) They bounce directly back to our faces.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye's illness.
d) They make light.

27 A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because to create a reflection.

a) the surface must be smooth and still
b) the surface must be sharp and still
c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye
d) anything shiny may act like a mirror

28 science specialises in studying light and reflection.

a) Chemistry **b)** Biology
c) Physics **d)** Sociology

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يختلـف النـاس فـى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته. إلا أنهم جميعـًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 8

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
 a) perplexes **b)** denies **c)** lightens **d)** highlights
2. The new owners have changed the of the whole building.
 a) appear **b)** appearance **c)** appeared **d)** apparent
3. The child must be from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
 a) united **b)** separated **c)** kept **d)** stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to his toys with any other child.
 a) share **b)** divide **c)** spill **d)** unite
5. I feel really about forgetting my wife's birthday again. She must get upset.
 a) shy **b)** guilty **c)** innocent **d)** proud
6. The old woman her husband by only a few years. Their relation was an amazing one.
 a) kept **b)** dissolved **c)** called **d)** survived
7. The accident victim was from the wounds in her face and hands.
 a) bleeding **b)** paining **c)** relieving **d)** breeding
8. Major changes have taken in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
 a) part **b)** place **c)** apart **d)** down
9. We had a/an with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
 a) fight **b)** treaty **c)** argument **d)** truce
10. You have to register to be able to post a/an in this website.
 a) comment **b)** mark **c)** emoji **d)** abbreviation
11. I'd like to know who up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
 a) cleans **b)** does clean **c)** will be cleaning **d)** will have cleaned
12. This is a dangerous tour. Children accompanied by an adult.
 a) mustn't be **b)** needn't have been **c)** must **d)** must be
13. We wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 a) must **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** have to
14. The expensive holidays are often the best.
 a) less **b)** lesser **c)** little **d)** least
15. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow dry and sunny.
 a) is being **b)** will be being **c)** will be **d)** will have been
16. You may be older than me, but that doesn't you're cleverer.
 a) mean **b)** seem **c)** supposed **d)** meaning
17. Had I realised what you intended, I my permission.
 a) wouldn't give **b)** will give **c)** would not have given **d)** won't give

18 We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an
a) ability **b)** request **c)** permission **d)** suggestion

19 Galal in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
a) lived **b)** has lived **c)** has been living **d)** is living

20 She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help
a) laughing **b)** to laugh **c)** that she laughed **d)** laugh

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seem so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher.

The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

21 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?
a) She wrote books. **b)** She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. **d)** She wrote novels.

22 Sara was called 'bookworm' because
a) she kept worms in her books
b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms
d) she loved to read

23 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?
a) One. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** None.

24 The phrase "sold like hotcakes" means
a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

25 The publisher wanted to publish Sara's work because
a) she read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'
b) she had a real talent in writing novel
c) she had no talent in writing short stories
d) her teachers were all so proud of her

26 Sara was reluctant to write the novel at first because

a) she was confident she could do it

b) she discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author

c) she wasn't confident she could do it

d) her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend

27 What is the best title of this passage?

a) Sara's life story. **b)** Publisher's story.

c) Sara's hobby. **d)** Sara's novel.

28 The writer believes that the role of the family is important because it

a) helps in decreasing their children's talents

b) helps in improving their children's talents

c) helps in changing their children's desires

d) helps in changing their children's minds

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

تناقصت مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم. أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

EL-NAWA Gem

Final Test 9

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man a lot of weight when he was ill.
 a) missed **b)** lost **c)** won **d)** earned
2. The frozen-foods is in the back area of the shop.
 a) college **b)** centre **c)** section **d)** sale
3. The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home **b)** view **c)** seminar **d)** forum
4. Egypt has always had a good with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate **b)** relationship **c)** argument **d)** quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into **b)** off **c)** on **d)** away
6. It is known that iron with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers **b)** rejects **c)** reacts **d)** reforms
7. The teacher at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled **b)** smelled **c)** signed **d)** frowned
8. More details about the new invention will be on the website tomorrow.
 a) passed **b)** delivered **c)** spread **d)** posted
9. The charity thanked the businessman for the generous to help the poor.
 a) request **b)** expense **c)** donation **d)** cost
10. The athlete was given the VIP after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.
 a) treat **b)** treatment **c)** treated **d)** treatable
11. She drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** mustn't
12. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the
 a) more pretty **b)** most pretty **c)** prettiest **d)** pretty
13. They dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having **b)** will have **c)** are going to have **d)** have
14. Most teachers encourage their students harder.
 a) to work **b)** work **c)** working **d)** to working
15. When to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you **b)** you supposed **c)** you are supposed **d)** are you supposed
16. If she well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
 a) did **b)** does **c)** had done **d)** will do
17. Mr. Kareem early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring **b)** will be retiring **c)** is going to retire **d)** will have retired

18 His results are not his colleague's. He needs to study more.

a) so good like **b)** to good like **c)** as good as **d)** so good than

19 I'm not going to bed now. I'm not tired. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.

a) go **b)** went **c)** had gone **d)** am going

20 The police officer stopped us and asked us where

a) were we going **b)** are we going **c)** we are going **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs.

They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

21 Dogs helped people go to North America by

a) pulling sleds in the snow **b)** helping with farming

c) helping find things **d)** none of the previous answers

22 The best antonym for pet is

a) wild animal **b)** domestic animal

c) large animal **d)** friendly animal

23 A dog's fur is the dog's

a) nose **b)** eyes

c) hair **d)** ears

24 Straight hair is

a) curly **b)** long

c) brown **d)** not curly

25 According to the passage, all dogs do well in

a) hearing **b)** smelling

c) swimming **d)** both a and b

26 The age of the oldest dog reaches to

a) 24 years old **b)** 20 years old

c) 13 years old **d)** 15,000 years old

27 Dogs are useful animals because

a) they have many colours

a) they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow

a) there are wild dogs and pet dogs

a) they can play and do nothing for men and women

28 The writer mentions that some dogs can't well

a) hear b) run

c) smell d) see

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Although the internet becomes the most important means for knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة. بالإضافة إلى أنه يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 10

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by than by using force. This is the modern approach.
 a) persuade **b)** persuasion **c)** persuasive **d)** persuaded
2. The young architect is noises about starting his own business.
 a) making **b)** doing **c)** replying **d)** applying
3. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Dermatitis **b)** Hydroponics **c)** Astronomy **d)** Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
 a) photos **b)** images **c)** accounts **d)** decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of the customer about the condition of the car.
 a) accepting **b)** awarding **c)** honouring **d)** deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main during the storm.
 a) road **b)** technique **c)** course **d)** coarse
7. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of in all fields.
 a) invention **b)** consumption **c)** destruction **d)** production
8. Nurses are taught how to CPR as part of their first-aid course.
 a) do **b)** make **c)** design **d)** operate
9. I have read only some from the newspaper because I had no time.
 a) addresses **b)** experiments **c)** headlines **d)** extracts
10. Mona really wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
 a) pleases **b)** affects **c)** regrets **d)** rejoices
11. Your flat has been robbed! This that you have to report to the police.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** meant **d)** is meant
12. You come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** mustn't
13. My dog is than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
 a) bigger **b)** the biggest **c)** big **d)** biggest
14. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She!
 a) is slipping **b)** will slip **c)** is going to slip **d)** slips
15. He by the time he was four.
 a) won't swim **b)** could swim
 c) should swim **d)** mustn't have swum
16. We at home if it hadn't rained.
 a) would stay **b)** would have stayed **c)** wouldn't have stayed **d)** won't stay

ONLINE Gen

17 In the last few months, competition has become

a) much tougher
b) more tough
c) more tougher
d) much more tougher

18 A: Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? B: Okay. I you there.

a) will be seeing
b) see
c) will have seen
d) will see

19 There's somebody walking behind us. I think

a) we are being followed
b) we are following
c) we are being following
d) we are followed

20 I had no a place to stay in. In fact, it was surprisingly easy.

a) trouble to find
b) difficulty finding
c) difficulty to find
d) trouble find

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

To : jim62@hrdtt.com
From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com
Subject : A thank you message

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer, on behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goals and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company.

We also hope that you liked our small presentation. We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture. Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,
Robert Spooner Senior Vice President

21 When did the team meet Mr. Jim?

a) next Monday
b) last Monday
c) last month
d) upcoming Monday

22 What does the underlined word "enlightening" mean?

a) useless
b) fruitless
c) fruitful
d) harmful

23 The outcome of the meeting is that the team became

a) able to communicate with each other
b) familiar with the marketing skills
c) familiar with development plans
d) aware with the goals of the company

24 The team prepared before the meeting to be shown.

a) a project plan
b) a small business
c) a small presentation
d) a meeting agenda

25 Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the email?

a) the time of the meeting
b) the attendees of the meeting
c) the purpose of the email
d) the time of the next meeting

26 The email contains

a) attached thank you letter
b) attached project plan
c) attached development plan
d) attached small presentation

27 The team promised to

a) meet Mr. Jim's expectation
b) to create outstanding venture
c) to achieve great results
d) both a and c

28 This email is a one.

a) formal
b) informal
c) direct
d) indirect

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

.....

.....

.....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

كانت مصر من أوائل الدول فى الشرق الأوسط التى وفرت لقاح كوفيد- ١٩ لمواطنيها. وقد عددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما إنها وفرته بالمجان.

.....

.....

.....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

ALNAWAH Gem

ALADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Targeted
2. **c)** out
3. **b)** record
4. **c)** boosting
5. **d)** respect
6. **a)** rural
7. **d)** cell
8. **a)** downloading
9. **b)** with
10. **d)** hanging
11. **a)** longer
12. **b)** have to
13. **c)** will be waiting
14. **b)** should
15. **d)** supposed
16. **a)** hadn't helped
17. **b)** most useful
18. **b)** leaves
19. **c)** come
20. **d)** a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** his childhood
22. **a)** knowledgeable
23. **d)** the things that happened in a past time
24. **c)** hobby
25. **d)** all of the above
26. **a)** Readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
27. **c)** Reading about life facts
28. **b)** Reading

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يتكون جهاز المناعة من أعضاء وخلايا ومواد كيميائية خاصة في أجسامنا. إنهم يعملون معًا لحمايتنا من العدوى والأمراض.

30. **Translate into English:**

Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** headlines
2. **a)** keep
3. **d)** improved
4. **d)** image
5. **a)** examination
6. **c)** attractive
7. **c)** beauty
8. **b)** deceived
9. **c)** perform
10. **d)** lungs
11. **b)** had to
12. **a)** will have to
13. **d)** greater
14. **c)** will find
15. **a)** to talk
16. **d)** is meant
17. **d)** will you buy
18. **b)** would be
19. **d)** my sister's
20. **a)** as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** end your life
22. **a)** the electrician
23. **c)** You may slip easily and become bedridden.
24. **d)** sweets
25. **a)** They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
26. **b)** Home accidents
27. **d)** All of the previous
28. **c)** pollute

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يهتم الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

30. **Translate into English:**

Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes cause the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** original
2. **c)** with
3. **c)** advertisers
4. **a)** memories
5. **c)** linked
6. **b)** course
7. **c)** linguist
8. **a)** necessarily
9. **c)** space
10. **a)** positive
11. **d)** had to
12. **a)** as
13. **a)** am going back
14. **d)** should
15. **b)** seems
16. **c)** could buy
17. **c)** delicious
18. **d)** will be working
19. **a)** A friend of mine
20. **b)** There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **c)** will make humans jobless.
22. **a)** Computers and Robots
23. **c)** Smaller
24. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.
25. **b)** they were huge.
26. **d)** Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
27. **b)** robots
28. **b)** because of the demand for it in business

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى فإن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات القادمة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Homeschooling is one of the ways in which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers, so the state provides all means of support to enable students to participate effectively.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** support
2. **b)** events
3. **c)** available
4. **d)** aim
5. **d)** plots
6. **d)** heating
7. **c)** celebrates
8. **d)** sustainable
9. **c)** reliable
10. **d)** races
11. **c)** had to
12. **a)** most enjoyable
13. **b)** begins
14. **d)** to read
15. **c)** is not supposed
16. **b)** hadn't gone
17. **b)** am not going to fail
18. **d)** as
19. **d)** none
20. **c)** since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** two
22. **a)** Indonesia
23. **c)** killing
24. **a)** It is looked after by another female elephant.
25. **b)** The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
26. **a)** They live in herds and have the same diet.
27. **d)** Both a and c
28. **b)** Elephants lives

29. Translate into Arabic:

يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت. تشجع الحكومة الحالية محاولات التطوير المستمرة التى تقوم بها وزارة التربية والتعليم.

30. Translate into English:

Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** applications
2. **a)** heal
3. **a)** virus
4. **b)** with
5. **d)** forgive
6. **c)** enclose
7. **b)** begged
8. **a)** kit
9. **c)** perform
10. **c)** celebrate
11. **a)** need to
12. **b)** more and more difficult
13. **d)** will be working
14. **b)** should
15. **d)** didn't mean
16. **a)** was
17. **c)** commonest
18. **b)** is cooking
19. **c)** neither
20. **b)** in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **d)** Animals
22. **a)** She was against owning a cat at home.
23. **c)** Straight
24. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
25. **d)** she loved animals
26. **c)** She didn't love pets.
27. **b)** mewing sound
28. **a)** It was knocked down by a car.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** caused
2. **d)** innovators
3. **a)** entertained
4. **b)** got
5. **c)** faithful
6. **a)** immune
7. **a)** sign
8. **c)** out
9. **b)** variety
10. **c)** recognisable
11. **d)** must
12. **c)** most expensive
13. **d)** will meet
14. **b)** to do
15. **a)** seems
16. **c)** Had
17. **a)** ends
18. **b)** the fastest of
19. **b)** take them off
20. **c)** that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **a)** smaller units of time
22. **d)** What types of clocks have been invented?
23. **a)** dissolve
24. **c)** related to hearing
25. **c)** there weren't clocks
26. **d)** both a and b
27. **a)** work with a system of moving gears.
28. **b)** The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما كانت أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

30. **Translate into English:**

The history of the women's movement in Egypt is full of many successful models. Among these models are Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman who emphasised the role of women and their rights.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** two-week
2. **b)** arrival
3. **a)** algae
4. **c)** on
5. **a)** inheritance
6. **c)** extracted
7. **b)** gets
8. **a)** conference
9. **c)** collaboration
10. **a)** severe
11. **c)** has got to
12. **d)** harder
13. **b)** is going to rain
14. **c)** should
15. **b)** were supposed
16. **a)** will have
17. **c)** narrower
18. **a)** will enter
19. **d)** usually goes
20. **c)** were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **d)** brain
22. **c)** In straight waves
23. **b)** ourselves
24. **a)** magnify, or make things larger
25. **c)** light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
26. **b)** They bounce directly back to our eyes.
27. **d)** the surface must be smooth and still
28. **c)** Physics.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعى بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعى بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

30. **Translate into English:**

People differ in the type of food they prefer, the way it is cooked, or even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for delicious taste and high nutritional value.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** highlights
2. **b)** appearance
3. **b)** separated
4. **a)** share
5. **b)** guilty
6. **d)** survived
7. **a)** bleeding
8. **b)** place
9. **c)** argument
10. **a)** comment
11. **c)** will be cleaning
12. **d)** must be
13. **b)** don't have to
14. **d)** least
15. **c)** will be
16. **a)** mean
17. **c)** would not have given
18. **d)** suggestion
19. **a)** lived
20. **a)** laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** She read books
22. **d)** She loved to read
23. **d)** none
24. **a)** the books were selling very well
25. **b)** she had a real talent in writing novel
26. **c)** she wasn't confident she could do it.
27. **d)** Sara's novel
28. **b)** helps in improving their children's talents

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

لـكل فـرد فى المجتمع الحق بـأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشـكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا.

30. **Translate into English:**

The area of agricultural has decreased all over the world because it's used for other purposes. Scientists have to find new ways to feed the growing population.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** lost
2. **c)** section
3. **d)** forum
4. **b)** relationship
5. **d)** away
6. **c)** reacts
7. **d)** frowned
8. **d)** posted
9. **c)** donation
10. **b)** treatment
11. **b)** had to
12. **c)** prettiest
13. **a)** will be having
14. **a)** to work
15. **d)** are you supposed
16. **b)** does
17. **c)** is going to retire
18. **c)** as good as
19. **b)** went
20. **d)** we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **a)** pulling sleds in the snow
22. **b)** domestic animal
23. **c)** hair
24. **d)** not curly
25. **d)** both a and b
26. **a)** 24 years old
27. **b)** they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow
28. **d)** see well.

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة كما يساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

30. **Translate into English:**

Learning foreign languages, especially English helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends. In addition, it enables us to keep pace with the great development in the various fields of science and technology.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

Final Test (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** persuasion
2. **a)** making
3. **b)** Hydroponics
4. **b)** images
5. **d)** deceiving
6. **c)** course
7. **d)** production
8. **d)** operate
9. **c)** headlines
10. **c)** regrets
11. **b)** means
12. **c)** must
13. **a)** bigger
14. **c)** is going to slip
15. **b)** could swim
16. **c)** wouldn't have stayed
17. **a)** much tougher
18. **d)** will see
19. **a)** we are being followed
20. **b)** difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** last Monday
22. **c)** fruitful
23. **d)** aware with the goals of the company
24. **c)** a small presentation
25. **d)** the time of the next meeting
26. **b)** attached project plan
27. **d)** both a and c
28. **a)** formal

29. **Translate into Arabic:**

التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير بعقلانية فيما نفعل وما نعتقد كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

30. **Translate into English:**

Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. There are many sources of obtaining different types of it, and it also provided it free of charge.

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.

ALADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2022 - 2023

Final Tests

Final Test 1

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
 a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging with some friends.
 a) on **b)** in **c)** out **d)** at
3. British Airways has a very good safety Accidents are rare on their flights.
 a) prize **b)** record **c)** revision **d)** medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product.
 a) pulling **b)** depriving **c)** boosting **d)** discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much for his successful football career.
 a) disrespect **b)** rudeness **c)** affection **d)** respect
6. At the end of the 17th century, England was still, depending mainly on agriculture.
 a) rural **b)** urban **c)** space **d)** spicy
7. The bigger the flat is, the time she takes to clean it.
 a) longer **b)** longest **c)** long **d)** more long
8. I often work at the weekend to get everything done.
 a) mustn't **b)** have to **c)** don't have to **d)** didn't have to
9. I for my results all the next month.
 a) wait **b)** will wait **c)** will be waiting **d)** will be waited
10. Why did you leave the exam room? You have checked your answers more thoroughly.
 a) shouldn't **b)** should **c)** must **d)** oughtn't
11. I'm to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow, but I think I'm going down with flu.
 a) seemed **b)** suppose **c)** seem **d)** supposed
12. I would have been in bad trouble if she me.
 a) hadn't helped **b)** weren't **c)** is **d)** will be
13. The mobile phone must be one of the inventions of all time.
 a) useful **b)** most useful **c)** less useful **d)** more useful
14. We have to hurry. The train in five minutes.
 a) has left **b)** leaves **c)** will have left **d)** won't leave
15. I didn't hear you You must have been very quiet.
 a) came **b)** to come **c)** come **d)** to coming

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting. This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things about our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way. So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

16 The writer has liked reading since

a) his graduation **b)** his childhood
c) his marriage **d)** his youth

17 Through reading, the person becomes

a) knowledgeable **b)** available
c) famous **d)** honourable

18 The word "bygone" means

a) the things that will happen in the future
b) the things that happen daily
c) the things that will never happen
d) the things that happened in a past time

19 In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a

a) disaster **b)** responsibility
c) hobby **d)** danger

20 The writer likes to read

a) stories **b)** magazines
c) newspapers **d)** all of the previous

21 Reading can help people medically because

a) readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
b) readers can avoid diseases by learning things the hard way
c) readers can avoid diseases through going to jungle
d) readers can catch diseases to know that they can kill

22 According to the passage, people can cope with living through

a) buying books
b) working abroad
c) reading about life facts
d) none of the previous

23 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

a) Time.
b) Reading.
c) Books.
d) World.

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:** 2

- The immune system is made up of special organs, cells and chemicals in our bodies. They work together to protect us from infections and diseases.

a) يشكل جهاز المناعة أعضاء خاصة وخلايا ومواد كيميائية فى أجسامنا. إنها تعمل معًا لحمايتنا من التلوث والأمراض.
b) يتكون جهاز المناعة من أعضاء وخلايا ومواد كيميائية خاصة فى أجسامنا. إنها تعمل معًا لحمايتنا من العدوى والأمراض.
c) يصنع جهاز المناعة أعضاء وخلايا ومواد كيميائية خاصة فى أجسامنا. تقوم مع بعضها بالحماية من العدوى والأدوية.
d) يتكون الجهاز المناعى من أعضاء خاصة وخلايا ومواد كيميائية فى أجسامنا. هى تعمل معًا لحمايتنا من الإصابة والأمراض.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:** 2

- الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدى بالضرورة إلى نتائج سيئة فالتعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها.

a) Everybody makes mistakes, but most of we don't see how to earn from their mistakes. Making mistakes does necessarily lead to good results. Admitting from mistakes is skillful we all have to realise.
b) Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.
c) Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't understand how to gain from their mistakes. Doing mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is skillful we all have to win.
d) All makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to profit from our mistakes. Mistakes do not lead to bad results. Teaching from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

26 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 5

- Your favourite social networking site.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Final Test 2

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper around the world.
 a) addresses **b)** headquarters **c)** headlines **d)** backlines
2. I couldn't in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep **b)** leave **c)** depart **d)** pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't
 a) proved **b)** approved **c)** disapproved **d)** improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo **b)** location **c)** site **d)** image
5. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are to many people.
 a) attract **b)** attraction **c)** attractive **d)** attracted
6. The restaurant owners were by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted **b)** deceived **c)** honoured **d)** awarded
7. You have a ticket with your name on or you couldn't travel.
 a) have to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** needn't
8. Employees accept the new conditions or they will be dismissed.
 a) will have to **b)** don't have to **c)** needn't **d)** can't
9. The higher the temperature, the the demand for ice cream.
 a) great **b)** greatest **c)** greatly **d)** greater
10. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find **b)** am going to find **c)** will find **d)** am finding
11. The presenter asked the writer about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk **b)** to talking **c)** talking **d)** talk
12. A company's logo to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant **b)** means
 c) meaning **d)** is meant
13. If you find the shoes that I have told you about, ... them?
 a) you will buy **b)** would you have bought
 c) would you buy **d)** will you buy
14. This isn't my book. It's
 a) my sister **b)** from my sister
 c) of my sister's **d)** my sister's
15. They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.
 a) as if I were **b)** as if I would be
 c) as if I had **d)** as I am

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches them.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

16 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can

a) run factories **b)** end your life

c) make you happy **d)** darken your room

17 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician. **b)** The children.

c) The parents. **d)** The neighbours.

18 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as

a) there is much electricity in it **b)** hot water can scald your skin

c) you may slip easily and become bedridden **d)** fire can break out at any time

19 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are

a) milk **b)** medicine

c) fruit **d)** sweets

20 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded?

a) They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.

b) They may put out a fire somewhere or save somebody.

c) They are likely to get electrocuted somewhere or start a fire.

d) They can't start a fire somewhere or kill anybody.

21 What is the best title of the passage?

a) Car accidents. **b)** Home accidents.

c) Kitchen accidents. **d)** Electricity accidents.

22 The kitchen is considered a dangerous place as

a) it contains knives
b) there is hot water
c) there are gas-cylinders
d) all of the previous answers

23 The synonym of the underlined word "contaminate" is

a) ripen
b) cook
c) pollute
d) eat

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

a) فى جميع أنحاء العالم، أشخاص كثيرون غير مهتمين باستخدام وسائل تواصل مختلفة. كل هذه الوسائل تجعلهم غير قادرين على القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

b) يهتم الكثير من الناس فى جميع أنحاء العالم باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

c) يهتم معظم الناس فى جميع دول العالم باستخدام وسائل تواصل مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تجعلهم يقومون بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

d) يركز الكثير من الأشخاص فى جميع دول العالم على استخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تعجزهم عن القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- على الرغم من فوائدها الكثيرة فإن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع. لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

a) Despite the many types of profits, social media sometimes spreads rumors and creates chaos in society. So many supports government protection on it.

b) Despite its many benefits, social networking sites sometimes spread rumors and create chaos in society. Therefore, many support the imposition of government censorship on it.

c) Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

d) Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and create mess in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental conservation on it.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 3

32

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15

1 This furniture is still in its condition, so it is valuable.
a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting

2 Social media have attracted because of their increasing popularity.
a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals

3 The two little sisters arms happily as they walked to school.
a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called

4 My brother is doing a in economics to have a promotion.
a) journey b) course c) search d) grade

5 Owning a luxurious house does not mean that they were born into a wealthy family.
a) necessarily b) uselessly c) dangerously d) properly

6 The students must finish the test within the of two hours, no more.
a) location b) area c) space d) region

7 She earns at least as much her brother, and probably more.
a) as b) than c) more d) of

8 This is my last day here. I to England tomorrow.
a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't

9 The results were completely wrong. She have planned the experiment more carefully.
a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should

10 A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult.
a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed

11 If I had another 5000 pounds, I a car.
a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy

12 That chocolate ice cream tastes
a) deliciously b) more deliciously
c) delicious d) the most deliciously

13 Samy has told us that he when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
a) is working b) works c) will work d) will be working

14 I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.
a) A friend of mine b) A friend of me c) One my friends d) A friend's

15 They live on a busy road. a lot of noise from the traffic.
a) It must have had b) There must be
c) It must be d) There must have

ONLINE Gen

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also more compact. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

16 Humans fear that one day computers and robots

a) are busier than humans **b)** are cleverer than humans

c) will make humans jobless **d)** will make humans listen to certain noise

17 The best title to this passage would be

a) Computers and Robots **b)** Old and New Computers

c) Robots are Security Guards **d)** The Electronic Invention

18 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as more compact.

a) Huge. **b)** Cheaper.

c) Smaller. **d)** Costly.

19 Which of the following statements in NOT true?

a) Robots are controlled by a computer. **b)** Robots are mechanical people.

c) Robots do not get tired of working. **d)** Robots are used in factories in Japan.

20 The first computers filled up a room because

a) they could store a lot of information. **b)** they were huge.

c) they were very expensive. **d)** they were useful and demanded in business.

21 Humans have to feed the computers with information

a) so, computers cannot move or do things on their own.

b) because computers are able to think or do things on their own.

c) because computers can save much time and work.

d) because computers cannot think or do things on their own.

22 The underlined word "They" refers to

a) people
b) robots
c) computers
d) places

23 The computer was made smaller

a) because it became more expensive
b) because of the demand for it in business
c) because of globalisation
d) because robots are small

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

a) على الرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى، فإن هناك إصرارًا للتغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات القادمة.
b) علــى الرغــم مــن التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصــرى، فإن هناك إصرارًا على التغلب عليها ومن المنتظــر أن يعتبر الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات الحالية.
c) على الرغم من التحديات التى سيواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى فإنه كان هناك تصميم للتغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يواجه الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات القادمة.
d) على الرغم من التحديات التى واجهها الاقتصاد فإن هناك إرادة للتغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يكون الاقتصاد على النمو فى السنوات التالية.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

a) Education in homes is one of the ways by which students can learn and win knowledge by helping of online teachers, so the country proves all means of support to disable students to participate effectively.
b) Homeschooling is one of the ways in which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers, so the state provides all means of support to enable students to participate effectively.
c) Home-teaching is one of the ways in which students through it can learn and gain knowledge by the help of teachers online, so the status provides all means of support to enable students to take part ineffectively.
d) Home-leaning is one of the ways where students through it can learn and earn knowledge with the help of online teachers, so the government proves all means of support to enable students to practice ineffectively.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- A country or city you would like very much to visit.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Final Test 4

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting
 a) accidents **b)** events **c)** incidents **d)** processes
2. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the space.
 a) readable **b)** acceptable **c)** available **d)** proper
3. A spy is someone who against his country and gives secrets to its enemy.
 a) innovates **b)** suspects **c)** plays **d)** plots
4. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started up and turning into a quarrel.
 a) warning **b)** cooling **c)** decreasing **d)** heating
5. The Nile is our most important water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
 a) believable **b)** noticeable **c)** avoidable **d)** sustainable
6. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their and religions.
 a) heights **b)** wealth **c)** competitions **d)** races
7. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30.
 a) mustn't **b)** don't have to **c)** had to **d)** needn't
8. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the I have ever had.
 a) most enjoyable **b)** more enjoyable **c)** enjoyable **d)** less enjoyable
9. Hurry up! The conference in 20 minutes.
 a) will be beginning **b)** begins **c)** won't begin **d)** has begun
10. Ali's mother taught him and encouraged him to become a doctor.
 a) read **b)** to reading **c)** reads **d)** to read
11. She to speak Italian in an English class.
 a) is supposed **b)** is meant **c)** is not supposed **d)** is not seemed
12. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a) am not failing **b)** am not going to fail **c)** don't fail **d)** won't be failing
13. This is his second successful book.
 a) more **b)** most **c)** the most **d)** the least
14. We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.
 a) all **b)** nothing **c)** no-one **d)** none
15. We watched TV all evening we didn't have anything better to do.
 a) because of **b)** while **c)** since **d)** when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years. The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day. The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

16 There are types of elephants in the world.

a) one **b)** two
c) three **d)** many

17 The Asian elephant can be found in

a) Indonesia **b)** America
c) Australia **d)** Holland

18 The synonym of the word "poaching" is

a) slaughtering **b)** immigrating
c) killing **d)** stealing

19 What happens to an orphan elephant?

a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
b) It is abandoned.
c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
d) It is killed.

20 Elephant are similar to humans in terms of giving birth because

a) the elephant stays little longer in the mother's womb
b) the elephant gives birth to one young at a time
c) the elephant gives birth at the same weight
d) the elephant gives birth to one young at a life

21 African and Asian elephants are similar because

a) they live in herds and have the same diet
b) they are captured alive for domestic use
c) they live in big families and have the same diet
d) their tusks are worth a lot of money

22 Elephants are captured alive because

a) their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market

b) their tusks are sold in supermarkets

c) for domestic use, such as tourist attractions

d) both a and c

23 What is the best title to the passage?

a) Elephants benefits.

b) Elephants lives.

c) Elephants importance.

d) Elephants description.

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. So, the current government encourages continuous development attempts by the Ministry of Education.

a) يلعب التعليم فى المدارس دورًا مهما فى وضع شخصية الأطفال ومع ذلك فإن الحكومة الحالية تشجع محاولات التطوير الدائمة التى تقوم بها وزارة التربية والتعليم.

b) يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا بارزا فى تشكيل صفات الأطفال ومن ثم تشجع الحكومة الحالية التقدم المستمر الذى تقوم به وزارة التربية والتعليم.

c) يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال لذا فإن الحكومة الحالية تشجع محاولات التطوير المستمرة من قبل وزارة التربية والتعليم.

d) يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا مهمًا فى تشكيل الصفات الحسنة لدى الأطفال. إذن، تشجع الحكومة محاولات التطوير طوال الوقت من قبل وزارة التربية والتعليم.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- للألعاب الرياضية أثر كبير فى محاربة مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة. كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسية لشخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

a) Sports games have a great impact in defeating various social problems such as violence and crime. It can also support the basic principles of children's personality besides its great health rewards for all people.

b) Games have a great affection on combating various social problems such as violence and crime. They can also enhance the basic principles of children's personality besides their great health profits for all people.

c) Sports have a great effect on fighting different problems of society such as violence and crime. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

d) Sports have a great impact in fighting various social problems such as violence and crime. It can also promote the basic principles of children's characteristics besides its great health gains for all people.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- The role of charitable organisations in helping society.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 5

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This ointment is very strong and it will help the wound.
 a) heal **b)** care **c)** treat **d)** spread
2. People living in town are not happy the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
 a) at **b)** with **c)** over **d)** in
3. Strong measures are still needed to the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
 a) contain **b)** involve **c)** enclose **d)** include
4. We all father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
 a) ordered **b)** begged **c)** attacked **d)** delayed
5. My grandmother always keeps a sewing in her handbag.
 a) kit **b)** tool **c)** device **d)** machine
6. We are going to today because my father was promoted!
 a) compete **b)** complete **c)** celebrate **d)** construct
7. Before you buy a house, you consider all the costs.
 a) need to **b)** had to **c)** didn't have to **d)** mustn't
8. It's getting to find a good job.
 a) so more difficult **b)** more and more difficult
 c) more harder **d)** the most difficult
9. He on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
 a) will work **b)** works **c)** will have worked **d)** will be working
10. The information you sent have included details of courses taken at university.
 a) mustn't **b)** should **c)** shouldn't **d)** may not
11. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He to embarrass you.
 a) doesn't seem **b)** doesn't suppose **c)** wasn't meaning **d)** didn't mean
12. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the cause of death among sea birds.
 a) more common **b)** common **c)** commonest **d)** commoner
13. Osama will be working in the garden while Hala
 a) will cook **b)** is cooking **c)** was cooking **d)** cooks
14. I asked two people the way to the station, but of them helped me.
 a) either **b)** none **c)** neither **d)** both
15. I couldn't sleep very tired. I was working all day yesterday.
 a) although being **b)** in spite of being
 c) despite of being **d)** despite I was

ELMAWAN Gem

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals were the opposite of hers. So, Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how Sally got her wish at last!

16 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?

a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

17 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means

a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

18 The word "....." is the antonym of "curled up".

a) twisted **b)** bowed
c) straight **d)** bent

19 What was Sally's wish?

a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

20 Sally enjoyed watching programs about animals because

a) she was forbidden to own a cat
b) she loved T.V
c) she had wanted to own a cat
d) she loved animals

21 Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat because

a) she didn't love wild animals **b)** she loved wild animals
c) she didn't love pets **d)** she feared cats

22 Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

a) dog's sound **b)** mewing sound
c) child's sound **d)** baby's sound

23 What do you think happened to the cat according to the passage?

a) It was knocked down by a car.

b) It was knocked down by another animal.

c) It was left alone and looked very frightened.

d) It was sick.

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this problem.

a) يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشـكلات التى تهدد العالم وتسـبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة.

b) تعد قلة الطعام من أخطر المشاكل التى تهدد العالم وتسبب الجوع فى كثير من المدن. يجب على جميع الناس العمل بجد لإيجاد حلول لهذه المشاكل.

c) يعـد نقص الأطعمة من أخطر المشـاكل التى تهدد العالم ومسببـًا للموت من الجوع فى كثير من البلـدان. يجب على جميع الناس ان يجدوا فى العمل لإيجاد حلول لهذه المشكلة.

d) إن العجز فى الغذاء من أخطر المشـاكل التى تهدد العالم وتسـبب المجاعة فى كثير من البلدان. وينبغى على كل الناس ألا يعملوا بجد لاكتشاف اقتراحات لهذه المشاكل.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- لـم يعـد التعليم التقليدى مناسـبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبا للتطور المسـتمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلـك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

a) Classic education isn't any longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with continuous development in all areas of life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary level.

b) Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of modern life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

c) Traditional education isn't suitable to new grandchildren and keeping pace with continuous development in all parts of new life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary grade.

d) Education in traditional way is not suitable for new grandchildren and keeping go with continuous development in all ways of new life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary grade.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

Final Test 6

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The flood great problems for the local farmers.
a) reasoned **b)** applied **c)** caused **d)** shared

2 When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
a) entertained **b)** delayed **c)** inspected **d)** trained

3 In time, the new students gained confidence and on with other classmates.
a) went **b)** got **c)** came **d)** received

4 My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
a) immune **b)** respiratory **c)** prohibited **d)** allowed

5 The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a that he was worried.
a) sign **b)** signal **c)** landmark **d)** note

6 We aren't used to eating a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
a) inside **b)** down **c)** out **d)** across

7 I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
a) needn't **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** must

8 A Mercedes is one of the cars you can buy.
a) more expensive **b)** expensive **c)** most expensive **d)** little expensive

9 I think I him at entrance B. I can't remember.
a) will be meeting **b)** am meeting **c)** meet **d)** will meet

10 The teacher wanted her students their homework before the new lesson.
a) do **b)** to do **c)** doing **d)** to doing

11 Don't speak to the boss now. He to be angry about something.
a) seems **b)** means **c)** is meant **d)** supposed

12 they had much time, they would have studied better.
a) If **b)** Were **c)** Had **d)** Have

13 I chose this car as my favourite because it's all the ones I have driven.
a) the fastest from **b)** the fastest of **c)** more faster than **d)** the fastest as

14 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
a) take off **b)** take them off **c)** take off them **d)** take it off

15 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true.
a) what was said **b)** what they said **c)** that they said **d)** they say

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use auditory clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places. People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

16 The clocks are used to measure the

a) smaller units of time **b)** day
c) month **d)** year

17 What is the main idea of the third paragraph?

a) Why clocks are used.
b) How sundials work.
c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.
d) What types of clocks have been invented.

18 The synonym of "melt" is

a) dissolve **b)** harden **c)** solidify **d)** freeze

19 The word "auditory" most closely means

a) related to machines **b)** related to numbers
c) related to hearing **d)** related to the sun

20 The writer believes that it would be a mess if

a) there are a lot of clocks **b)** there are many kinds of clocks
c) there weren't clocks **d)** clocks were bigger in size

21 Airplanes depend on the clock because

a) they take off according to the clock. **b)** they land according to the clock.
c) they use clocks to book tickets **d)** both a and b

22 Sundials are different from Candle clocks because they

a) work with a system of moving gears.
b) use the daylight.
c) use sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.
d) measure units of time that are shorter than natural

23 What is the main idea of the passage?

a) How different industries and jobs use clocks

b) The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance

c) The history of different kinds of clocks

d) The importance of specific kinds of clocks

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- Hosting Climate Change Conference (COP27) in Sharm El-Sheikh followed a successful bid launched in 2021. It was the first climate summit held in Africa since 2016.

a) استضافت شرم الشيخ قمة المناخ (COP27) والتى أتت بحلول عرض ناجح تم إطلاقه منذ ٢٠٢١. ويعد هذا المؤتمر الأول فى إفريقيا بعد عام ٢٠١٦.

b) جاءت استضافة مؤتمر تغير المناخ (COP27) فى شرم الشيخ عقب محاولة ناجحة تم إطلاقها فى عام ٢٠٢١. وكانت هذه القمة المناخية الأولى التى تُعقد فى إفريقيا منذ عام ٢٠١٦.

c) تستضيف شرم الشيخ مؤتمر تغير المناخ (COP27) مرافقًا لعرض ناجح تم إطلاقه فى عام ٢٠٢١. وكانت هذه أول مؤتمر مناخ يعقد فى إفريقيا منذ عام ٢٠١٦.

d) جاءت فى شرم الشيخ استضافة مؤتمر تغير المناخ (COP27) ممثلا لدعوة ناجحة تم إطلاقها منذ عام ٢٠٢١. وكانت هذه القمة المناخية الأولى التى تُعقد فى إفريقيا بحلول عام ٢٠١٦.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة. من هذه النماذج نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن اللتان أكدتا على دور المرأة وحقوقها.

a) The history of the women's move in Egypt is filled with many successful examples. From these models are Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman who emphasised the women's rule and rights.

b) The history of the women's movement in Egypt is full of many successful models. Among these models are Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman who emphasised the role of women and their rights.

c) The women's movement history in Egypt is fell with many successful examples. This is Nabawiyya Musa and Aisha Abd al-Rahman, who emphasised the role and rights of women.

d) The history of the women's move in Egypt is full of many successful modals. Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman are among these modals who emphasised the role of women and their rights.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

Final Test 7

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
 a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
 a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There were and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
 a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based figures from six different cities.
 a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The tumor الورم in the patient's brain was surgically by a team of top surgeons.
 a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
6. The book is the product of a/an between two writers.
 a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection
7. Asmaa have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
 a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
8. Hossam has been working and harder since he graduated.
 a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
9. Look at these big black clouds! It
 a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
10. This medicine went bad. You have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
11. Why are you late? You to be here at 9 o'clock.
 a) seem b) were supposed
 c) seemed d) mean
12. If he is late, we to go without him.
 a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
13. There are more accidents on this road because it's than the others.
 a) narrow b) more narrow
 c) narrower d) the narrowest
14. Next year, no doubt, more people the competition as the prize money increases.
 a) will enter b) are going to be entered
 c) are entering d) will be entering
15. We by a loud noise during the night.
 a) woke up b) are woken
 c) were woken up d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

16 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the

a) light **b)** reflection
c) eye **d)** brain

17 How does light travel?

a) In black waves. **b)** In strange waves.
c) In straight waves. **d)** In reflected waves.

18 We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.

a) the mirror **b)** ourselves
c) the light wave **d)** our eyes

19 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to

a) magnify, or make things larger
b) see ourselves through glasses
c) to see mountains in water
d) see things in the dark

20 We see objects because

a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surface
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves

21 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

a) They bounce directly back to our faces.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye's illness.
d) They make light.

ONLINE Gem

22 A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because to create a reflection.

a) the surface must be smooth and still

b) the surface must be sharp and still

c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye

d) anything shiny may act like a mirror

23 science specialises in studying light and reflection.

a) Chemistry **b)** Biology **c)** Physics **d)** Sociology

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:** 2

- Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

a) ليس لدى كثير من الناس المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا، فإن دور المثقفين هو عدم نشر الوعى حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحيحة لمواجهة حالة الطوارئ الطبية.

b) كثير من الناس ليس لديهم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا ، فإن دور العلماء هو انتشار الوعى حول المشاكل الصحية لمواجهة حالة الطوارئ الطبية.

c) لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة أوالوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعى بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

d) لدى كثير من الناس عدم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. إذن ، إنه دور المتعلمين من الناس لنشر الرعاية حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الأزمات الطبية.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:** 2

- يختلف الناس فى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته. إلا أنهم جميعًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

a) People are differing in the type of foods they prefer, how they are cooked, or even their forms. Though, they all agree in the search for delicious taste and high nutritional available.

b) People differ in the type of food they prefer, the way it is cooked, or until its ingredients. Although, they all accept in the search for delicious sense and high nutritional value.

c) People differ in the type of food they prefer, the way it is cooked, or even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for delicious taste and high nutritional value.

d) People are different in the kind of foods they enjoy, how they cooking, or even their factors. However, they all go in searching for the delicious taste and high nutritional cost.

26 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 5

- A blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 8

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new owners have changed the of the whole building.
 a) appear **b)** appearance **c)** appeared **d)** apparent
2. I feel really about forgetting my wife's birthday again. She must get upset.
 a) shy **b)** guilty **c)** innocent **d)** proud
3. The old woman her husband by only a few years. Their relation was an amazing one.
 a) kept **b)** dissolved **c)** called **d)** survived
4. Major changes have taken in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
 a) part **b)** place **c)** apart **d)** down
5. We had a/an with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
 a) fight **b)** treaty **c)** argument **d)** truce
6. You have to register to be able to post a/an in this website.
 a) comment **b)** mark **c)** emoji **d)** abbreviation
7. I'd like to know who up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
 a) cleans **b)** does clean **c)** will be cleaning **d)** will have cleaned
8. This is a dangerous tour. Children accompanied by an adult.
 a) mustn't be **b)** needn't have been **c)** must **d)** must be
9. We wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 a) must **b)** don't have to **c)** mustn't **d)** have to
10. The expensive holidays are often the best.
 a) less **b)** lesser **c)** little **d)** least
11. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow dry and sunny.
 a) is being **b)** will be being **c)** will be **d)** will have been
12. You may be older than me, but that doesn't you're cleverer.
 a) mean **b)** seem **c)** supposed **d)** meaning
13. Had I realised what you intended, I my permission.
 a) wouldn't give **b)** will give **c)** would not have given **d)** won't give
14. Galal in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
 a) lived **b)** has lived **c)** has been living **d)** is living
15. She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help
 a) laughing **b)** to laugh **c)** that she laughed **d)** laugh

ALADWAA.com

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seem so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher.

The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

16 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?

a) She wrote books. **b)** She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. **d)** She wrote novels.

17 Sara was called 'bookworm' because

a) she kept worms in her books **b)** she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms **d)** she loved to read

18 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?

a) One. **b)** Two. **c)** Three. **d)** None.

19 The phrase "sold like hotcakes" means

a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

20 The publisher wanted to publish Sara's work because

a) she read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'
b) she had a real talent in writing novel
c) she had no talent in writing short stories
d) her teachers were all so proud of her

21 Sara was reluctant to write the novel at first because

a) she was confident she could do it
b) she discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author
c) she wasn't confident she could do it
d) her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend

22 What is the best title of this passage?

a) Sara's life story. **b)** Publisher's story.
c) Sara's hobby. **d)** Sara's novel.

23 The writer believes that the role of the family is important because it

a) helps in decreasing their children's talents

b) helps in improving their children's talents

c) helps in changing their children's desires

d) helps in changing their children's minds

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: 2

- Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

a) لـكل الأفـراد فى المجتمع الحق فى أن يكون لهم آراؤهم وأفكارهم. فى المجتمعات المتمدنة لا توجد مشـكلة فى أن تكون متخلفًا عن الآخرين ، ولكن من الضرورى أن يكون هناك احترام مع البعض.

b) كل فرد فى المجتمع لديه الحق فى آرائه واعتقاداته الخاصة. فى المجتمعات المتحضرة ، توجد مشكلة فى أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، ولكن هناك ضرورة ألا يحترم بعضنا بعضًا.

c) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الحق بأن يكون له أحكامه ومعتقداته ، ففى المجتمعات المدنية هناك مشـكلة أن تكون متخلفًا عن الآخرين لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا.

d) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الحق بأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشـكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا.

25 Choose the correct English translation: 2

- تناقصت مسـاحة الأرض الزراعية لاسـتخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم. أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

a) The amount of agricultural land so as to be used for other purposes has increased all over the world. It has become main for scientists to search for new ways to provide food to the overpopulation.

b) The area of agricultural land has decreased all over the world because it's used for other purposes. Scientists have to find new ways to provide food for the growing population.

c) The amount of agricultural ground to be used for other purposes has decreased all over the world. It is main for scientists to look for new ways to provide food for the overpopulation.

d) Decreasing the area of agricultural land all over the world because of using for other purposes. Scientists are necessary to find new ways to feed the growing population.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic: 5

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Test 9

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The club provides a for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home **b)** view **c)** series **d)** forum
2. Egypt has always had a good with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate **b)** relationship **c)** argument **d)** quarrel
3. The publishing company is giving a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into **b)** off **c)** on **d)** away
4. It is known that iron with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers **b)** rejects **c)** reacts **d)** reforms
5. The teacher at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled **b)** smelled **c)** signed **d)** frowned
6. The athlete was given the VIP after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.
 a) treat **b)** treatment **c)** treated **d)** treatable
7. She drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to **b)** had to **c)** must **d)** mustn't
8. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the
 a) more pretty **b)** most pretty **c)** prettiest **d)** pretty
9. They dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having **b)** will have **c)** are going to have **d)** have
10. Most teachers encourage their students harder.
 a) to work **b)** work **c)** working **d)** to working
11. When to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you **b)** you supposed
 c) you are supposed **d)** are you supposed
12. Mr. Kareem early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring **b)** will be retiring
 c) is going to retire **d)** will have retired
13. His results are not his colleague's. He needs to study more.
 a) so good like **b)** to good like
 c) as good as **d)** so good than
14. I'm not going to bed now. I'm not tired. If I to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.
 a) go **b)** went **c)** had gone **d)** am going
15. The police officer stopped us and asked us where
 a) were we going **b)** are we going
 c) we are going **d)** we were going

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs.

They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

16 Dogs helped people go to North America by
- **a)** pulling sleds in the snow
- **b)** helping with farming
- **c)** helping find things
- **d)** none of the previous answers

17 The best antonym for pet is
- **a)** wild animal
- **b)** domestic animal
- **c)** large animal
- **d)** friendly animal

18 A dog's fur is the dog's
- **a)** nose
- **b)** eyes
- **c)** hair
- **d)** ears

19 Straight hair is
- **a)** curly
- **b)** long
- **c)** brown
- **d)** not curly

20 According to the passage, all dogs do well in
- **a)** hearing
- **b)** smelling
- **c)** swimming
- **d)** both a and b

21 The age of the oldest dog reaches to
- **a)** 24 years old
- **b)** 20 years old
- **c)** 13 years old
- **d)** 15,000 years old

22 Dogs are useful animals because
- **a)** they have many colours
- **a)** they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow
- **a)** there are wild dogs and pet dogs
- **a)** they can play and do nothing for men and women

23 The writer mentions that some dogs can't well
- **a)** hear
- **b)** run
- **c)** smell
- **d)** see

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

2

- Although the internet becomes the most important means for knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

a) بالرغم من أن الإنترنت لم تصبح فقط أهم وسيلة المعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونها لنشر أفكارهم الشريرة كما تساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب واستهدافهم بأفعالهم الشريرة.

b) بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبحت من أهم وسائل المعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونها لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة كما تساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

c) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونها لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة. تساعدهم فى العثور على الشباب لتجنيدهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

d) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبحت فقط من أهم وسائل المعرفة إلا أن الإرهابيين لا يستخدمونها لنشر فكرهم الشريرة. وقد يساعدهم فى العثور على الشباب لاستهدافهم بأعمالهم العنيفة.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

2

- يُساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة. بالإضافة إلى أنه يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

a) We are helped by learning foreign languages and in particular English for understanding the directions in science and new culture. And moreover it is able us to stay with big development in fields of science and different techniques.

b) Studying foreign languages, and especially English, has taught us both scientific trends and modern culture. Moreover, it is keeping pace with developments in various fields of science and technology.

c) Learning foreign languages, especially English, helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends. In addition, it enables us to keep pace with the great development in the various fields of science and technology.

d) Learning foreign languages, special English, is helping us understanding modern trends of science and cultura. In addition, it enables us to keep pace with the great development in the various fields of science and techniques.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

5

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

Final Test 10

32

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by than by using force. This is the modern approach.
 a) persuade **b)** persuasion **c)** persuasive **d)** persuaded
2. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a) Dermatitis **b)** Hydroponics **c)** Astronomy **d)** Botany
3. Some archaeologists discovered some of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
 a) photos **b)** images **c)** accounts **d)** posts
4. The ship was forced to change its main during the storm.
 a) road **b)** technique **c)** course **d)** coarse
5. I have read only some from the newspaper because I had no time.
 a) addresses **b)** experiments **c)** headlines **d)** extracts
6. Mona really wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
 a) pleases **b)** affects **c)** regrets **d)** rejoices
7. Your flat has been robbed! This that you have to report to the police.
 a) seems **b)** means **c)** meant **d)** is meant
8. You come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
 a) have to **b)** needn't **c)** must **d)** mustn't
9. My dog is than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
 a) bigger **b)** the biggest **c)** big **d)** biggest
10. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She!
 a) is slipping **b)** will slip **c)** is going to slip **d)** slips
11. We at home if it hadn't rained.
 a) would stay **b)** would have stayed
 c) wouldn't have stayed **d)** won't stay
12. In the last few months, competition has become
 a) much tougher **b)** more tough
 c) more tougher **d)** much more tougher
13. A: Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? B: Okay. I you there.
 a) will be seeing **b)** see **c)** will have seen **d)** will see
14. There's somebody walking behind us. I think
 a) we are being followed **b)** we are following
 c) we are being following **d)** we are followed
15. I had no a place to stay in. In fact, it was surprisingly easy.
 a) trouble to find **b)** difficulty finding
 c) difficulty to find **d)** trouble find

ONLINE Gem

Read the following email, then answer the questions:

8

To : jim62@hrdtt.com
From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com
Subject : A thank you message

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer, on behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goals and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company.

We also hope that you liked our small presentation. We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture. Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,
Robert Spooner Senior Vice President

16 When did the team meet Mr. Jim?
a) Next Monday. **b)** Last Monday.
c) Last month. **d)** Upcoming Monday.

17 What does the underlined word "enlightening" mean?
a) useless **b)** fruitless
c) fruitful **d)** harmful

18 The outcome of the meeting is that the team became
a) able to communicate with each other **b)** familiar with the marketing skills
c) familiar with development plans **d)** aware with the goals of the company

19 The team prepared before the meeting to be shown.
a) a project plan **b)** a small business
c) a small presentation **d)** a meeting agenda

20 Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the email?
a) The time of the meeting. **b)** The attendees of the meeting.
c) The purpose of the email. **d)** The time of the next meeting.

21 The email contains
a) attached thank you letter **b)** attached project plan
c) attached development plan **d)** attached small presentation

22 The team promised to
a) meet Mr. Jim's expectation **b)** to create outstanding venture
c) to achieve great results **d)** both a and c

23 This email is a/an one.
a) formal **b)** informal
c) direct **d)** indirect

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

2

- Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

a) التفكير الناقد هو القدرة على التفكير بوضوح وعقلانية فيما نفعل وما نعتقد كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

b) أن تفكر بشكل ناقد هو أن تكون قادرا على التفكير بعقل ووضوح فيما ستفعله أو ما ستؤمن به. كما يضمن ذلك القدرة على تقدم أفكارك الاستقلالية.

c) التفكير الناقد هو القدرة على التفكير بوضوح وعقلانية فيما نقوم به أو ما نعتقد. كما يتضمن القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

d) التفكير الناقد هو إمكانية التفكير بوضوح وبشكل نسبى حول ما يجب القيام به أو ما يجب تصديقه. يتضمن القدرة على تطوير فكرك المستقل.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

2

- كانت مصر من أوائل الدول فى الشرق الأوسط التى وفرت لقاح كوفيد- ١٩ لمواطنيها. وقد عددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما أنها وفرته بالمجان.

a) Egypt was of the first states in the Middle East that prove a vaccine COVID-19 for its people. It has also made more sources of obtaining different types of it for free.

b) Egypt was of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made much more sources of buying different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

c) Egypt was one of the first states in the Middle East which provide a vaccine COVID-19 for its citizens. It had also made many sources of getting different types of it for free.

d) Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made many sources of obtaining different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

26 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

5

- How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

ALADWAA Gem

ALADWA Gem